







ROSA.



COMMON ROSE.



---

FRONTISPIECE.

VOL. III.

## AMERICAN PRACTICE OF MEDICINE;

BEING

## A T R E A T I S E

ON THE

CHARACTER, CAUSES, SYMPTOMS, MORBID APPEARANCES,

AND

## T R E A T M E N T

OF THE

DISEASES OF MEN, WOMEN, AND CHILDREN,

OF ALL CLIMATES,

ON

## VEGETABLE OR BOTANICAL PRINCIPLES:

AS TAUGHT AT

The Reformed Medical Colleges in the United States:

CONTAINING ALSO A

TREATISE ON MATERIA MEDICA AND PHARMACY,

OR THE

VARIOUS ARTICLES PRESCRIBED, THEIR DESCRIPTION, HISTORY, PROPERTIES, PREPARATION, AND USES;

WITH AN APPENDIX, ON THE CHOLERA, ETC.

ILLUSTRATED BY NUMEROUS PLATES AND CASES.

THE WHOLE PRECEDED BY

## P R A C T I C A L R U L E S

FOR THE

PREVENTION OF DISEASE AND THE PRESERVATION OF HEALTH.

BY W. BEACH, M.D.

President of the Reformed Medical Society, and Founder of the Reformed Medical Colleges of the United States; Licentiate of the Medical Society of the State of New York; Member of the Medical Society of the City and County of New York; Professor of Materia Medica, Pharmacy, Theory and Practice of Physic and Surgery in the New-York Reformed Medical College, and Principal Physician and Surgeon of the United States Infirmary.

IN THREE VOLUMES.....VOL. III.

NEW YORK:

B E T T S &amp; A N S T I C E,

OPPOSITE ST. PAUL'S CHURCH.

M DCCC XXXIII.

1833

V

WBJ

B365a

1833

v. 3

film no. 11376

item 3

---

Entered according to the Act of Congress, in the year 1832, by

W. BEACH, M.D.

in the Clerk's office of the District Court of the United States for the Southern  
District of New York.

---

*Faint handwritten text, possibly a library stamp or date, including the year 1851.*

---

**PART VII.**

**MATERIA MEDICA.**

---



## PART VII.

### MATERIA MEDICA.

---

#### SECTION I.

##### INTRODUCTORY REMARKS.

By the term *Materia Medica*, we understand that part of medical science which treats of the nature, composition, and relation of the various substances which are employed in the prevention, cure, and mitigation of diseases: also the effects of those substances on the human body. It embraces Botany, Chemistry, and Natural History.

##### *Order or Arrangement.*

It is generally customary, in treating on this branch of medicine, to divide the various remedies, or agents, into classes. But as every plant possesses several or many properties, and cannot be classed into any definite medical order, but belong to several at the same time; the alphabetical arrangement is adopted in preference.

The following is the order which are adhered to in this work. 1st. Articles are treated of which are purely vegetable, such as medicinal plants, roots, bark, &c. 2nd. Minerals, certain salts, &c.

##### *Season of Collecting Vegetable Medicines.*

1st. **ROOTS.**—Roots must be collected in the spring, before the sap begins to rise, or in the fall after the top is dead.

2nd. **BARKS.**—Barks may be stripped from the tree or shrub any time when the sap prevents it from adhering to the wood. The exterior portion must be shaved off; the bark then cut thin, and dried in the shade.

3rd. **MEDICINAL PLANTS.**—Medicinal plants should be collected while in blossom, and also dried in the shade; their virtues, however, are not essentially diminished any time before frost appears.

**4th. FLOWERS AND SEEDS.**—Flowers and seeds should be collected when they are fully ripe, and likewise dried in the shade. All vegetables after having been dried should be kept from the air, and preserved air tight, or in a dry place. In this way they may be preserved for many years, without losing any of their medicinal properties. The method adopted by the society of Shakers, is admirably adapted to preserve them. They press roots, plants, &c., after having been properly dried, by means of a screw, into cakes, which are very handsome, and their flavour and virtues remain unimpaired.

*On the Preparation or Composition of Articles.*

It is scarcely possible to administer remedies in the same state as furnished by nature; their form, volume, hardness, their state of impurity, &c. prevents it. It is consequently necessary to submit them to certain preparations, either in order to change their state, or develope and render more sensible their virtues, or finally to impart to them some new properties by combining these articles with others.

It is by means of comminution, extraction, solution, mixture, tincture, and combination, that these objects are attained.

---

SECTION II

OF THE PROXIMATE PRINCIPLES OF VEGETABLES.

The ultimate analysis of the vegetable substances belonging to the *Materia Medica* is seldom of utility, since we can scarcely ever discover any relation between the composition and the medicinal powers of the substance analysed. The application of chemistry, therefore, to the vegetable substances belonging to the *Materia Medica*, is, in a great measure, confined to the discrimination of their vegetable proximate principles.

These principles are numerous and of very different kinds. They are not all to be met with in every vegetable, or in every period of vegetation; some exist only in certain plants, and that only in their state of vigor or maturity; at other times, they are to be found only in particular organs; others are diffused through the whole substance of the vegetable; and mixed more or less intimately with all its parts; and some are nearly peculiar to certain vegetables, while others are common to almost every plant. Those only need here be pointed out, which are connected with medicinal properties.

These principles are the products of vegetation from a common juice or sap, which circulates freely through every part of the vegetable system, being supplied by absorption from the soil, and, perhaps, from the atmosphere. It varies in its qualities, particularly according to the season, and the progress of the plant to maturity: frequently, too, it has an intermixture of the proper juices; it always contains the usual elements of vegetable matter, with generally saline substances, having principally lime for their base.

**GUM.**—The first transition of the sap appears to be into mucilage, or gum, one of the proximate principles contained in greatest abundance in vegetables. Gum is the name given to the principle when it is obtained in a concrete state; Mucilage is the name given to it as expressed in a liquid state, or extracted by maceration in water. This principle is found in all young plants, in a greater or less quantity; and is often so abundant in the plant as to be discharged by spontaneous exudation. It abounds also in their roots, stalks, and leaves, and especially in their seeds; it is an inodorous, insipid, and glutinous substance, soluble in water in every proportion, and forming with it a thick viscid solution, which, by evaporation, affords a tenacious mass, that when dried again is soluble, and very brittle. Exposed to heat, it is neither fusible nor volatile. It is not inflammable; for although, when heated in contact with atmospheric air, it combines with oxygen; it emits no flame. Gum is usually obtained either by spontaneous exudation, or by incisions made in the trunks and branches of trees. It is more or less pure as it is obtained from different plants. Its existence in vegetables is detected by boiling gently the vegetable substance with water; the water dissolves the gum, and if much of that principle be present, the solution is glutinous. It may be allowed to remain till the impurities have subsided; if it then be allowed to evaporate to the consistence of thin syrup, the addition of three parts of alcohol will separate the whole of the gum in flakes.

Pure gum is not an active substance, considered with respect to its effect on the living system. In medicine it is only used for its lubricating quality; and so little activity does it exert, that it has often been taken for a considerable time as an article of food. In pharmacy, it is used as a medium to combine balsams, resins, and oils with water. Though pure gum is inactive, yet the virtues of many vegetables depend on a gummy or mucilaginous matter.

**FECULA**, is a principle approaching in several of its characters to gum. Like it, it is soluble in hot water, and forms a viscid glutinous solution; but it is at once distinguished by being perfectly insoluble in cold water. It exists principally in the tuberoze roots and gramineous seeds. It is extracted by beating the dried root or seed with a large quantity of water: the liquid soon becomes milky from the diffusion of a white powder through it. On being poured from the remaining vegetable matter, and allowed to remain at rest, this powder is deposited, and when washed and dried is the *Fecula* of the plant. It is generally mild and insipid, of a white colour, with a peculiar kind of brilliancy, and is soft to the touch. Starch is the *fecula* of wheat, and is the most abundant part of that grain. *Fecula* is insoluble in alcohol; it is highly nutritive, and is usually contained in those plants which serve as food. It is sometimes employed in its pure state in medicine, on account of its nutritive quality and from being easy of digestion; Sago and Sallop are substances of this kind.

**GLUTEN.**—This principle is usually associated with *fecula*, and is obtained in the process in which the *fecula* is separated. It then appears as a viscous, elastic, and fibrous-like substance, which, from its resemblance to the animal product, named *Gluten*, has been denominated *Vegetable Gluten*. It is obtained from the flour of wheat in

greatest abundance; the flour is made into a paste with water, which being compressed by the hand, while a stream of water falls upon it; the fecula is carried off in the state of powder; the mucilaginous and saccharine parts of the grain are dissolved by the water, and there remains a tenacious ductile mass forming the gluten. It has scarcely any taste, is of a greyish colour, and when dried is semi-transparent. It is insoluble in water; and is dissolved in very small quantities by alcohol. It contains a larger proportion of nitrogen than any vegetable product does, and it is supposed to render those vegetables in which it is present highly nutritive.

**SACCHARINE MATTER.**—This exists in many vegetable substances, especially in their fruits and roots, but often intimately united with their mucilaginous and extractive matter. When freed from these its taste is sweet, without any peculiar flavour; it is soluble in water and in alcohol. By the action of nitric acid, it is converted into oxalic acid.

**OIL** is a common proximate principle of vegetable matter; it is of two kinds, expressed or fat oil, and distilled, volatile or essential oil. These have the common qualities of unctuousity and inflammability; but they also possess peculiar properties by which they are distinguished as species.

The expressed, fat, or fixed oils, are thick and unctuous, insipid and inodorous. They congeal on exposure to cold, are lighter than water, and insoluble in that liquid; they are likewise insoluble in alcohol, except in minute quantity; and they combine with the alkalies, forming soap. They are not volatilized at the temperature of 212 deg.: some require to be raised 600 deg. to make them boil, and the condensed oil is changed in its properties. These oils are contained in the seeds and fruit of vegetables, at the period of their maturity. They are extracted by expression or decoction with water; they are frequently impregnated with part of the extractive, mucilaginous, or resinous parts, which the seed or fruits contain; from which they derive colour, and, in many cases a peculiar taste and odour, and even, perhaps, certain medicinal powers. They are mild and emollient, and are used principally for their qualities. They are rendered mixable with water by the medium of gum or sugar, or by the addition of a small quantity of an alkali.

Volatile, or essential oils, have characteristic properties different from those of expressed oils. They are volatile at a low temperature, and are entirely and quickly converted into a vapour at the heat of boiling water without being decomposed; they are soluble in a small proportion in water, and hence the taste and flavour which water receives from many vegetables by distillation. In alcohol they are completely soluble; they are generally odoriferous, pungent, and even acrid; they are more highly inflammable than the fixed oils.

**RESIN.**—This principle is in some measure connected with essential oil, and in plants, is often united with it, as well as with other principles. Some vegetables, however, exude juices which concreate into a matter entirely resinous, and it is from these that the characters, the substances belonging to this genus are taken. The distinguishing properties of a resin, are its existing in a solid state, being insoluble in water, but soluble in alcohol, ether, and oil; the solution in ether or

alcohol, is decomposed by water: resins are in general odorous and sapid, though neither of these qualities is essential to a pure resin; they are inflammable, and burn with much smoke; at a temperature nearly that of boiling water they melt; but they cannot be volatilized without being decomposed.

The existence of a resin in a vegetable is discovered by infusing it in alcohol: this dissolves it if any is present, and it can then be precipitated from the solution by the addition of water.

**BALSAMS** are resinous juices with an intermixture generally of essential oil, and containing always a portion of the acid named Benzoic acid. They are usually thick and tenacious, becoming by age concrete. They are odorous and pungent, principally from the essential oil they contain.

A principle of considerable importance in the phamaceutic relations, which is supposed to constitute the acting matter of many vegetables, is what has been named, extract or extraction matter. Its leading character is, that it is soluble equally in pure water and in alcohol. By this property it is distinguished both from gum and resin, the one being insoluble in water, the other in alcohol. This principle is supposed to be the base of what are named extracts of plants, preparations formed by boiling vegetables in water, and evaporating the clear liquid to a thick consistence.

**TANNIN**.—The important medicinal property of astringency, appears to be dependent, in vegetable substances, on a peculiar principle called Tannin. This principle exists in all the powerful vegetable astringents. It is extracted by maceration with water, and is detected in the infusion by a peculiar test, that of the animal principle denominated gelatine. If a solution of gelatine is adapted to the infusion, it become turbid, and a precipitate is thrown down, composed of the tannin and gelatine in combination.

**VEGETABLE ACIDS**.—The acid formed in the juice and other parts of plants, is not always the same. Not less than seven acids, different from each other, are of vegetable original, viz: Gallic, Oxalic, Malic, Citric, Tartaric, Benzoic, and Acetic.

**CAMPHOR**.—Is a proximate principle found in some vegetables, similar in many of its properties to essential oil. It is a solid substance, of a white colour, semi-transparent, having a strong peculiar smell, and a penetrating taste. It is very sparingly soluble in water, but is abundantly soluble in alcohol, from these solutions it is precipitated by water.

**WAX**.—Though wax is a substance formed by the bee, yet it is always a produce of vegetation. It is yielded by the leaves and fruit, and it is sometimes intimately mixed with resin, gum, or extractive matter of plants. It is insoluble in water, and is soluble in very small quantity, by the aid of heat in alcohol; it combines with the fixed oils and melts at a moderate heat in oil.

**ALBUMEN**.—This principle has been supposed to exist in vegetables, and has been called albumen, from its resemblance to the animal principle of that name. It is soluble in cold water; its solution

being coagulated also by heat. Like gluten it is liable to putrefaction, and furnishes a large quantity of ammonia by distillation. This principle has, however, been regarded, and perhaps justly, as a variety of gluten. A few more competent parts might be named, but it is deemed unnecessary.

---

### SECTION III.

#### TERMS OF CLASSIFICATION.

In the arrangement of subjects in this work, the alphabetical order has been adopted, as the most convenient for reference, rather than the pharmaceutical division of simples from compounds, or the more common arrangement by classes, adopted in various works on the *Materia Medica*. The alphabetical order enables us to concentrate in one view, all that is said on a medicine and its principal preparations.

It may be expected, however, that a treatise on *Materia Medica* should contain some explanation of the mode in which medicines are most commonly arranged; and it is necessary to give definitions, at least of such general terms as continually occur among writers on medical science. Various terms have been introduced into medicine, as indicative both of general and particular kinds of operation, either in health or disease; and those medicines which produce similar operations, have been placed in the same classes or orders. The following are the classes, and the definitions generally given:

#### *Narcotics*

Are substances which diminish the actions and powers of the system, without occasioning any sensible evacuation. They have the effect of producing sleep.

#### *Antispasmodics*

Are medicines which have the power of allaying irritation and spasms.

#### *Tonics*

Are those articles which increase the tone of the animal fibre, by which strength is given to the system.

#### *Astringents*

Are articles which have the power of binding or contracting the fibres of the body.

#### *Emetics*

Are medicines which excite vomiting, independent of any effect arising from the mere quantity of matter introduced into the stomach.

#### *Purgatives or Cathartics.*

Medicines which increase the peristaltic motion of the intestines, and thereby produce a preternatural discharge.

*Emmenagogues*

Are those medicines which are capable of promoting the menstrual discharge.

*Diuretics*

Are those medicines which increase the urinary discharge.

*Diaphoretics*

Are those medicines which increase the natural exhalation by the skin, or promote moderate perspiration.

*Sudorifics*

Are those medicines which produce copious exhalations, or sweating.

*Expectorants*

Are those medicines which increase the discharge of mucus from the lungs.

*Sialagogues*

Are those medicines which excite a preternatural flow of saliva.

*Errhines*

Are those medicines which increase the secretion from the nose and head, and excite sneezing.

*Epispastics, or Blisters*

Are those substances which, when applied to the surface of the body, produce a serous or puriform discharge, by exciting a previous state of inflammation.

*Rubefacients.*

Substances, which, when applied to the skin, stimulate, redden, or inflame it.

*Refrigerants,*

Medicines which allay the heat of the body or of the blood.

*Antacids,*

Remedies which obviate acidity in the stomach.

*Lithontriptics,*

Medicines which are supposed to have the power of dissolving urinary concretions in the bladder.

*Escharotics, or Caustics,*

Substances which corrode or dissolve the animal solids.

*Anthelmintics,*

Medicines which have the effect of expelling worms from the intestines.

*Demulcents,*

Medicines which obviate and prevent the action of stimulating and

acid substances, by involving them in a mild and viscid matter, which prevents their action on the body.

*Diluent,*

Those medicines which increase the fluidity of the blood.

*Emollients,*

Substances which soothe and relax the living fibre.

*Alteratives.*

This term is applied to substances which are found to promote a change in the system favourable to recovery from disease, but not with certainty referable to any other class.

---

SECTION IV.

CLASSIFICATION OF ARTICLES.

The various articles composing the *Materia Medica* may be classed, or divided as follows :

- |       |           |                    |
|-------|-----------|--------------------|
| 1st.  | Medicinal | Plants.            |
| 2nd.  | "         | Roots.             |
| 3rd.  | "         | Flowers.           |
| 4th.  | "         | Seeds.             |
| 5th.  | "         | Extracts.          |
| 6th.  | "         | Barks.             |
| 7th.  | "         | Gums.              |
| 8th.  | "         | Oils and Balsams.  |
| 9th.  | "         | Salts.             |
| 10th. | "         | Minerals.          |
| 11th. | "         | Earthy Substances. |

## GLOSSARY

OF

## BOTANICAL TERMS

USED IN THIS WORK.

## A

- Abortive.* Defective. Not arriving to perfection.
- Abrupt.* Terminating suddenly, so as to appear as if a part was cut or bitten off. A pinnate leaf is abrupt when it does not terminate with an odd leaf.
- Acuminate.* When any part terminates suddenly in a point which is inclined to one side.
- Acute.* Terminating in a sharp point.
- Adnate.* Adhering or growing together.
- Aggregated.* Crowded together in one receptacle without united anthers, as in compound flowers.
- Alternate.* On opposite sides of the stem, and at different distances from its base: this relation repeated at nearly regular intervals.
- Ament.* A simple peduncle bearing numerous chaffy scales, which serve as calyces. The chesnut is an example.
- Angiospermia.* The seeds inclosed in a capsule. The name of the second order of the thirteenth class.
- Angular.* Having angles.
- Annual.* Springing up, perfecting fruit, and dying the same year.
- Anther.* The top part or knob of the stamen which contains the pollen.
- Apex.* The point end opposite the place of insertion.
- Approximate.* Growing near each other.
- Arboreous.* Tree-like.
- Ascending.* Rising gradually between a horizontal and perpendicular direction.
- Awn.* A short slender process proceeding from the top or back of glumes.
- Awnless.* Devoid of awns.
- Axil.* The hollow or angle formed by the meeting of the petiole with the stem, or a branch with the main stem.
- Axillary.* Growing from the axils.

## B

- Barren.** Producing no ripe seed.
- Base.** The part nearest the point of attachment.
- Beaked.** Terminated by a process resembling a bird's bill.
- Beard.** Parallel hairs.
- Bell-form.** Swelling out at the base in the form of a bell.
- Biennial.** Springing up from the seed, one year comes to perfection, bears seed, and dies the next.
- Bifid.** Divided into two parts.
- Bract.** A floral leaf. A thin leaf-like appendage to some flowers, lying under or interspersed in the flowers; it is generally different in colour and shape from the true leaves of the plant.
- Branchlet.** A twig.
- Bulb.** Fleshy and roundish, as the onion.

## C

- Caducus.** Any part of a plant which falls off earlier than is usual for similar parts in most of plants.
- Calyx.** The external covering of the flower surrounding the corol; it is mostly green.
- Campanulate.** See bell-form.
- Capitate.** Growing in heads.
- Capsule.** That kind of pericarp which opens by valves, and when ripe becomes dry: not including siliques, nor legumes.
- Caulescent.** Having a stalk or stem besides the peduncle or scape.
- Cauline.** Belonging to the stem.
- Cell.** The cavity of a pericarp or anther.
- Chaffy.** Having or bearing chaff.
- Ciliate.** Edged with parallel hairs resembling eye-lashes.
- Class.** The highest division in natural history. Classes are divided into orders, orders into genera, genera into species. Linnæus divided plants into twenty-four classes, but since his day botanists have reduced them to twenty-one.
- Clasping.** A sessile leaf with the two lobes partly surrounding the stem.
- Claw.** The lower and narrow parts of a petal, by which it is attached to the receptacle or calyx. This can exist only in polypetalous corols.
- Climbing.** Ascending by means of tendrils or rootlets. It differs from twining.
- Coloured.** Any colour except green; as, in botanical language, green is no colour.
- Common.** That part which serves to include or sustain several parts similar among themselves.
- Compound Flowers.** When several florets are comprised within one receptacle, each having united anthers.
- Compound Leaves.** When several leaflets grow on one petiole.
- Compressed.** Flattened.
- Conglomerate.** Consisting of a number of small heads,

*Conical.* In the shape of a cone.

*Connate.* Opposite leaves with their bases growing together, so as to appear but one leaf; as the *Eupatorium Perfoliatum*.

*Connivant.* Bending towards each other. Converging.

*Jordate.* Heart-shaped, with the lobes at the base.

*Coriaceous.* Leathery.

*Corol.* The inner delicate covering of the flower, which generally constitutes its principal ornament.

*Corymb.* The general appearance is like an umbiliferous flower, from which it differs by having its peduncles springing up at different distances down the main stem; as the *Yarrow*.

*Creeping.* Running along in a horizontal direction, sending off rootlets.

*Crenate.* Scolloped on the margin: the notches point neither to the apex nor base.

*Crenulate.* Finely crenate.

*Crested.* Having an appendage similar to a cock's comb in shape.

*Crowned.* Having hairs, feathers, or some other appendage on the top of the seeds; as the dandelion, (*Leontadon*).

*Cruciform.* Having four petals disposed in the form of a cross.

*Cryptogamia.* The name of the twenty-first class. This includes those plants whose stamens are not manifest even by the aid of the microscope.

*Cuculate.* When the edges meet in the lower part, and expand above, so as to form a hood or sheath.

*Cuneate.* Wedge-form.

*Cylindrical.* Shaped similar to a cylinder.

*Cyme.* The general appearance is like an umbiliferous flower, with which it agrees by having the stalks springing from a common centre; but disagrees in having those stalks irregularly subdivided.—The *Elder* is an example.

## D

*Decandria.* Ten males. Ten stamened. The name of the tenth class, which includes all perfect flowers with ten distinct stamens. It is also the name of the tenth order, in those classes in which the characters of the first twelve classes are taken for orders.

*Deciduous.* Falling off in the usual season; for similar parts to fall off. Not perennial.

*Declined.* Curved downwards.

*Decomound.* Doubly-compound.

*Decurrent.* When two edges of a leaf proceed down the stem below the points of insertion, and become projecting wings, it is termed decurrent.

*Dentate.* Having projections of its own substance, which are neither serratures nor crenatures.

*Denticulate.* Having very small teeth.

*Diadelphia.* Two brotherhoods. The name of the sixteenth class, which includes those flowers that have their stamens united by their filaments into one or two sets, and have papilionaceous corols.

*Diandria.* Two males. Two stamened. The name of the second

class, which comprises all those plants whose flowers are perfect ; having two stamens not growing in the pistil. It is also the name of the second order in those classes in which the characters of the first twelve classes are taken for orders.

*Dichotomous.* Forked in pairs.

*Didynamia.* Two overpowering others. The name of the thirteenth class ; it includes all those plants, which have perfect flowers, with four stamens, two longer than the other two, and the corols labiate.

*Didynamous.* Approaching to the class Didynamia.

*Digynia.* Two females. Having two pistils. The name of the second order of such of the first twelve classes, known by the flower having two pistils.

*Diocia.* Occupying two houses. The name of the twentieth class ; the plants belonging to this class have imperfect flowers, the male and female flowers grow on different plants of the same species.

*Disk.* The whole surface of a leaf, or the top of a compound flower, in opposition to margin or periphery.

*Diverging.* Branches proceeding from the stem, so as to form nearly right angles with it.

*Doubly-pinnate.* The general petiole with a second range, bearing pinnate leaflets arranged on each side of them.

*Doubly-ternate.* When the petiole is ternate, and each one has three leaves.

*Doubly-toothed.* Having the teeth dentate.

*Drupaceous.* Bearing drupes.

*Drupe.* That kind of a pericarp which is a thick, fleshy or cartilaginous coat, covering a nut or stone.

## E

*Egret.* The down remaining on the top of the seed.

*Eliptic.* In the form of an ellipse.

*Emarginate.* Notched at the termination of the midrib.

*Enneandria.* Nine males. Nine stamened. The name of the ninth class. It includes all those plants whose flowers are perfect with nine stamens in each. The number of stamens are very variable in many of the plants belonging to this class.

*Ensiform.* In the shape of a sword.

*Entire.* Continued without interruption. Undivided.

*Erect.* Upright, not drooping.

*Exsert.* Standing or protruding out.

## F

*Fascicle.* It differs very little from the corymb, except the flower stalks are much shorter : the Sweetwilliam is an example.

*Female.* See Pistillate.

*Ferruginous.* The color of iron rust.

*Fertile-flower.* Pistillate. Bearing seed.

*Filament.* That part of the stamen which extends from its insertion to the anther, supporting the latter. When this part is wanting, the anthers are sessile.

- Filices.** The first order of the twenty-first class ; it includes all ferns. The plants belonging to this order bear their fruit on the leaves.
- Filiform.** Thread-like.
- Fleshy.** Thick and pulpy.
- Flexuous.** Bending.
- Floral.** Relating or belonging to a flower.
- Floret.** A little flower. One of the number which constitutes a compound flower, whether it be large or small.
- Foliaceous.** Having abundance of leaves.
- Follicle.** A pericarp with one valve which opens longitudinally, as the asclepias.
- Funnel-Form.** In the form of a funnel.

## G

- Genus**—Includes a number of plants which agree with each other in the structure of the flowers and fruit. Genera are divided into species.
- Germ.** The part of the pistil which, after the reception of the pollen, soon enlarges, and contains the rudiment of a young plant or more. The whole substance finally becomes the pericarp and seed.
- Gibbous.** Swelled out. When one or both sides are swelled out.
- Glabrous.** Sleek, having no pubescence.
- Gland.** A roundish appendage, which serves for secretion and transpiration.
- Glaucous.** Covered with a greenish mealing, which is easily rubbed off.
- Globose.** Spherical.
- Glume.** Chaffy scales which surround and inclose the stamens and pistils of the flowers and grasses.
- Gymnospermia.** The name of the first order of the thirteenth class ; it includes those plants which have naked seeds.
- Gynandria.** Stamen and pistil united. The name of the eighteenth class ; it comprises all those plants which have their stamens inserted on the pistil, separate from the base of the corol.

## H

- Halbert-shaped.** A leaf, having acute processes proceeding from each margin at the base, as the sorrel leaf.
- Head.** Flowers heaped together in a roundish form, having either very short or no peduncles, as the clover.
- Hemispherical.** Semi-globular.
- Herbaceous.** Not woody. Perishing annually.
- Hermaphrodite.** A perfect flower.
- Hexandria.** Six males. Six stamened. The name of the sixth class ; it includes all those plants which have perfect flowers, with six stamens, neither situated on the pistil, united by their filaments into one or two sets, nor have four stamens always longer than the other two. It is also the name of the sixth order of those classes which take the character of the first twelve classes for orders.
- Hirsute.** Covered with stiff hairs.

*Hoary.* Having a whitish colour, arising from being covered with mealy scales.

*Horizontal.* Parallel to the horizon, as the Blood-root, (*Sanguinaria*.)

*Horn.* An elongated process from the base, or near it, of the calyx, corol or nectary; the Larkspur is an example.

## I—J

*Jagged.* Irregularly divided, cut or torn.

*Iconsandria.* The name of the eleventh class; which includes all plants bearing perfect flowers, with the number of stamens exceeding ten, and inserted on the calyx, as the apple, pear, rose, &c.

*Imbricate.* Leaves, scales, &c., lying over each other, as the shingles of a house.

*Incurved.* Bent inwards.

*Inferior.* When a calyx, or a corol, comes out below the germ, it is inferior.

*Inflated.* Appearing as if blown up with air.

*Interrupted.* When a spike has leaves or small flowers interposed at different intervals.

*Involucrum.* See Involucre.

*Involucre.* A kind of leafy calyx, coming out some distance below the flower, and never enclosing it like a spathe.

## K

*Kidney-form.* Hollowed out at the base with roundish lobes at the ends.

## L

*Labiate.* Having lips.

*Lamina.* The upper broad part of a petal of a polypetalous corol.

*Lanceolate.* Lance-form. When the length greatly exceeds the breadth, with a gentle taper from the base to the apex.

*Leaflet.* One of the constituent leaves of a compound leaf.

*Lezume.* A pod, without a partition running lengthways, and having the seeds attached to one edge only.

*Ligulate.* That kind of flower which consists of a strap-like petal, which is tubular at the base only.

*Linear.* Maintaining the same breadth throughout the whole length.

*Lipped.* Having lips.

*Lobe.* A division which is parted off by a rounded or curved incision.

*Longitudinally.* Lengthways.

## M.

*Male.* Staminate.

*Margin.* The circumference, or border.

*Midrib.* The middle rib of a leaf, running from the peticle to the apex.

*Monadelphia.* One brotherhood. The name of the fifteenth class; it comprises all plants having perfect flowers, with their stamens

united by their filaments into one set, and their flowers not papilionaceous.

*Monandria*. One male. Having one stamen. The name of the first class; it includes all those plants which have perfect flowers, with one stamen each, not situated on the pistil. It is also the name of the first order in those classes, which take the character of the first twelve classes for orders.

*Monoecia*. Occupying one house. The name of the nineteenth class; it includes those plants which have imperfect flowers: but the stamens and pistils grow on the same plant in different flowers.

*Monogynia*. One female. One styled. The name of the first order in the first thirteen classes; it includes all plants belonging to those classes whose flowers have one style.

*Monopetalous*. Having only one petal

*Mucronate*. Having a rounded end, terminated by a prickle, which resembles the continuation of the midrib.

*Muricate*. Covered, or armed with prickles.

## N

*Nectary*. That part of the flower which secretes honey.

*Nerves*. Rib-like fibres, running from the base of the leaf towards the apex.

*Nectariferous*. Bearing nectaries. Producing honey.

*Nodding*. Whatever is applied to droops, or hangs down.

## O

*Obcordate*. Cordate, with the point attached to the petiole: as in the common sorrel.

*Oblong*. Having the length about double the breadth, and the side nearly parallel.

*Obovate*. Ovate, with the base smallest.

*Obsolete*. When teeth, serratures, &c., are nearly obscure, and appear as if worn out.

*Obtuse*. Having the apex rounded. Blunt.

*Octandria*. Eight males. Eight stamened. The name of the eighth class; it includes all those plants which have perfect flowers, with eight stamens to each, not growing on the pistil; nor united into one or two sets by their filaments. It is also the name of the eighth order in those classes, in which the characters of the first twelve classes are taken for orders.

*Orbicular*. Nearly circular.

*Order*. The division of a class.

*Oval*. The length exceeding the breadth, having the heads equal, and rounded similar, and the sides curved the whole length.

*Ovate*. Egg-shaped, with the base largest.

## P

*Palmate*. Deeply divided, and spreading, so as to resemble a hand with the fingers spread.

*Panicled.* In panicles.

*Panicle.* When the peduncles along the main peduncle of a raceme are divided, and the flowers hang loose, it is named a panicle: Oats are an example.

*Papilionaceous.* Butterfly-form. Resembling a butterfly in shape: as the peaflower.

*Pedate.* With narrow divisions, which run down almost to the stem, and resemble the hand, with spread fingers, or a bird's foot; from the latter it derives its name.

*Pedicel.* A foot stalk. A partial peduncle.

*Pedicelled.* Having a pedicel.

*Peduncled.* Having a peduncle.

*Peduncle.* A flower stalk, which does not spring up naked from the root.

*Pedunculous.* Partaking of the character of a peduncle.

*Peltate.* Having the petiole, or style, attached to the underside of the leaf, or stigma, instead of the margin.

*Pentagynia.* Five males. Five styled. The name of the fifth order of the first twelve classes; it includes all plants belonging to these orders which have five pistils.

*Pentandria.* Five males. Five stamened. The name of the fifth class, which comprises all perfect flowers that have five stamens not growing on the pistil.

*Perennial.* Continuing longer than two years.

*Perfect flower.* Hermaphrodite. Having both pistils and stamens.

*Perfoliate.* Perforating a leaf.

*Pericarp.* Any kind of a seed vessel, or substance containing seed.

*Permanent.* Any part of a plant, which hangs on longer than is usual for similar parts in most of plants.

*Persistent.* Any part of a plant, which remains longer than is usual for similar parts in most of plants. Directly opposite to Caducous.

*Petal.* A coloured leaf of a corol.

*Petalled.* Having petals.

*Petiole.* The foot stalk of a leaf.

*Petioled.* Having petioles.

*Petiolate.* Having a petiole.

*Pinnate.* Having distinct leaflets arranged along the opposite sides of a simple petiole.

*Pinnatifid.* This differs from pinnate, by segments of leaves, instead of leaflets, arranged along the midrib.

*Pistil.* The female genital organ of plants; it is situated in the centre of a perfect flower. It consists of the germ, style, and stigma: but the style is frequently wanting: then the stigma is sessile.

*Pistillate.* Having pistils, without stamens.

*Plaited.* Folded somewhat similar to a fan when nearly full spread.

*Pollen.* A yellow mealy substance, contained within the cells of the anthers.

*Polyandria.* Many males. Many stamened. The name of the twelfth class. Comprising all those plants whose flowers are perfect, having more than ten stamens placed in the receptacle. Also the name of the twelfth order in those classes in which the character of the first

- twelve classes are taken for orders. And those plants which are very variable in regard to the number of their stamens.
- Polygamia Æqualis.* The first order of the seventeenth class. The florets of the disk and of the ray are all perfect.
- Polygamia Superflua.* The second order of the seventeenth class. The florets of the disk are perfect, those of the ray, pistillate.
- Polygamous.* Inclining to the class Polygamia. This class, however, is abolished.
- Polygynia.* The name of the thirteenth order. It includes those plants belonging to the first twelve classes, whose styles or sessile stigmas, exceed ten.
- Polypetalous.* Having more than one petal.
- Pome.* A pulpy pericarp, without valves, containing the capsule: as the apple, pear, and quince.
- Pubescent.* Hairy. Having hair or down.
- Punctate.* Dotted.

## Q

- Quadrangular.* Having four corners or angles.
- Quinate.* Having five leaflets on one petiole.

## R

- Raceme.* That manner of flowering, wherein the florets are arranged on pedicels along the side of a general peduncle: as in currants.
- Radiating.* Spreading out from around the margin.
- Radical.* Proceeding directly from the root.
- Ray.* The outer margin of a compound flower.
- Receptacle.* The end of the peduncle, in which is inserted the other parts of the flower.
- Reflexed.* Bent back, so as nearly or quite to touch the stem or peduncle.
- Reniform.* Kidney-shaped.
- Repand.* When bordered by teeth separated by small segments of circles. Waved.
- Repent.* Creeping.
- Retuse.* See Emarginate.
- Reversed.* Bent back towards the base.
- Revolvute.* Rolled back. Applied to a leaf when the opposite margins are rolled back till the rolls meet at the midrib.
- Rugose.* Wrinkled.
- Runcinate.* Pinnatifid, with the divisions pointing backwards

## S

- Saggitate.* Shaped like an arrow head; differing from Cordate, by having its lobes acute.
- Salverform.* A monopetalous corol, having a flat spreading limb proceeding from the top of the tube.
- Scabrous.* Covered with elevations, which are not perceptible to the eye, but are harsh to the touch.

- Scape.* A peduncle, springing immediately from the root, and devoid of leaves.
- Segment.* The parts into which a leaf, corol, petal, &c., is divided or cut.
- Serrate.* Having the margin notched, appearing as if cut, and pointing towards the apex.
- Serrulate.* When a serrate leaf has its teeth serrate again; it is also applied to leaves with extremely small serratures.
- Sessile.* When a leaf or a flower, &c. is destitute of a petiole or peduncle, &c., it is sessile.
- Setaceous.* Resembling a bristle in proportion and size.
- Silicle.* A Silique, whose length and breadth are nearly equal.
- Siliculosa.* The name of the first order of the fourteenth class; it includes those plants which have a silicle, whose length is never double its breadth.
- Silique.* That kind of a pod which has a longitudinal partition, to which the seeds are attached alternately at each edge.
- Simple.* Undivided.
- Sinuate.* Having the margin hollowed out by rounded incisions: as the oak leaf.
- Solitary.* Standing alone.
- Spadix.* An elongated receptacle, proceeding generally from a spathe or sheath. In the Arum Triphyllum it emerges from the spathe; but in the Acorus Calamus the spadix is destitute of a sheath.
- Spathe.* The kind of calyx which first incloses the flower, but after it expands it is left at a distance below it.
- Species.* The lowest division in the vegetable kingdom.
- Spike.* Having florets arranged along the sides of a general peduncle or receptacle, with either very short or no peduncles.
- Spiked.* In spikes.
- Spine.* A thorn.
- Stamen.* The male genital organ of plants; in perfect flowers it is situated next to the pistil. It generally consists of a filament and an anther; the latter contains the pollen.
- Staminate.* Having stamens without pistils.
- Staminiferous.* See Staminate.
- Stigma.* The top of the pistil.
- Stipular.* Having connection with, or formed of stipule.
- Stipule.* A leaflet or scale, near or at the point of insertion of the petiole.
- Striate.* Marked or grooved with small lines.
- Strobile.* An ament, with woody scales: as the fruit of the pine.
- Style.* The part of the pistil between the germ and the stigma.
- Sub-cordate.* Somewhat heart-shaped.
- Sub-dentate.* Somewhat toothed.
- Sub-globular.* Somewhat roundish.
- Sub-radical.* Somewhat radical.
- Sub-serrulate.* Somewhat serrulate.
- Sub-sessile.* Nearly sessile.
- Subulate.* Linear at the base, and becoming sharp and more or less curved to one side at the point.
- Succulent.* Juicy; also applied to pulpy leaves.

*Superior.* When a calyx or a corol comes out from the upper part of the germ, it is superior.

*Syngenesia.* Anthers growing up together in an united tubular set. The name of the seventeenth class, which comprises all those plants whose flowers are compound, having the anthers (which are five in number in each floret,) adnate, so as to form a tube.

## T

*Terminal.* Proceeding from or occupying the extremity of a branch or twig, &c.

*Ternate.* In threes.

*Tetradynamia.* Four stamens in superiority over the other two. The name of the fourteenth class, which comprises all plants whose flowers uniformly have six stamens with four longer than the other two, and cruciform corols.

*Tetrandria.* Four males. Four stamened. The name of the fourth class, which comprises all perfect flowers which have four stamens distinct, and not two long and two short ones.

*Throats.* The internal part of a ringent corol, where the tubular part begins to open into lips.

*Tomentose.* Covered with down matted together.

*Toothed.* See Dentate.

*Tooth-serrate.* Partaking of the nature of a serrate and dentate leaf.

*Triandria.* Three males. Three stamened. The name of the third class. It includes all those plants which have perfect flowers, with three stamens each, not growing on the pistil.

*Triangular.* In the form of a triangle. Three cornered.

*Trichotomous.* Three-forked.

*Tricuspidate.* Three-pointed, each point ending in a bristle or prickle, or a straight simple point.

*Trifid.* Divided into three parts.

*Trigynia.* Three styled. The name of the third order in the first twelve classes; it includes all the plants belonging to those orders which have three pistils.

*Truncate.* The end appearing as if cut off: as the end of the Tulip-tree.

*Tuberous.* Roots, which are thick and fleshy, but not of a regular globular form: as the potato.

*Tubulous.* The corol of a compound flower which forms a tube, not a ligulate floret.

*Twining.* Ascending by winding around: as the *Heamulus Lupulus*, (Hop).

## U

*Umbel.* That manner of flowering, in which the flowering stems diverge from one common centre, like three braces of an umbrella; if these stems be again subdivided, a partial umbel is formed

*Umbeliferous.* Bearing umbels.

*Unarmed.* Having neither thorns nor prickles.  
*Undulate.* Waved.

## V

*Veined.* Having ribs or tendinous fibres, variously branched.  
*Ventricose.* Inflated. Bellied out.  
*Vexillum.* The upper petal of a papilionaceous flower.  
*Villose.* Covered with soft whitish hairs.

## W

*Wheel-shaped.* Wheel-form. A monopetalous corol, with a spreading border, and having an extremely short tube.  
*Whorl.* Leaves or flowers disposed in a circular manner around a stem.  
*Whorled.* Surrounding the stem at intervals.



No. 1.

ASCLEPIAS TUBEROSA.



PLEURISY ROOT.

## ASCLEPIAS TUBEROSA. *The Root.*

*English Name*—ORANGE SWALLOW-WORT.

*Vulgar Names*—PLEURISY ROOT, BUTTERFLY-WEED, FLUX-ROOT, WIND-ROOT, WHITE-ROOT, SILK-WEED, CANADA-ROOT, &c.

### *Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PETANDRIA.

Order II.—DIGYNIA.

*Genus*—ASCLEPIAS—Follicles 2: Corol, 1 petalled, inferior: reflected: nectaries 5, ovate, concave; each putting out a little horn.

*Species*,—TUBEROSA—Leaves alternate, oblong, lanceolate, sessile; umbels forming a terminal corymb; stem erect, hairy, spreading at the top of flowers; a bright orange colour.

### *Description.*

Root perennial, large fleshy white of variable form, fulsiform, crooked or branched; many stems, either erect, ascending, or procumbent; round, hairy, green, or red. Leaves scattered, sessile, or on short foot stocks; very hairy, pale beneath, entire or undulate, oblong or lanceolate, or nearly linear, obtuse or acute; the flowers are received by long slender pods, containing the seed, to which is attached a kind of silk; flowers erect, and of a bright orange colour.

### *History.*

This plant is easily known by its bright orange-coloured flowers, blossoming in July and August; it is a very ornamental plant, although inodorous. All the *Asclepias* are milky, but this is less than the others. They all produce a fine glossy and silky down, which has been used for beds, hats, cloth, and paper.

### *Locality.*

It is found throughout the United States, but it grows more abundantly in the Southern States; it prefers open situations, poor and gravelly soils, along gravelly streams, and on hills; but is rarely to be met with in rich and loamy soils.

### *Quality.*

The root, when dry, is brittle, and easily to be reduced to powder; it is somewhat bitter, but not unpleasant; it contains a bitter extractive and fecula, both soluble in boiling water. When fresh, the root, as well as the whole plant, is rather unpleasant, sub-acrid, and nauseous.

## MEDICAL PROPERTIES.

*Subtonic, Diaphoretic, Expectorant, Diuretic or Astringent, Laxative  
Carminative, Antispasmodic, &c.*

It is a valuable popular remedy, and a mild sudorific, acting safely, without producing any stimulating effect upon the body. Its action is specifically upon the lungs, to assist suppressed expectoration, and to relieve the difficult breathing of patients labouring under Pleurisy. It appears, likewise, to exert a sort of mild tonic effect, as well as stimulant power over the excretories. It relieves difficulty of breathing and pains in the chest. It sometimes acts as a mild cathartic, suitable to the complaints of children. In low stages of Typhus and other febrile diseases, it has been known to excite perspiration when other sudorifics have failed

Dr. Bigelow, in support of the remediate properties of this article, says, "I am satisfied of its utility as an expectorant medicine, and have seen no inconsiderable benefit arise from its use as a palliative in *phthisis pulmonalis* (consumption)." Dr. Eberle, of Philadelphia, in his Therapeutics, speaks very favorably of this article: "having witnessed its good effects," says he, "in *pneumonia*, or inflammation of the lungs, and *phthisis pulmonalis*, (consumption) and in one case of acute rheumatism, I prescribed it with much apparent benefit." It restores the tone of the stomach and digestive powers. It has been given in Asthma, Syphilis, and for Worms.

Dr. Burgon, of Bucks' county, Pennsylvania, speaks highly of it in the fever, diarrhœa, and other distressing symptoms accompanying dentition; he recommends the following mode of administering it:—"Boil two drachms of the root, in a pint of fresh milk, down to three gills; an ounce of this is to be given two or three times in twenty-four hours. It very seldom fails to produce copious perspiration, and at the same time proves gently laxative."

The same Physician recommends it also in the cholera infantum, or the summer complaint, and marasmus. It is also very servicable in flatulent colics.

*Employment.*

The doses are from twenty to thirty grains of the powder of the root three times a day, or about a gill of the strong decoction may be taken as often. A vinous and aqueous infusion are sometimes recommended; it enters into the Diaphoretic Decoction of our Pharmacy, and used principally for Pleurisy; also into Smith's Colic Powders. I have given a strong tea, or infusion. in Chronic Dysentery, with success.



No. 2.

ANTHEMIS NOBILIS.



CAMOMILE.

No. 2.

**CAMOMILE.** *The Flowers.**Latin Name*—**ANTHEMIS NOBILIS.***English Name*—**CAMOMILE.***Botanical Character.*Class XVII.—**SYNGENESIA.**Order II.—**POLYGAMIA SUPERFLUA.**

*Genus*—**ANTHEMIS**—Receptacle chaffy; florets of the disk hermaphrodite, of the margin female; all fertile; seeds generally crowned with a slight border; calyx hemispherical; florets of the ray more than five, oblong.

*Species*—**NOBILIS**—Leaves doubly-pinnate; leaflets 3-parted; linear subulate, a little downy.

*Description.*

This plant rises near a foot in height. Stem slender, trailing, hairy, of a pale green. Flowers compound, in the centre yellow, in the ray white, standing singly, terminal. Flowers in the ray usually eighteen, strap-shaped, ending in three sharp teeth.

*Locality.*

Camomile is a perennial plant, indigenous in the south of England, but cultivated in our gardens for medicinal purposes.

*History.*

Camomile flowers in July and August. The flowers have a strong, not ungrateful, aromatic smell, and a very bitter nauseoustaste. Their active constituents are bitter extractive, and essential oil. To the latter are to be ascribed their antispasmodic, carminative and diaphoretic effects; to the former their influence in promoting digestion.

*Properties.*

Camomile flowers are *antispasmodic, carminative, tonic, &c.* They enter into one of our pectoral preparations; also into our *restorative cordial*. The flowers are useful in *phthisis pulmonalis*, in *hysteria*, in *spasmodic* and *flatulent colics*, in the vomiting of puerperal women, in gout, in intermittents and in typhus fevers. No bitter is more common in the derangement of the stomach and digestive organs. We are told by Dr. Cullen, that Dr. Pitcairn was of the opinion that their powers in intermittents were equal to those of the Peruvian bark. Hoffman seems to have thought them very effectual, and at the same time a safer remedy. The infusion is used to assist the action of emetics.

Camomile flowers boiled down with milk, and applied to Mrs. H.'s neck, cured her of a painful glandular swelling, proceeding from cold.

*Employment.*

These flowers may be given in infusion, or tea, which may be drank warm, to promote the action of emetics. It may be taken in wine, in cases of debility, and in the form of tea in pulmonary complaints, and, boiled in vinegar, may be used as a fomentation in painful glandular swellings. They give out their virtues both to water and spirit.

No. 3.

**WILD CAMOMILE.***Latin Name*—**ANTHEMIS COTULA.***English Name*—**WILD CAMOMILE.***Vulgar Names*—**MAYWEED, DOGS-FENNEL, DILLY, DILWEED, FIELDWEED, &c.***Botanical Character.*

*Genus*—**ANTHEMIS**—Flowers compound, radiate. Perianthe hemispherical, imbricate; rays above five, female; phoranthe conical, chaffy; seeds naked.

*Species*—*Cotula* annual, pubescent, stem angular, furrowed, braced; leaves bipinnatifid, sessile, carinate; pinnules, linear, acute. Peduncles grooved, naked, thicker above; chaff bristly; seeds obovate, 4-sided, furrowed.

*Description.*

Root annual, crooked, fibrous; stem and leaves covered with short oppressed woolly hairs; stem from one to two feet high, erect and very much branched, irregular, angular and striated; branches corymbose; leaves alternate, sessile, flat doubly pinnatifid, or almost pinnate; carinate beneath, in the middle; pinnules flat unequal, linear, acute, entire or trifid; flowers many, forming a terminal corymb, each on a naked peduncle, erect, grooved and thicker upwards. The central florets of the disk are numerous and of a bright yellow; those of the rays are linguiform, from seven to twelve, and white. Seeds brown, obovate, 4-sided, grooved and tuberculated.

*History.*

It blossoms from June to November, affording a profusion of flowers in succession, of the size of camomile, but never double. The whole plant has a strong smell, but not fetid.

*Locality.*

Our plant is indigenous, and not naturalized, as mentioned by some botanists. It is spread all over the United States, from Maine to Louisiana, but confined almost everywhere to open fields. It is never found in woods, but delights in the sun, road sides, stony places, old fields, &c.

*Qualities.*

Graveolent, bitter and nauseous. The smell of the plant resides in a volatile oil, of a strong graveolent aroma, and diffused throughout the whole plant, but more concentrated in the flowers. This oil is bitter, and communicates a bitterish acrid taste to the whole plant.

*Medical Properties.*

The properties of this article are similar to the common camomile, but weaker, and less pleasant to the taste. It may be substituted for it with safety. As a tonic, it may be used in all cases where tonics



No. 4.

ALOE SPICATA.



ALOE.

are indicated. It is *sudorific, stimulant, anodyne, emetic, &c.* The external use in fomentations is proper, in white swellings, rheumatism, hysteric fits, suffocations, piles, pains and contusions. It acts always as a sudorific, promoting copious sweating, and is very beneficial to assist the action of emetics. In large doses it is emetic, but in small ones it is diaphoretic and gently tonic. It is highly prized by country people, to promote perspiration in many incipient complaints.

*Employment.*

A tumblerful of the infusion may be given three or four times a day; and, to promote perspiration, it may be freely drank, and warm.

---

No. 4.

**ALOE—*Inspissated Juice of the Leaves.***

*Latin Name*—ALOE SPICATA.

*English Name*—ALOE.

*Botanical Character.*

Class VI.—HEXANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—ALOE—Corolla erect, inferior, 6-cleft, with an expanded mouth, and a nectariferous base; calyx 0: filaments inserted on the receptacle.

*Species*—SPICATA—Caulescent; leaves flat, ensiform, toothed; flowers spiked, campanulate, horizontal. CAPE, the best aloes is prepared from this species.

*Description.*

Root fibrous; stem or scape two or three feet high, covered with sharp scales; leaves thick, succulent, from eight to ten inches long, of a green glaucous colour, crowded at the base of the stem; flowers red, in an elongated spike, hanging, tubular; calix cylindrical; six stamina adherent to the base of the calix; stile terminate with a trilobed stigma.

*Locality.*

The aloes is a perennial plant, of which there are many varieties, which grow in the south of Europe, Asia, Africa and America. But Thunberg says, and the Dublin College agree with him, that the finest aloes are prepared from the *Aloe Spicata* the second species of Willdenow, which grows at the Cape of Good Hope.

*Qualities of the Inspissated Juice.*

In the chemical composition of this article, there appears to be some obscurity: M. Braconnot (*Ann. Chim. t. lxxviii.*) conceives it to be a substance, *sui generis*, which he terms "bitter resin," while others regard it as composed of resin, gum and extractive, the proportions of which are supposed to vary in the different species; but that their peculiar virtues reside in the extractive part.

*Medical Properties.*

There are three kinds of aloes in commerce, viz. the socotorine, the hepatic, and the cabaline or horse aloes: this last is used only for horses. The first is the kind generally made use of by physicians. It is a warm stimulating purgative, operating with peculiar force upon the large intestines, and particularly upon the rectum, and by emptying the uterus, often producing piles, if given alone. It should never be administered to pregnant women, or persons subject to the hæmorrhoides, nor to women who are menstruating; neither in leucorrhœa, or when there is any discharge from the womb. It is good in habitual costiveness, and in obstruction of the menses. It warms the habit, and quickens the circulation. Given in small doses, of from one to two grains, it acts as a tonic upon the alimentary canal, promotes digestion, and assists the regular peristaltic action of the intestines. It has proved effectual in expelling small worms in children. Aloes has been employed externally in the weakness of the eyes, as well as in opacities of the cornea. It enters into one of our formulas for *dyspepsia*; "the *Anti-Dyspeptic Pills*." It is the basis of many noted nostrums.

*Employment.*

It is given in substance, in tincture, or in combination with other articles. In substance, it is given in doses of from five to fifteen grains. The best form of administering it, is in that of pill, combined with other articles.

---

 No. 5.
**ARCHANGEL—*The Root, Stem and Seed.***

*Latin Name*—ANGELICA, ARCHANGELICA.

*English Name*—GARDEN ARCHANGEL.

*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

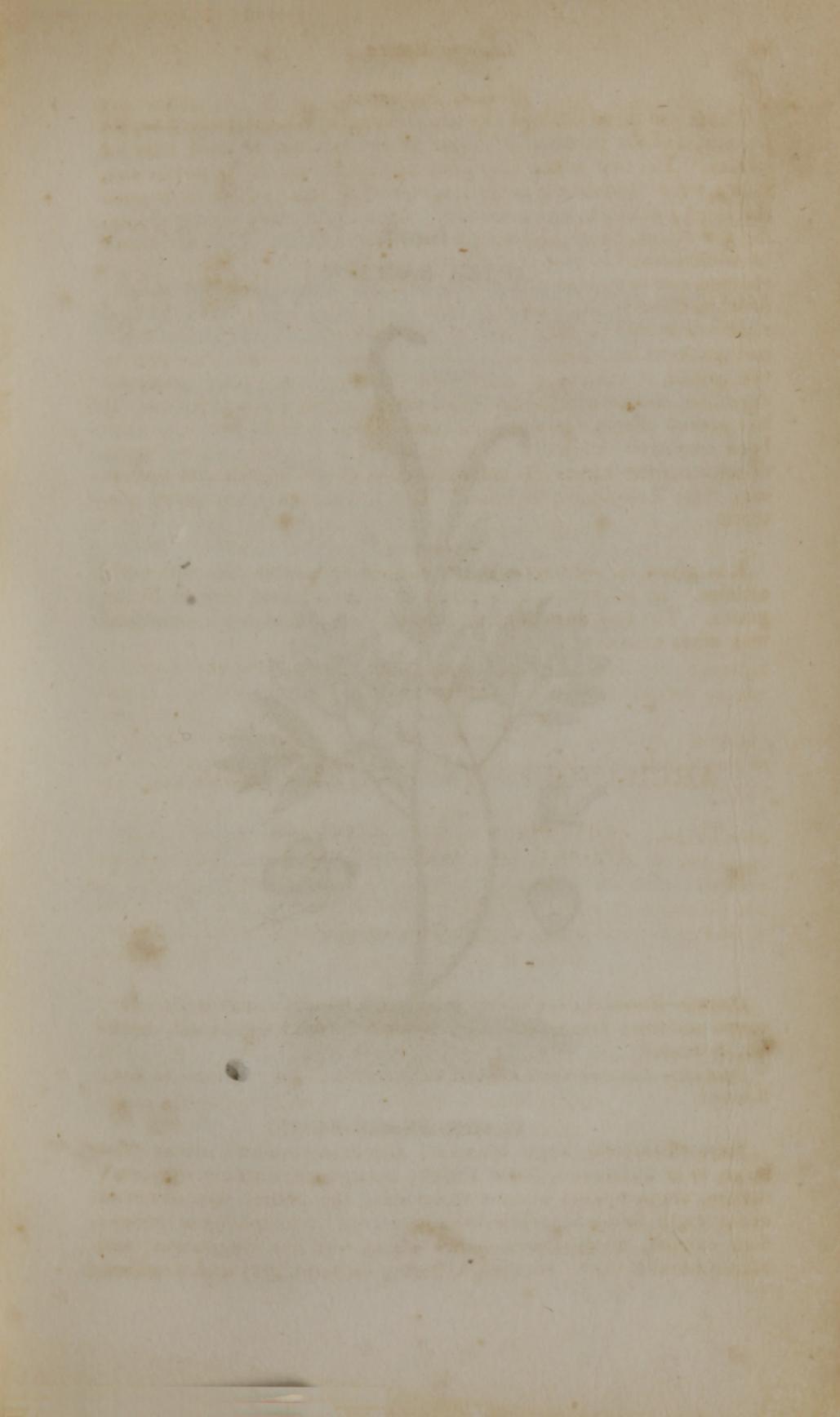
Order II.—DIGYNIA.

*Genus*—ANGELICA—Flowers tubulous, all fertile; umbels globular; corols uniform; petals incurved; styles reflected; seeds solid, roundish, 3-winged.

*Species*—ARCHANGELICA—Leaves pinnate; the terminal leaflet; 3-lobed.

*Description.*

Stem cylindrical, large, branched, striate and hollow; leaves very large, bi or tripinnate; flowers white, in large and numerous umbels; involucre composed of several leaflets; the partial involucre of about eight folioles; petals slightly curved; two divergent styles; fruit ovoidal, membranous on the edges, with five longitudinal and saliant parallel lines; root large, fleshy, fusiform, gray and wrinkled.



No. 6.

ACTEA RACEMOSA.



BLACK SNAKE-ROOT.

*History.*

This plant flowers in June and July, and the seeds are ripe in August.

*Locality.*

This is a biennial plant, and indigenous to the southern parts of France, but is cultivated in our gardens.

*Qualities.*

Every part of this plant has a warm and bitter taste, and a very pleasant smell. The whole plant, and the root and seeds more especially, contain an essential oil, resin, and an extractive matter.

*Medical Properties.*

Angelica possesses very powerful, stimulant and conservative properties, which may be administered with advantage in all diseases in which an excitant may be required. It is administered with advantage in disorders arising from flatulence, and debility of the stomach and digestive organs. It is recommended in nervous headach pains, in tremors of the limbs, chlorosis, hysteria, &c. It has been exhibited in the last stage of chronic catarrhs of the lungs with success, in order to facilitate expectoration, and to restore the tone to the mucous membrane. We use it in the form of infusion or tea, for flatulence or wind; and for clysters or injections in that species of dropsy, called *Tympanites*. It may be given also for pain in the breast.

---

 No. 6.
**BLACK SNAKE-ROOT.**

*Latin Name*—*ACTEA RACEMOSA*.

*English Name*—BLACK SNAKE-ROOT.

*Vulgar Names*—SQUAW-ROOT, RICH-WEED, RATTLE-WEED, RATTLE SNAKE-ROOT, BLACK COHASH.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XII.—POLYANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—*ACTEA*—(Synom. *Macrotys*) calyx, about 4-leaved; becoming coloured before expanding, caducous; corol, many minute petals, very caducous or wanting; stigma sessile; berry 1-celled; seeds flat, placed in a row.

*Species*—*RACEMOSA*—Leaves decomposed, 7-leaflets, oblong-ovate, gash toothed; racemes very long; capsules ovate; fruit dry.

*Description.*

Root perennial, blackish, thick, with long fibres; stem simple, straight, and rises from three to six feet in height, smooth, angular furrowed, and often crooked; leaves few, and alternate, tri-pinnate; flowers in a long terminal raceme, from one to three feet long, often

with one or two short ones at its base. This raceme is cylindrical, white, always bent or crooked at first: the flowers are scattered, often germinate or fasciculate on short peduncles. Capsule blackish and dry; seed many and flat.

#### History.

The American species has an extensive range, and was used by all the Indians. It blossoms in June and July; its seeds are ripe in August. The whole plant, and even the flowers, are possessed of medicinal properties.

#### Locality.

Found all over the United States, from Maine to Florida, Louisiana and Missouri, Canada and Texas; common in open woods, rich grounds, and on the sides of hills; not so common in rocky mountains and sunny glades; very scarce in moist and swampy soils.

#### Qualities.

The root and plant have rather an unpleasant smell, and a disagreeable nauseous taste. Schoepf considers it as nearly poisonous, and to be used with caution; yet powerful and heroic. According to Dr. G. W. Mears' analysis, it contains tannin, extractive matter, a bitter principle, gallic acid, resin, gum and starch.

#### Medical Properties.

*Astringent, diuretic, alterative and emmenagogue, &c.* It is an article much used by the Indians in rheumatism, and to accelerate parturition, whence it bears the name of *Squaw-root*. When exhibited in large doses, it produces great prostration, and excites nausea, vomiting, vertigo, anxiety, and pains in the extremities, &c. It is astringent, and therefore is pronounced an excellent remedy in bowel complaints, and especially those of children. A strong decoction mixed with slippery-elm bark, makes a good poultice for every kind of inflammation. A decoction is also used for the purpose of arresting hæmorrhage or bleeding. A syrup made of the root is good for coughs. It also makes an excellent gargle for the quinsy.

#### Dose.

Tincture, from twenty to thirty drops, several times a day. As an astringent, give a strong tea or infusion. As a gargle, any quantity.

No. 7.

ARCTIUM LAPPA.



BURDOCK.



No. 7.

**BURDOCK.** *The Root and Seed.**Latin Name*—ARCTIUM LAPPA.*English Name*—BURDOCK.*Botanical Character.*

Class XVII.—SYNGENESIA.

Order I.—POLYGAMIA ÆQUALIS.

*Genus*—ARCTIUM—Receptacle chaffy; calyx globular; the scales ending in an incurved hook; seeds crowned with chaffy bristles; flowers in heads.

*Species*.—LAPPA—Cauline leaves, conduplicate, petioled, denticulate; calyx smooth; flowers pale blue.

*Description.*

This plant rises three feet in height. Stem large, and purplish; branches alternate. Leaves also alternate, heart-shaped, veiny; above, of a dark-green; beneath, whitish; lower leaves large, standing upon long foot-stalks, grooved like the stem; flowers numerous, purplish, generally ending in pairs; seeds triangular; root long, fibrous, fusiform, brownish externally, yellowish internally.

*History.*

This plant flowers in July and August, and is well known by the burs or heads, which stick to the clothes; the seeds ripen in September.

*Locality.*

This plant is indigenous to Europe, and naturalized in America. It grows abundantly in damp places, and along the sides of roads and around old buildings.

*Qualities.*

This substance, of which no accurate analysis has yet been made, seems to contain sulphur in a free state, some oxalate of lime, starch, and some extractive principles, soluble in water.

*Medical Properties.*

It is used as an alterative. The seeds or the root occasionally enter into the *alterative syrup* of our pharmacopœia. It is administered in the form of a decoction, in salt-rheum, herpes, ulcers and rheumatism, and in all diseases of the skin. Thornton recommends the use of this article in dropsy, where more active articles cannot be used, "having known it to succeed in two dropsical cases, where other powerful medicines had been ineffectually used."

The leaves, applied to the feet and forehead, are useful in febrile diseases.

*Employment.*

The root or seeds may be given in the form of a decoction or infusion, which is made by boiling two ounces of the fresh root in three pints of water to two; which, when intended as a *diuretic*, should be drunk in the course of two days. The root enters into a medical beer, which is good to purify the blood.

No. 8.

**ASARABACCA.***Latin Name*—ASARUM CANADENSE.*English Name*—BROADLEAF ASARABACCA.*Vulgar Names*—WILD GINGER, INDIAN GINGER, CANADA SNAKE-ROOT, HEART SNAKE-ROOT, COLTS-FOOT.*Botanical Character.*

Class XVIII.—GYNANDRIA.

Order X.—DECANDRIA.

*Genus*—ASARUM—Calyx 3-cleft, superior, somewhat bell-form: corol 0; anthers proceeding from the middle of the filaments; capsule coraceous, 6-celled, crowned with the calyx; stigma, 6-cleft.

*Species*—*Canadense*—Leaves 2, broad kidney-form; calyx woolly, 3-parted; divisions reflexed.

*Description.*

Roots perennial, long, creeping, fleshy, cylindrical, jointed, with scattered fibres, brown outside, white inside. The leaves resemble the foot of a horse, or colt, from which it derives its name. Flowers solitary between the two leaves, on a curved foot stalk, downy, purple, darker inside; capsule round, 6-sided, crowned, and with many small seeds.

*History.*

This is an humble stemless plant; the flowers are nearly concealed in the ground. There are many varieties of this plant, with large and small leaves, rounded, spotted, and unspotted; the flowers vary also in colour, from greenish-purple to dark-purple. They blossom in May and June.

*Locality.*

This plant is indigenous to Europe; but is found from Canada to Carolina, and Missouri, in shady woods and in clay soils; more abundant in hills, valleys, and moist soils.

*Qualities.*

The whole plant, but more particularly the root, has a warm aromatic bitterish taste, resembling that of ginger. The smell is spicy and strong. The chemical composition of this article consists in a volatile oil, possessing the smell of the plant, likewise a red and bitter resin, both soluble in alcohol, besides much fecula and mucilage.

*Medical Properties.*

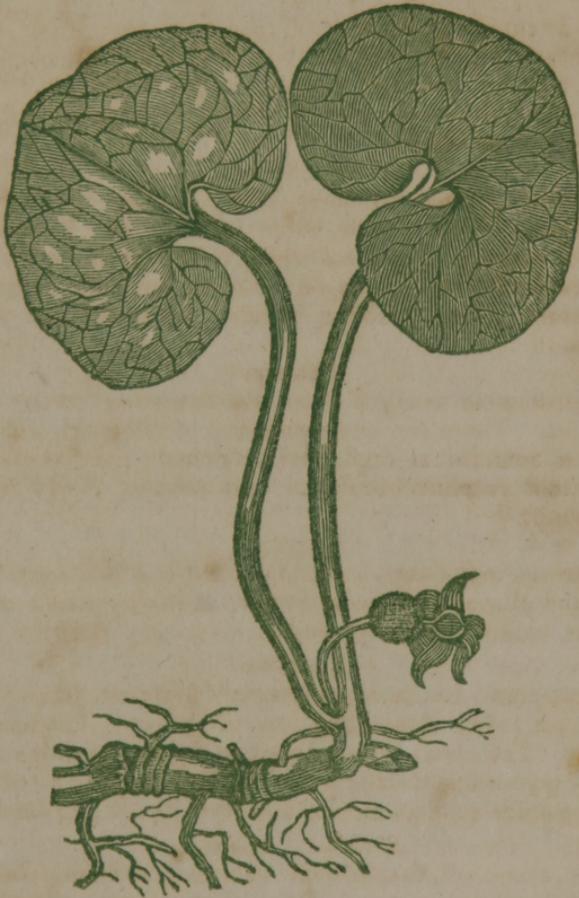
Aromatic, stimulant, diaphoretic, subtonic, errhine, and pectoral. It has been used with success in intermittent fevers. The pulverized leaves make an excellent errhine, and enter into Henry's celebrated cephalic snuff. It is excellent for colds, coughs and pulmonary diseases generally.

*Employment.*

The dose of this must be small, as it is apt to excite vomiting. It may be given in the form of syrup or infusion, in all deep seated coughs.

No. 8.

ASARUM CANADENSE.



BROADLEAF ASARABACCA.



No. 9.

**DEADLY NIGHTSHADE.** *The whole Plant.**Latin Name*—ATROPA BELLADONNA.*English Name*—DEADLY NIGHTSHADE.*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—ATROPA—Corol monopetalous, campanulate; stamina distant, incurved; berry superior, globular, 2-celled.

*Species*—BELLADONNA—Stem herbaceous; leaves ovate, entire; berries black.

*Description.*

Root very thick, whitish, sending forth strong purple coloured stalks of from three to four feet in height; leaves oval, acute, large, of a deep green colour; flowers large, of a tarnished red, solitary and hanging, bell-shaped, furrowed, the border of which is cut into five segments.

*History.*

This is a perennial plant, and flowers from June to August. Its fruit is ripe in September, when it is black.

*Locality.*

It is found growing in stony and shady places, along old walls and fences, and among old ruins.

*Qualities.*

It is possessed of a disagreeable smell, and nauseous and acrid taste. According to Brande, it contains a bi-malate of atropia, gum, starch, resin, chlorophile, lignin, a matter analogous to osmazome, some salts, &c. Water and alcohol take up its active principles.

*Medical Properties.*

This article, taken in large doses, acts like a narcotic, acrid poison, and causes death quickly. In small doses it irritates the stomach, and produces heaviness of the head, vertigo, dilatation of the pupils of the eyes, irregularity of the pulse, &c. This plant, notwithstanding its poisonous quality, is used with great benefit externally, in the cure of cancers, and in discussing indolent tumours and schirrhosities in the breasts of females. It enters into the *discutient ointment* of our pharmacopœia. But we generally substitute for it the *solanum nigrum*, which seems possessed of similar properties.

*Employment.*

The leaves and roots, either green or dry, may be simmered in soft water, until the strength is extracted; then the slippery-elm bark may be stirred in till a poultice is formed. It may be applied to boils, and all hard painful glandular swellings.

No. 10.

**FENNEL. *The Seed.****Latin Name*—ANETHUM FOENICULUM.*English Name*—SWEET FENNEL.*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order II.—DIGYNIA.

*Genus*—ANETHUM—Seeds ovate, somewhat compressed, striate; calyx entire; corol, 5-petalled; superior petals involute, entire.

*Species*—FOENICULUM—Fruit ovate, cauline; leaves numerous.

*Description.*

This is a perennial plant, rising four feet in height; stem ramose, smooth; leaves, vaginant at their base; flowers on terminal umbels of a pale yellow, without involucre or involucellum; three petals, revolute; stamina spreading longer than the corolla; fruit elongated, flattened on the edges.

*History.*

This plant flowers in June and July; fruit ripe in September.

*Locality.*

This plant is a native of Spain and Portugal, and is perfectly naturalized to this country; grows principally in gardens.

*Qualities.*

The seeds are of a pale-green colour, of a strong aromatic and agreeable smell, of a sweetish and slightly acrid taste. The root is long, of the size of the finger, and almost inodorous. Fennel seeds contain a green essential oil, and a fixed, inodorous and tasteless oil. Water, and especially alcohol, take up their active principles.

*Medical Properties.*

Fennel seeds are endowed with energetic properties as a stimulant, which appears to consist in the essential oil which they contain. They are principally employed in flatulencies, difficult digestion, such as dyspepsia; in colic of children. They are useful in pain and weakness of the breast.

*Employment.*

Of the infusion, or tea, give freely through the day.

No. 11.

**GARLIC. *The Root.****Latin Name*—**ALLIUM SATIVUM.***English Name*—**COMMON CULTIVATED GARLIC.***Botanical Character.*Class VI.—**HEXANDRIA.**Order I.—**MONOGYNIA.**

*Genus*—**ALLIUM**—Corol, inferior, 6-petalled, spreading; divisions ovate; spathe bifid; many flowered; umbel crowned; stigma simple.

*Species*—**SATIVUM**—Caulinè leaves flat; leaves linear; bulb-bearing; bulb compound; staminæ tricuspidate.

*Description.*

This plant rises a foot or more in height. The leaves from the root are numerous; on the stem few, long, flat, grass-like. Flowers arise between the small bulbs, which terminate the stem in a cluster. The flower is white and commonly abortive. The calyx is a spatha common to all the florets and bulbs. The corolla consists of six oblong petals. The capsule is short, broad, 3-celled and 3-valved, and contains roundish seeds.

*History.*

Garlic is a perennial bulbous-rooted plant.

*Locality.*

Garlic grows wild in Sicily, but is cultivated in our gardens for culinary use.

*Medical Qualities.*

The root consists of five or six small bulbs, enclosed in one common envelope of a thin whitish colour. Its strong, disagreeable taste and odour are sufficiently known. It contains a very heavy acrid and yellow volatile oil, albumen, sulphur, a saccharine matter and fecula. Its property depends upon the above acrid and volatile oil.

*Medical Properties.*

A poultice of it is a good resolvent in indolent tumours. It is of service in *colds* and coughs, united with honey, as an expectorant. As a counter-irritant, it is useful to cause revulsion; or in the form of *draughts*, to equalize the circulation. In asthma, both pituitant and spasmodic, and in flatulencies, and in hysterical diseases, it has in general a good effect. It is useful, applied externally, in fevers; applied to the feet, it is useful in all inflammatory diseases.

*Employment.*

To prepare the syrup, garlic bulb, sliced, one pound; boiling water, two pounds; double refined sugar, four pounds; macerate the garlic in the water in a close vessel, for twelve hours, and add the sugar to the strained liquor. In inflammation of the lungs, give a tablespoonful occasionally. For children, it is very useful in colds and oppression of the chest.

No. 12.

**GINGER. *The Root.****Latin Name*—AMOMUM ZINGIBER.*English Name*—GINGER.*Botanical Character.*

Class I.—MONONDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus.*—AMOMUM—Calyx 3-cleft, unequal, cylindrical; corol 3-parted, unequal, expanding; nectary 2-lipped, nearly erect.

*Species.*—ZINGIBER—Scape naked; spikes ovate; scales ovate; leaves lanceolate, alternate, with a ciliate margin at the tip; corol yellowish-green, with a slender tube.

*Description.*

This plant has two kinds of stalks; one of which bears only the leaves, (which resemble those of reeds, common to India, and closely wound round each other at the base,) and rises to a foot or two in height; the other kind bears the flowers, and does not rise beyond ten or twelve inches in height, terminating at the top by a kind of ear of very beautiful colours, formed of membranous scales; amongst which, the flowers proceed, which are composed of five irregular petals, which have somewhat the appearance of being lipped, and are succeeded by a capsule, containing a great number of seeds. Root tubercular, of the size of the finger, flat, knotty, and palmated-like, hard, compact, covered with a grayish epidermis, white or yellowish internally.

*History.*

Ginger flowers in September, and is of two kinds, the black and white. The black is thick and knotty; internally of an orange colour, and externally of a yellow colour. The white is less thick and knotty; internally, of a reddish-yellow colour, and externally, of a whitish-gray or yellow.

*Locality.*

Ginger is a perennial plant, a native of the East Indies, but is now cultivated in the West Indies, and much like potatoes.

*Qualities.*

The root is possessed of an acrid and warm taste, and a very strong smell. Ginger, according to the analysis of Morin, contains a resin soluble in ether; a sub-resin insoluble in that menstruum; a volatile oil of a greenish-blue colour; a matter containing nitrogen; another matter similar to osmazome; some acetic acid, acetate of potassa, gum, ligneous fibre, and salts. Water, alcohol, and ether, dissolve a part of its active principles.

*Medical Properties.*

Ginger is a warm, stimulating aromatic, useful in cold, flatulent colics, in laxity, and debility of the intestines, and in some forms of

No. 12.

AMOMUM ZINGIBER.



GINGER.



dyspepsia, proceeding from atonic gout. It promotes the circulation, and relieves pain, particularly in the stomach. It is serviceable in the form of tea, in an habitual coldness of the system.

*Employment.*

In flatulence, languid circulation, and a check of perspiration, a strong tea may be taken freely. It is also used in the form of syrup.

---

No. 13.

## MYRRH. *Tree.*

*Latin Name*—AMYRIS KATAF.

*English Name*—MYRRH.

*Description.*

A botanical specimen of the tree which affords this gum resin has not yet been obtained; but from the account of Bruce, who says it very much resembles the *acacia vera* of Linnæus, there can be little doubt in referring it to that genus, especially as it corresponds with the description of the tree given by Dioscorides.

Good myrrh is of a turbid black-red colour, solid and heavy, of a peculiar smell, and bitter taste.

*Locality.*

The tree that affords the myrrh, which is obtained by incision, grows on the eastern coast of Arabia Felix, and in that part of Abyssinia which is situated near the Red sea, and is called by Bruce *Troglodyte*.

*Qualities.*

Myrrh is composed, according to Pelletier, of resin and essential oil 34; gum 68. It is more soluble in boiling water than in alcohol, and, rubbed with one fifth of camphor, it becomes perfectly miscible with water.

*Properties.*

Myrrh is used internally as a stimulant, antiseptic, and emmenagogue; externally as a detergent wash in foul ulcers, and particularly as an injection in sinous ulcers.

Dr. Cullen remarks, that it heated the stomach, produced sweat, and agreed with the balsams in affecting the urinary passages. It has lately come more into use as a tonic in hectic cases, and is said to prove less heating than most other medicines of that class.

A writer says, that the "tincture of myrrh is recommended internally for warming the habit, attenuating viscid juices, strengthening the solids, opening obstructions, particularly those of the uterine vessels, and resisting putrefactions. The dose is from fifteen to forty drops, or more. It may, perhaps, be given in these cases with advantage, though it is more commonly used externally, as a stimulant and antiseptic application, for clearing foul ulcers, and promoting the exfoliation of carious bones."

The tincture is used also as a wash, when diluted, for scorbutic relaxation of the gums. It enters into the *emmenagogue* or *black powder* of our pharmacopœia.

*Employment.*

Of the powder, ten grains to one drachm. The tincture is made as follows :

1. Myrrh, powdered fine, three ounces.
2. Alcohol, twenty ounces.
3. Water, ten ounces.

Let them stand together seven days, and then strain it through brown paper.

---

No. 14.

**INDIAN TURNIP. *The Root.***

*Latin Name*—ARUM TRIPHYLLUM.

*English Name*—THREE-LEAVED ARUM.

*Vulgar Names*—INDIAN TURNIP, DRAGON ROOT, DRAGON TURNIP, PEPPER TURNIP.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XIX.—MONŒCIA.

Order XII.—POLYANDRIA.

*Genus*—ARUM—Spathe cuculate 1-leaved ; spadix cylindrical, naked above, bearing the stamina in the middle, and the pristillate flowers beneath. Berry mostly 1-seeded.

*Species*—TRIPHYLLUM—Leaves ternate ; leaflets ovate, acuminate ; lamina lanceolate, acuminate, as long as the spadix.

*Description.*

This plant arises from one to two feet in height ; roots perennial, round, flattened, tuberous, with many white fibres around the base ; skin dark, wrinkled and loose ; leaves oval, three on each plant, pale beneath, with regular parallel nerves. The germs, when ripe, become berries of a very bright scarlet colour.

*History.*

This plant blossoms with us from May to July, and in the summer bears its bright scarlet berries. By long boiling, the seeds and roots may be rendered eatable. They were eaten by the Indians of this country by roasting and boiling.

*Locality.*

It grows all over North America, in woods and low moist soils. All soils and regions appear suited to this plant ; but rich and shady grounds appear to suit it better.

*Qualities.*

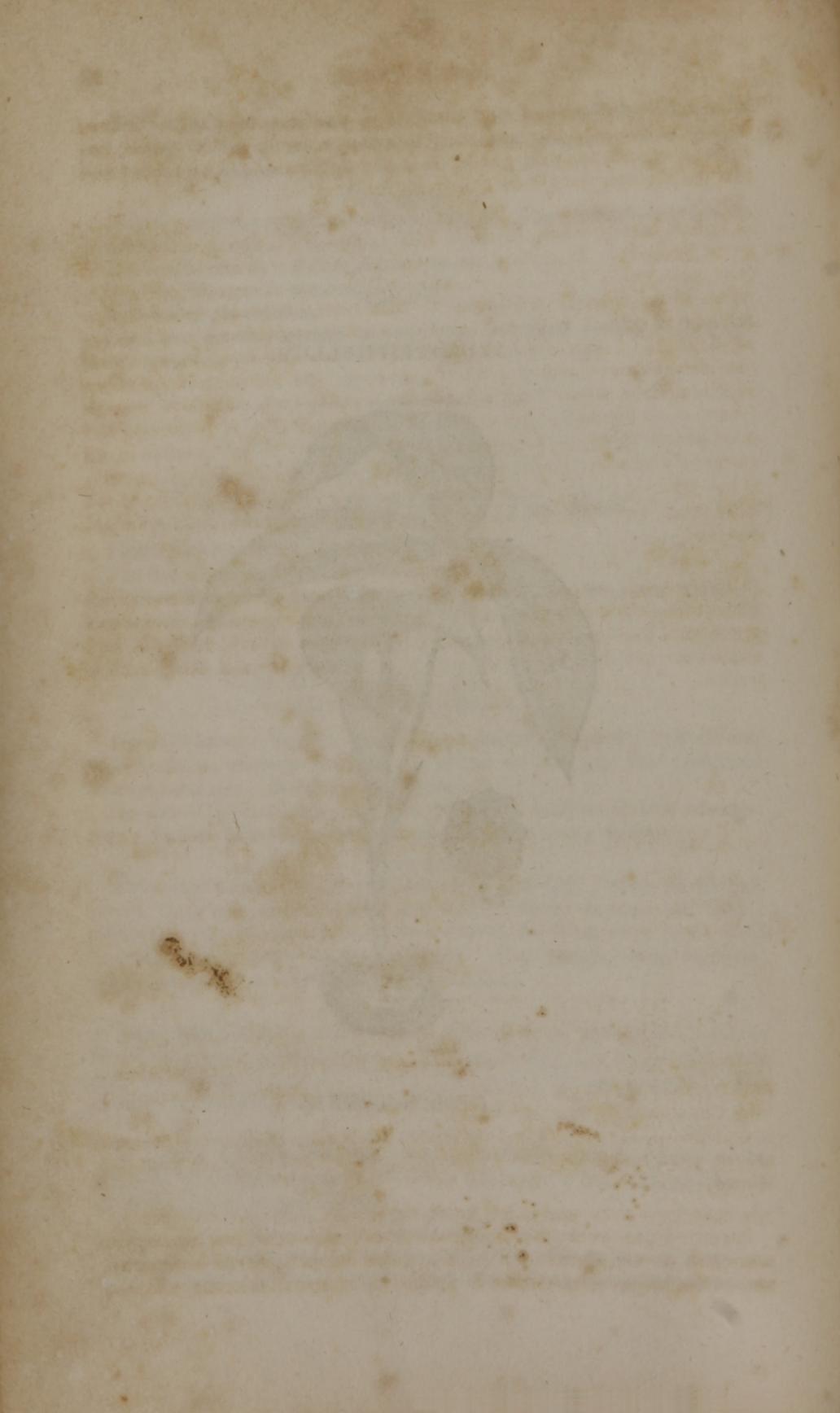
The whole plant, and the root in particular, is possessed of a violent acid, pungent and even caustic taste, but it does not irritate the skin.

No. 14.

ARUM TRIPHYLLUM.



INDIAN TURNIP.



The active principle of this plant is a peculiar substance, aroine, highly volatile, having no affinity to water, alcohol, oils or acids; becoming an inflammable gas by heat and distillation. The roots yield one fourth their weight of a pure starchy matter.

*Medical Properties.*

Indian turnip, when fresh, makes a powerful, strong, stimulating, acrid remedy. It makes an excellent poultice in scrofulous swellings, and, when dried and pulverized, it is a good remedy in coughs, pains in the breast, and, given in teaspoonful doses, it is a valuable remedy in colic. It is said to be very efficacious in cases of low typhus fever. I have found it to answer in cases of scrofula, as one of the best poultices in use. Dr. Chapman, of Philadelphia, in speaking of this article, says: "my experience with it is not extensive, though I have seen enough of its use to be convinced that it is among the most active of our expectorants, and so far may be serviceable in old catarrhs and other pituitous cases." The dried root, boiled in milk, is the manner in which he recommends it. An ointment made of the fresh root and lard, is useful, says a writer, in tinea capitis, (scald head.)

*Employment.*

The powder, mixed in molasses or milk, and given in teaspoonful doses three or four times a day. For scrofulous swellings, bruise the green root and leaves, and apply. If the root be dry, bruise it, and add water, and boil till soft; then stir in slippery-elm bark, until a poultice of a proper consistence is formed.

---

No. 15.

**AMERICAN IPECACUANHA. *The Root.***

*Latin Name*—APOCYNUM CANNABINUM.

*English Name*—AMERICAN IPECACUANHA.

*Vulgar Names*—INDIAN HEMP, INDIAN PHYSIC.

*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order II.—DIGYNIA.

*Genus*—APOCYNUM—Calix very small, 5-cleft; corol campanulate; anthers converging, saggitate; nectareous filaments 5, alternating with the stamina; stigma thick, subsessile.

*Species*—CANNABINUM—Stem erect, branching, herbaceous; leaves oblong-oval, hoary beneath; cymes lateral, terminal, longer than the leaves.

*Description.*

Stems of this plant, from one to several, about two feet in height, branched above, round, and of a reddish colour; leaves numerous, and ovate, hanging on footstalks; flowers terminal, forming a loose

panicle, whitish, similar to buckwheat, which terminate in seed pods resembling cucumbers, containing seeds; root composed of numerous long, brown and slender branches, radiating from a thick tuber.

*Locality.*

This is a perennial plant, indigenous to the United States; grows in meadows and in low, moist woods.

*Qualities.*

The root of this plant consists of a bark and ligneous part. The active property appears to be confined altogether to the bark. Its taste is bitter and nauseous, and its smell nearly resembles that of ipecacuanha. According to Dr. Bigelow, it contains a bitter, extractive matter, a resin, &c.; and Dr. Staples has ascertained that this root does not contain emetic.

*Medical Properties.*

This plant is emetic, cathartic, tonic and diuretic. It has been given with success in dropsy. Dr. Eberle, in his Therapeutics, (vol. i. p. 77.) says; "From my own experience with this plant, which has not been inconsiderable, I am led to regard it as very little inferior to the officinal ipecacuanha as an emetic. Like this latter article, it is a safe and efficacious vomit." In small doses, it acts as a tonic, given in quantity of from three to four grains at a time in this manner. Dr. Eberle considers it to be useful in dyspepsia, as having been benefited by the use of it while suffering with that disorder himself.

*Employment.*

Of the powder, as an emetic, in the dose of about thirty grains. As a tonic, from two to four grains.

We use it principally as a tonic, in indigestion, in combination with other articles. It is one of the ingredients which comprises the wine bitters, which is very valuable in dyspepsia.

---

No. 16.

**MALE FERN. *The Root.***

*Latin Name*—ASPIDIUM FILIX MAS.

*English Name*—MALE SHIELD FERN.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XXI.—CRYPTOGAMIA.

Order I.—FILICES.

*Genus*—ASPIDIUM—Fructification in roundish, scattered dots, not marginal; involucre umbilicate, opening nearly all around.

*Species*—FILIX MAS—Doubly pinnate; subdivisions oblong, obtuse, serrate at the top; stalk scaly; fructifications reniform.

No. 16.

ASPIDIUM FILIX MAS.



MALE SHIELD FERN.



*Description.*

Root horizontal ; has a great many appendages placed close to each other in a vertical direction, while a number of small fibres strike downwards ; leaves large, oval, pinnate ; pinnulæ close to each other, very long and pinnatifid ; petioles short, of a deep brown colour, and furnished with scales ; fruit kidney form and rounded.

*Locality.*

This plant is perennial, and grows in great abundance in every part of Great Britain, where the ground is not cultivated. It is found also growing on the mountains and among rocks, in New-Jersey.

*Qualities.*

This root is nearly inodorous, its taste slightly bitter, sweetish, sub-astringent and mucilaginous. According to M. Morin's analysis, this root contains a volatile oil, a fatty matter, some uncrystallizable sugar, gallic acid, tannin, starch, &c. According to the experiment of Mr. Peschier, an apothecary of Geneva, the anthelmintic properties of this article reside in a peculiar fatty matter.

*Medical Properties.*

The male fern appears to have an indifferent action on the animal economy, but appears to be highly deleterious to intestinal worms, and particularly to the tape-worm. This article constitutes the basis of the celebrated specific of Madam Nomer for the tape-worm.

This secret was thought of such importance by some of the principal physicians at Paris, who were deputed to make a complete trial of its efficacy, that it was purchased by the French king, and afterward published by his order. The method of cure is the following :—After the patient has been prepared by an emollient clyster, and a supper of panada, with butter and salt, he is directed to take in the morning, while in bed, a dose of two or three drachms of the powdered root of the male fern. The powder must be washed down with a draught of water, and, two hours after, a strong cathartic, composed of jallap and scammony, is to be given, proportioned to the strength of the patient. If this does not operate in due time, it is to be followed by a dose of purging salts ; and if the worm be not expelled in a few hours, this process is to be repeated at proper intervals. Of the success of this, or a similar mode of treatment, in cases of tænia, there can be no doubt, as many proofs in this country afford sufficient testimony ; but whether the fern root, or the strong cathartic, is the principal agent in the destruction of the worm, may admit of a question ; and the latter opinion, Dr. Woodville believes, is the more generally adopted by physicians. It appears, however, from some experiments made in Germany, that the tænia has, in several instances, been expelled by the repeated exhibition of the root, without the assistance of any purgative.

*Employment.*

Of the powdered root, from two to three drachms. Two hours after its administration, a purgative must be given, in order to procure the expulsion of the worms.

MARSHMALLOWS—*Root, Leaves and Flowers.**Latin Name*—*ALTHÆA OFFICINALIS.**English Name*—*MARSHMALLOW.**Botanical Character.*Class XV.—*MONODELPHIA.*Order XIII.—*POLYANDRIA.*

*Genus*—*ALTHÆA*—Calyx double; the outermost 6 9-cleft; capsules numerous; 1-seeded, disposed in a flat ring.

*Species*—*OFFICINALIS*—Leaves downy, oblong-ovate; obsolete, 3-lobed, serrate.

*Description.*

This plant rises from three to four feet in height. Leaves heart-shaped, downy, smooth; flowers of a rose-white colour, large, consisting of five petals, heart-shaped inversely, in panicles at the top of the stem; calyx double; the exterior, 9-divided; the interior, 5-divided; ovary free, rounded; style simple; monospermous; capsules united in a circle at the base of the style. Root fusiform, fleshy, of the size of the finger.

*History.*

This is a perennial plant, flowering in June and July.

*Locality.*

Marshmallows is a plant indigenous to Europe, and grows plentifully throughout the United States, growing along the banks of rivers and marshy places.

*Qualities.*

The marshmallows, such as is found in commerce, is stripped of its epidermis, fleshy, of the size of the finger, of a white colour, inodorous, and of a viscous taste. All parts of this plant, and the roots especially, contain a large quantity of gum and fecula. Boiling water takes up its principles.

*Medical Properties.*

Emollient and demulcent: good in diseases attended with irritation and pain, especially of the urinary organs; and in dysentery it is used with great advantage. They relax the passages in nephritic complaints, in which last case a decoction is the best preparation. Two or three ounces of the fresh roots may be boiled in a sufficient quantity of water to a quart, to which one ounce of gum Arabic may be added. The following is given where it is required that large quantities should be used. An ounce of the dried roots to be boiled in water, enough to leave two or three pints to be poured off for use: if more of the root be used, the liquor will be disagreeably slimy. If sweetened, by adding a little more of the root of liquorice, it will be palatable. Very useful in canker of the mouth, as fomentations and injections.



No. 17.

ALTHÆA OFFICINALIS.



MARSHMALLOW.

No. 18.

AMYGDALUS COMMUNIS.



COMMON ALMOND.



*Employment.*

*Decoction*, as above. *Marshmallow troches*: mallow, two parts; orris-root, one part; sugar, thirty-six parts; gum Arabic, sufficient to form into troches. Made into an ointment, it proves very serviceable in herpatic affections. It is good to allay itching and burning from any cause; and in all disorders of the urinary organs it is serviceable; also in bowel complaints.

---

No. 18.

## ALMOND.

*Latin Name*—AMYGDALUS COMMUNIS.

*English Name*—COMMON ALMOND.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XI.—ICOSANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—AMYGDALUS—Calyx inferior, 5-cleft; corol 5-petalled; drupe with a nut perforated with pores.

*Species*—COMMUNIS—Lower teeth of the leaves glandular; flowers in pairs, sessile.

*Description.*

The almond tree rises twelve, or more, feet in height; flowers of a pale pink colour, which are placed in pairs upon its branches; the flowers appear before the leaves; the leaves are elliptic, narrow, pointed at the end, minutely sawed, standing upon short foot-stalks.

*History.*

This tree flowers early in the spring, before the leaves have put forth; and it nearly resembles the peach tree.

*Locality.*

This tree originally came from Syria and Barbary; but is now much cultivated in the south of Europe.

*Qualities.*

The almond is a flattish kernel, of a white colour, and of a soft, sweet taste, or a disagreeable bitter one. The oil, which is the principal part used in medicine, is of a greenish-white colour, of a smell analogous to that of sweet almonds. This oil turns rancid with the greatest facility. Its composition does not differ from that of the fixed oils in general.

Bitter almonds yield a large quantity of oil, perfectly similar to that obtained from sweet almonds, but the matter remaining after the expression of the oil, is more powerfully bitter than the almond in its entire state. Great part of the bitter matter dissolves by the assistance of heat, both in water and rectified spirit; and a part arises also with both menstrua in distillation. Bitter almonds have been long known to be poisonous to various brute animals; and some authors have

alleged that they are also deleterious to the human species ; but the facts recorded upon this point appear to want further proof. However, as the noxious quality seems to reside in that matter which gives it the bitterness and flavour, it is very probable, that when this is separated by distillation, and taken in a sufficiently concentrated state, it may prove a poison to man, as is the case with the common laurel, to which it appears extremely analogous.

*Medical Properties.*

The oil of almond is serviceable in tickling coughs, hoarseness, &c. It acts likewise upon the urinary organs, in the scalding of urine ; and in the diseases of the kidneys, especially when combined with other remedies, it is peculiarly serviceable. Externally, it is applied against tension and rigidity of particular parts. The milky solutions of almonds in watery liquors, usually called emulsions, possess, in a certain degree, the emollient qualities of the oil, and have this advantage over pure oil, that they may be given in acute or inflammatory disorders, without danger of the ill effects which the oil might sometimes produce by turning rancid.

*Employment.*

It enters into one of our preparations for pulmonary diseases, denominated "cough drops," and which we find very useful. Also into one called "diuretic drops," for diseases of the kidneys, urinary organs, &c.

---

No. 19.

**PARSLEY.**

*Latin Name*—**APIUM PETROSELINUM.**

*English Name*—**ROCK PARSLEY.**

*Botanical Character.*

**Class V.—PENTANDRIA.**

**Order II.—DIGYNIA.**

*Genus*—**APIUM**—Flowers flosculus ; all fertile petals inflected uniform ; involucre 1-leafed ; seeds minute, striate.

*Species*—**PETROSELINUM**—Leaflets of the stem linear ; involucels minute.

*Description.*

Parsley is a biennial plant ; it rises two feet in height. The radical leaves are without foot-stalks, compound, pinnated in threes. The leaflets are smooth, veined, divided into three lobes, and notched at the margin ; flowers small, of a yellow colour, placed on terminal umbels.

*Locality.*

This plant is indigenous to the south of Europe ; but is likewise naturalized to our climate, and is generally cultivated for culinary uses.

*Qualities.*

This plant has an aromatic and agreeable smell, and a faint taste. The seeds are of a warmer and more aromatic taste than the plant.

*Properties.*

It is a very good diuretic, and there are cases on record, in which it has entirely cured the dropsy.

*Employment.*

It is given in tea or decoction, by infusing one ounce of the root in a quart of water, and drank freely.

---

No. 20.

**STAR GRASS.**

*Latin Name*—ALETRIS FARINOSA.

*English Name*—MEALY STARWORT.

*Vulgar Names*—STAR-GRASS, BLAZING-STAR, BITTER-GRASS, UNICORN-ROOT, AGUE-ROOT, AGUE-GRASS, STAR-ROOT, DEVILS-BIT.

*Botanical Character.*

Class VI.—HEXANDRIA.

Order I.—MONGYNIA.

*Genus*—ALETRIS—Corol funnel-form, wrinkled superior, somewhat 6-cleft; the stamens inserted on the base of the segments; capsule 3-celled; cells many-seeded.

*Species*—FARINOSA—Stemless; leaves lanceolate; flowers alternate, farinaceous.

*Description.*

Root perennial, small, black outside, brown inside, ramose, crooked. Radical leaves from six to twelve, spreading on the ground like a star, but all unequal in size, sessile, lanceolate, very smooth, with many longitudinal veins; they are of a pale green; stem from one to two feet in height, very simple and upright; flowers white, forming a long, slender, scattered spike; shape oblong, spreading into six acute segments, like a star at the top; the outside has a mealy rugose appearance.

*History.*

A true natural genus, peculiar to North America, and containing two species very similar to each other. It blossoms in June and July.

*Locality.*

This plant has a wide range, from New-England to Georgia, and west to Kentucky and Missouri. It is more abundant in the south, and always confined to dry and poor soils, in sunny glades and fields.

*Quality.*

The roots of this plant contain an intense bitter emulsive resin, soluble in alcohol, somewhat similar to aloes, but less cathartic. This bitter principle is also partly soluble in water. They contain extractive, but very little or no tannin, or gallic acid.

*Properties.*

This root is intensely bitter, like quassia and aloes. It is tonic, stomachic and narcotic. Rafinesque says, that it must be taken in small doses, not over twelve grains at once, as it will nauseate, produce giddiness, or narcotic effects, if taken in large doses. In pains of the breast and flatulencies, it is an excellent remedy: in repeated small doses it invigorates the appetite. The infusion, or decoction, is still better, and may be used as a substitute for quassia. Rafinesque says, that bitters prepared from this article are too powerful; and he recommends a mild cordial as the best spiritous preparation of this article. Doses, three small wineglasses each day.

*Employment.*

In the form of infusion, or in tincture. The tincture may be made by adding an ounce of the root to a pint of proof spirits, of which a tablespoonful may be given three times a day, before eating.

---



---

No. 21.

**SPIKENARD.**

*Latin Name*—ARALIA RACEMOSA.

*English Name*—COMMON SPIKENARD.

*Botanical Description.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order V.—PENTAGYNIA.

*Genus*—ARALIA—Umbellets with an involucre; calyx 5-toothed, superior; corol 5-petalled; berry 5-seeded.

*Species*—RACEMOSA—Stem herbaceous, smooth; leaves compound, branched, alternate; peduncles axillary, branched, umbellated; umbils terminal, round.

*Description.*

This plant rises four or five feet in height; leaves are many, small, ovate, on long foot-stalks; main stalk of the size of the thumb, jointed, purplish; flowers inconspicuous, very small, of a bluish colour, producing berries very much resembling those of elder, of a sweet, pleasant, aromatic taste.

*History.*

It blossoms in July and August; its berries are ripe in September and October.

*Locality.*

Spikenard is found from New-England to Carolina and Indiana, but it is more common in the north than in the south; grows in deep woods and good soils. It is generally cultivated in gardens.

*Qualities.*

The root of this plant has a balsamic, fragrant, and warm aromatic, sweetish taste.

No. 21.

ARALIA RACEMOSA.



COMMON SPIKENARD.





No. 22.

ASCLEPIAS SYRIACA.



COMMON SILK WEED.

No. 23.

ARISTOLOCHIA SERPENTARIA.



VIRGINIA SNAKE-ROOT.

*Properties.*

The root of this plant is *healing, pectoral, stimulant, cordial* and *diaphoretic*.

This plant is much used by the Indians. The roots, bruised, chewed, or pulverized, were used by them in all kinds of sores and ulcers. In colds and coughs, the roots and berries may be used in syrups, cordials and decoctions. Henry speaks very highly of the superiority of this medicine in gout of the stomach. The manner in which he prescribes this article is, by pouring a pint of brandy on a pint of the fresh berries, and let it stand by the fire for a week, then pour a pint of rain water on them. Dose, a wineglassful, three times a day. This article enters the "*restorative cordial*" of our pharmacopœia, also the pulmonary balsam.

*Dose and mode of administering.*

It may be given in infusion, decoction, or syrup.

---

No. 22.

**SILK WEED. *The Root.***

*Latin Name*—ASCLEPIAS SYRIACA.

*English Name*—COMMON SILK WEED.

*Vulgar Name*—MILK WEED.

*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order II.—DIGYNIA.

*Genus*—ASCLEPIAS—Follicles 2; corol 1-petalled, inferior reflect-ed; nectaries 5, ovate, concave, each putting out a little horn.

*Species*—SYRIACA—Stem simple; leaves opposite, oval, downy beneath; umbels nodding.

*Description.*

This plant has a square stalk, rising three feet high; leaves oval, smooth and milky; flowers yellow, which terminate in pods resembling cucumbers, filled with a silky down; seeds resembling somewhat the seeds of parsnip. The root is white, and of the size of the finger, about a foot in length.

*Locality.*

It grows plentifully throughout the United States, along the sides of roads and in sandy grounds.

*Properties.*

The root of this plant is a powerful *diuretic*; it is said to be *emmenagogue*, and has been found beneficial in catarrhal, cachectic, scrofulous and rheumatic disorders. Boil eight ounces of the root, in six quarts of rain water to three; strain it for use. For the dropsy, take a gill of this decoction four times a day, increasing the dose according to the effect. Those who are troubled with a suppression of urine, may take a teacupful of this decoction four times a day, sweetened with honey.

*Dose and mode of administering.*

Given in form of the above decoction, or in powder, of from twenty to forty grains, three or four times a day. We use it generally in combination with several other articles, for different species of dropsy. (See *Pharmacy*.)

---

No. 23.

**VIRGINIA SNAKE-ROOT.**

*Latin Name*—ARISTOLOCHIA SERPENTARIA.

*English Name*—SNAKE-ROOT, BIRTHWORT.

*Vulgar Names*—VIRGINIA SNAKE-ROOT, SNAKE-WEED, SNAGREE.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XVIII.—GYNANDRIA.

Order VI.—HEXANDRIA.

*Genus*—ARISTOLOCHIA—Calyx 0; corol 1-petalled, tubular, tongue-shaped; stigmata 6; capsule inferior, 6-celled.

*Species*—SERPENTARIA—Leaves oblong cordate, acuminate, flat; stem weak, flexuous; peduncles radical.

*Description.*

Root perennial, knotty and gibbose, brown and very fibrous; fibres long, small, yellow, when fresh. Stems round, slender, weak, jointed, bearing from three to seven leaves, and from one to three flowers; leaves alternate and petiolate; base heart-shaped, end sharp, surface smooth, of a pale green. Flowers nearly radical and solitary, on foot-stalks curved, jointed, coloured, with some small scales; germ inferior, perigone, reddish, or purplish; tube crooked, limb bilabiate; upper lip notched, lower entire, both short and lobular; 6-sessile; anthers oblong, obtuse, attached to the sides of a large round sessile stigma; capsule oboval, with six angles, six cells and many minute seeds.

*History.*

The Virginia snake-root of commerce is collected from half a dozen species or varieties. All of those plants blossom but seldom, or once in their lives, in May or June.

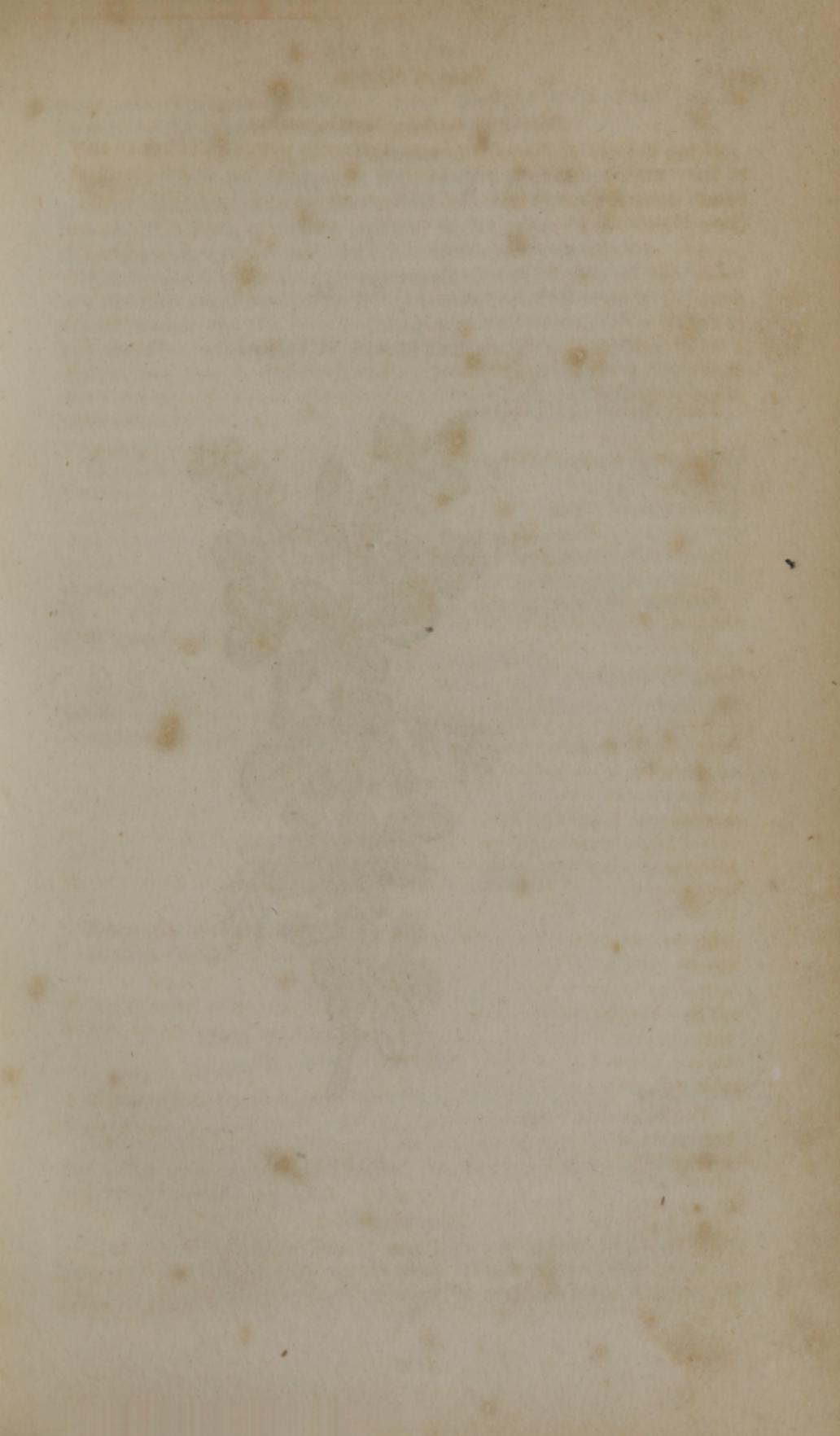
*Locality.*

Found in shady woods, from New-England to Florida and Missouri; but most abundant in the Alleghany and Cumberland mountains; scarce in alluvial and limestone regions.

*Qualities.*

The root has an agreeable, penetrating, aromatic smell, somewhat similar to valerian; and a warm, bitterish, pungent taste.

It contains, according to Mr. Chevallier's analysis, an essential oil, to which it is indebted for its odour; a bitter yellow matter, soluble in water and alcohol, a resinous matter, some gum, albumen, starch,



No. 24.

BERBERIS VULGARIS.



BARBERRY.

some salts of potassa and lime, a small quantity of iron and silica. Its active principles are soluble in water and alcohol.

*Properties.*

*Diaphoretic, tonic, anodyne, antispasmodic, cordial, antiseptic* and a powerful *stimulant* to the whole system. It was first introduced in the *Materia Medica* as a remedy against snake bites, from which it derives its name, and was used by the Indians for that purpose.

The Virginia snake-root possesses very powerful and lasting stimulant virtues; but, besides this general action, it must be observed that it acts also on the skin by stimulating this membrane and increasing perspiration. It is useful in the treatment of typhoid fevers of armies and prisons, and it has undoubtedly produced very good effects in many cases. It is now less frequently employed, although it may be administered with success generally, in all the cases in which it becomes necessary to promote perspiration.

Dr. Chapman, in speaking of the virtues of this article, says, "To remittent fever, serpentaria seems still better adapted, having, in many cases, an indisputable superiority over the bark, inasmuch as it rarely is offensive to the stomach, and may be given in those obscure states of the disease, where the remission is not readily discernible. In that disorder called bilious pleurisy, it has been highly useful. In bilious complaints it checks vomiting and tranquillizes the stomach." It enters into the *sudorific drops*.

*Doses and mode of administering.*

Of the powder, from ten to twenty grains, and gradually to half a drachm. Infusion, four drachms to one pound of water, of which one or two ounces may be given every four hours.

---

No. 24.

**BARBERRY. *Bush.***

*Latin Name*—BERBERIS VULGARIS.

*English Name*—BARBERRY.

*Botanical Character.*

Class VI.—HEXANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—BERBERIS—Corol 6-petalled, with two glands at the base of each; calyx 6-leaved; style 0; berry superior, 2-seeded.

*Species*—VULGARIS—Racemes simple, pendulent; leaves obovate, the serratures ending in soft bristles; branches punctate; spines mostly in threes; berries red, acid.

*Description.*

This shrub rises from four to eight feet in height, with branches long and bending, having many small thorns, often three together. The leaves are crowded and unequal in each fascicle, on short leaf

stalks, smooth and glossy, oboval, obtuse, with small remote teeth. The flowers are on slender and lax racemes, either nodding or pendulous; yellow on long pedicels, and rather small. Berries hang in loose bunches; they are oblong and red.

#### *History.*

This shrub blossoms in April and May. The berries ripen in June, but they are sometimes abortive. The stamina of the flowers are irritable, and bend with elasticity toward the pistil when touched.

#### *Locality.*

It is found from Canada to Virginia, in mountains, hills, among rocks, &c.; common in New-England in rocky fields; rare in the West, and in rich soils.

#### *Qualities.*

The whole shrub, even the root, is acid. In the berries, this acid becomes very pleasant, and is probably the tartaric acid, but mixed with some astringency. The bark is yellow and bitter.

#### *Properties.*

*Antiseptic, acid, subastringent, refrigerant, &c.* Added to good hard cider, it is good in jaundice. The berries contain a very acid and red juice, which forms a pleasant and useful drink in fluxes and malignant fevers, for abating heat, quenching thirst, raising the strength, and preventing putrefaction. Prosper Alpinus says, that being attacked with a putrid fever, accompanied with a bilious diarrhoea, he attributes his recovery entirely to eating the fruit of the barberry. Simon Pauli gives a similar account of the use of the berries. J. Bauhin recommends the same remedy in dysentery.

#### *Dose and mode of administering.*

Made into syrup, infusion or decoction. We add to it hard cider, and give it in jaundice.

---

No. 25.

## BLACK BIRCH.

*Latin Name*—BETULA LENTA.

*English Name*—COMMON BLACK BIRCH.

#### *Botanical Character.*

*Genus*—BETULA—Staminate; flowers corol 4-parted; calyx scale of the ament 1-leafed; 3-cleft; 3-flowered; stamens ten or twelve. Petiolate flowers, calyx scales of the ament 1-leafed, generally 3-cleft; 2 or 3-flowered; styles 2 seeds, 1-winged.

*Species*—LENTA,—Leaves cordate, ovate, sharply serrate, acuminate; petioles and nerves hairy beneath large trees.

#### *Description.*

This tree rises from twenty to forty feet in height, sending out many



No. 26.

BAPTISTA TINCTORIA.



YELLOW OR WILD INDIGO.

branches at the top ; leaves ovate, the edges notched, upper surface smooth, the under ribbed, and pale coloured.

*Locality.*

Grows in woods that are low and swampy. Found all over the United States.

*Properties.*

It is tonic and astringent, and enters into one of our preparations for bowel complaints, and is the only case in which we use it.

---

No. 26.

## WILD INDIGO.

*Latin Name*—BAPTISIA TINCTORIA.

*English Name*—INDIGO BROOM.

*Vulgar Names*—WILD INDIGO, INDIGO WEED, HORSEFL WEED, YELLOW BROOM, CLOVER, BROOM, RATTLE BUSH, YELLOW INDIGO.

*Botanical Character.*

Class X.—DECANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—BAPTISIA—(*Podalyria* Lin.)—Calyx 4 or 5-parted, somewhat labiate ; coral papilionaceous, petals nearly equal in length ; vexillum laterly-reflected ; stamina deciduous ; legume ventricose many-seeded.

*Species*—TINCTORIA—Very glabrous and branching ; leaves ternate, subsessile ; leaflets, cuneate-obovate, round-obtuse, stipules obsolete oblong-acute, much shorter than the petioles ; racemes terminal ; flowers yellow ; the plant becomes black in drying.

*Description.*

Root perennial ; large, woody, irregular, blackish outside, yellowish inside ; stems two or three feet high, round and smooth, yellowish green, with black dots, very much ramified ; branches thin, and with small leaves. These leaves are alternate, and with three folioles nearly sessile, obovate, smooth, of a bluish green. Flowers bright yellow, in loose spikes at the end of branches ; pea-like stamina, enclosed, deciduous. Pistil single and stipitate, succeeded by a swelled oblong pod of a bluish-black colour, with a row of small rattling seeds.

*History.*

This plant has the appearance of a small shrub or broom. It blossoms in July and August. The whole plant, (even the flowers,) often become black in the fall, or in a herbarium. It dyes a kind of blue like indigo, but it is inferior. The young shoots of this plant are eaten, in New-England, like those of poke, and, like this latter article, they are of a drastic nature.

*Locality.*

Found all over the United States, from Maine to Louisiana and Illinois, in woods and on hills. It prefers dry and poor soils; is unknown in rich loamy soils, and seldom met in alluvions.

*Qualities.*

The whole of this plant, but in particular the root, is nauseous, sub-acrid, sub-astringent, but inodorous. It is active and dangerous in its recent state, if taken internally; but it loses much of its activity if dried or boiled. The active principles of this article are but little known. It contains tannin, indigo and an acid.

*Properties.*

*Astringent, antiseptic, purgative, emetic and stimulant.* This plant, in the form of poultice, is very efficacious in inflammatory affections, bordering upon gangrene. The corticle part of the bark is that which we use. It is good in syphilitic ulcers; also for almost every sore, such as malignant ulcerous sore mouth and throat, mercurial sore mouth, sore nipples, chronic sore eyes, &c. It may be used externally, in strong decoction as a wash, or in fomentation, poultice or ointment, with lard or cream.

It has been used, it is stated, with some considerable success, in scarlatina anginosa, (scarlet sore throat,) and in typhus fever. It forms the basis of our *yellow salve*, which is very useful in various kinds of ulcers.

*Dose and mode of administering.*

It has been given in the form of a decoction, internally, at the dose of half an ounce of a decoction, made with twenty times its weight of water. Used also as above.

---

No. 27.

**COPAIBA.**

*Latin Name*—COPAIFERA OFFICINALIS.

*English Name*—OFFICINAL COPAIBA.

*Botanical Character.*

Class X.—DECANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—COPAIFERA—Calyx 0; corol 4-petalled; legume ovate; seed 1, involved in a pulpy coat.

*Species*—OFFICINALIS—A tree with primate leaves; racime, compound; terminal, (South American balsam of copaiba is the resinous juice.)

*Description.*

A large bushy tree, with alternate leaves, composed of from five to eight folioles, shining, and almost sessile; flowers white, in ra-

No. 27.

COPAIFERA OFFICINALIS.



OFFICINAL COPAIBA.



mose and axillary clusters; calyx 4-parted; no corolla; stamina distinct, spreading; fruit 2-valved, containing one or two seeds.

*Locality.*

This tree is a native of the Spanish West Indies, and of some parts of South America. It grows to a large size, and the resinous juice is obtained by making incisions in the trunk of the tree.

*Qualities.*

The balsam is a liquid of an oily consistence, transparent, of a yellowish-white colour, of a strong and disagreeable smell, of an acrid and bitter taste, and of a specific gravity of 0.950.

Balsam copaiba, according to E. Durand's analysis, contains an essential oil, forming about one half of its weight; a resin; a small quantity of acetic acid; a fatty matter; traces of muriate of lime, and of a sweet substance. It dissolves in twenty-five times its weight of alcohol, at thirty-five degrees of Baumé's areometer, leaving behind the insoluble fatty matter, which precipitates in the form of semi-fluid, transparent, and yellowish globules, not soluble in any additional quantity of the same menstruum; but the whole of the copaiba dissolves in ether, absolute alcohol, and essential oils. Copaiba, when perfectly pure, and mixed with one seventeenth of pure calcined magnesia, acquires a degree of solidity sufficient to allow it to be formed into pills, (*Revue Medicale.*) This preparation requires six or eight hours to inspissate, and in time it becomes still more solid.

*Properties.*

The balsam has been much used as a cooling *diuretic* and *astringent*; but the manner in which it has been used, renders it less efficacious than it might be. It enters into one of our preparations, the *diuretic drops*, and we have used it in this manner with particular benefit. When absorbed, it is principally on the mucous membrane it seems to act, and especially upon the genito-urinary organs, in the same way as turpentine. It is employed with success in chronic catarrhs, in coughs with great expectoration, and certain affections of the lungs unattended with inflammation. It proves successful in obstinate leucorrhœa, &c. It is in order to reduce the discharges that balsam copaiba is principally used. It was commonly administered when the inflammatory symptoms had been abated: but Drs. Delpech and Ribes have of late exhibited it on the outset of the disease, however great the inflammation might be; and they affirm having obtained the greatest advantages from its early employment. Dr. Vellepeau, in order to obviate the inconveniences of this remedy when taken in large doses, has proposed to administer it in clysters, and numerous successful experiments leave no doubt whatever of the efficacy of this method.

*Dose and mode of administering.*

Merely as a stimulant, from ten to twelve drops, two or three times a day, on sugar or in tea.

*Pills of solidified copaiba.*—Copaiba, one ounce; pure calcined magnesia, half a drachm; mix carefully and permit the mass to become solid; for 4-grains pills, two of which contain 15 drops of the liquid balsam. Dose from 1 to 3, three or four times a day.

No. 28.

## CAYENNE PEPPER.

*Latin Name*—CAPSICUM ANNUM.*English Name*—JAMAICA PEPPER, RED PEPPER.*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—CAPSICUM—Corol monopetalous, wheel-shaped; berry juiceless, 2-celled, inflated; anthers connivent; calyx angular.*Species*—ANNUM—Stem herbaceous, smooth, crooked, branched; leaves elliptical, pointed; sequents of the corol plaited; pod conical, varying in shape and size; peduncles solitary.*Description.*

Stem herbaceous and ramose; leaves lanceolate, entire, shining, supported by a long petiole; flowers white, small, axillary; fruit an elongated capsule, of a conic shape, shining, of a lively red, with two or three cells, containing reniform and yellowish seeds.

*History.*

This plant is a native of South America, and is raised in the West Indies. It will likewise ripen its fruit in the United States.

*Qualities.*Cayenne pepper contains a peculiar substance, discovered by Forchhammer, and called *capsicin* by Dr. C. Conwell; a red colouring matter, a small quantity of a matter containing nitrogen, a mucilage and some salts, especially nitrate of potassa. Dr. C. obtains, by means of ether, a liquid of a fine reddish-yellow colour, which he calls ethereal oil of capsicum, and which is eminently endowed with all the stimulant and acrid properties of the Cayenne pepper.*Properties.*Capsicum is one of the purest and strongest *stimulants* with which we are acquainted; also *carminative*, *tonic* and *diuretic*. It is good to remedy flatulency, arising from eating vegetable food, and likewise to warm the stomach. It is used in rheumatism and in coldness of the system. In *cynanche maligna*, (malignant sore throat,) capsicum is much used, both as a gargle and as an internal remedy. Mr. Stuart speaks very highly of its powers in this disease. He orders "two tablespoonfuls of the small red pepper, or three of the common *Cayenne pepper*, and two teaspoonfuls of fine *salt*, to be beat into paste, on which half a pint of boiling water is to be poured, and strained off when cold; an equal quantity of very sharp vinegar being added to this infusion. A tablespoonful, every hour, is a proper dose for an adult." Mr. Stephens gave it to four hundred patients labouring under this disease, "and it seemed," says he, "to save some whose state had been thought desperate."

No. 28.

CAPSICUM ANNUM.



CAYENNE PEPPER.





No. 29.

CONIUM MACULATUM.



COMMON HEMLOCK.

Oil of capsicum possesses a most intolerable warmth and acrimony of taste, and concentrates all the stimulant properties of the pods. When applied to the skin of the hand, its action is immediately felt, and produces no redness. It is of a brilliant reddish-yellow colour, has a peculiar odorific aromatic taste, and cannot be distilled without undergoing decomposition. It is obtained by digesting, for two weeks, capsicum pods in sulphuric ether, filtering the ethereal tincture, and leaving it to a spontaneous evaporation. As the ether falls, drops of crystals of capsin, assuming curious dendroid forms, will be seen studded around the inside of the vessel; and after all the ether is dissipated, the warm aromatic or concentrated oil of capsicum will be found at the bottom.

This *ethereal oil* is very useful in *rheumatism*. In *dyspeptic* states of the stomach, *capsicum* appears to be peculiarly adapted. Dr. Chapman thinks this article well suited to "*dyspepsia* as it prevails with drunkards, or is occasioned by the atonic gout." The tincture is remarkably efficacious, used externally, in all painful affections, in rheumatism, sprains, "soreness of the flesh," &c.

*Dose and mode of administering.*

Dose of the powder from six to twelve grains, in the form of *pills*; tincture of capsicum, (*Cayenne* pepper,) one ounce; diluted alcohol, two pounds. Externally, tincture of capsicum, half an ounce; *Cayenne* pepper, one drachm; diluted alcohol, one pound; useful as a rubefacient in palsy, pleurisy, rheumatism, &c.

---

No. 29.

CICUTA.

*Latin Name*—CONIUM MACULATUM.

*English Name*—HEMLOCK.

*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order II.—DIGYNIA.

*Genus*—CONIUM—Flowers tubulous, all fertile; petals cordate, equal; partial involucre halved; generally 3-leaved; seeds ovate, gibbous, 5-ribbed each side; the ribs curled before maturity.

*Species*—MACULATUM—Seeds unarmed, striate; stem branched, shining, spotted.

*Description.*

This root is biennial, tapering, forked, eight inches long, and of the size of the finger. The stalks are six or seven feet in height, round, shining, branched near the top, and striated near the bottom, and covered with a bluish exudation, appearing like a fine powder. The lower leaves are tripinnated, of a shining green colour, standing upon long striated concave foot-stalks, which proceed from the joints of the

stem; the upper and smaller ones are bipinnated, and placed at the divisions of the branches; the flowers are in umbels, are both universal and partial, and composed of several striated radia. The universal involucre consists of five or seven leaves; these are lanceolate, whitish, and the margin bent downwards.

#### History.

The conium of the Greeks, and the cicuta of the Romans, was a poisonous plant; the juice of which was used to produce death in *Ceos* and *Athens*. *Socrates* and *Phocion*, two virtuous, eminent and innocent *Athenians*, were condemned to drink it, and their death has rendered famous that poisonous potion. The powers of this plant depend upon the places in which it grows, the time when collected, and the preparations of it. This plant blossoms in summer, from June to August.

#### Locality.

This plant is indigenous to Europe, but now naturalized in New-England, New-York, Pennsylvania, Virginia, Ohio, &c. Mostly found in old fields, near roads and fences, on the banks of rivers, &c.

#### Qualities.

The smell of the fresh plant, when rubbed with the fingers, is unpleasant, and not dissimilar to that of the urine of the cat; its taste is acrid and nauseous.

According to Mr. Brande, this plant contains a peculiar alkaloid substance, which he calls *Coniin*, a very odorous oil, albumen, resin, a colouring matter, and some salts. Ether and alcohol take up its active principles, whilst water dissolves but a small part.

#### Coniin.

According to Mr. Brande, this substance is obtained by digesting the leaves and stem of the fresh plant, well bruised, for several days, in alcohol; filter the solution, and evaporate to dryness; treat the alcoholic extract with water, and add to the aqueous solution obtained, either magnesia, alumina, or the oxide of lead; evaporate this solution to dryness, and treat the dry residue with a mixture of alcohol and ether. This menstruum takes up coniin, which, by a new evaporation to dryness, is left in a pure state.

Half a grain of coniin is sufficient to kill a rabbit. The symptoms induced by it are analogous to those produced by strychnia. After death, the vessels of the head, the right auricle of the heart, the superior vena cava, and the jugular, are very much gorged with blood, while the abdominal vessels appear to be completely empty.

#### Properties.

This is a powerful acrid *narcotic* and *resolvent*. It is not dangerous in very small doses often repeated, and gradually increased. It is also *anodyne*, *sedative* and *antispasmodic*, useful to allay pain in acute diseases. In *scrofulous* tumours it is a useful article. We, however, seldom use it as an internal remedy. It enters into our *discutient ointment*. It is spoken very highly of by Drs. Fisher, Jackson and Bigelow, in the treatment of *jaundice*: their mode of administering it is to commence with small doses, and increase them gradually, until the effects of them are felt in the head and stomach. "This incon-

venience," says Dr. Bigelow, "is temporary, and will be preferred by most patients, to the evil of a *mercurial ptyalism*, (*salivation*.)" The yellowness of the skin and eyes, in favourable cases, begins to disappear at an early period, frequently by the second day. As a poultice in inflammation and abscess in the breasts of women, it is a valuable article; and in all cases where resolvent poultices may be required.

*Dose and mode of administering.*

Internally, of the *powdered leaves*, two grains to one scruple, in *pills*. Externally, fomentation, *hemlock* one ounce, boiling water two pounds and a half. Plaster, *hemlock, wax* and *resin*, each two parts; *olive oil* one part. This is a valuable plaster to discuss some indolent tumours.

No. 30.

## COLOCYNTH.

*Latin Name*—CUCUMIS COLOCYNTHIS.

*English Name*—BITTER CUCUMBER.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XIX.—MONOECIA.

Order III.—TRIANDRIA.

*Genus*—CUCUMIS—Calyx 5-toothed; corol 5-parted. Male filaments 3; antheræ cohering. Female style 3-cleft; pome succulent; seeds ovate, acute, compressed.

*Species*—COLOCYNTHIS—Leaves in many divisions; fruit globular, smooth; stems rough.

*Description.*

B. C. Stem fleshy, covered with rough hair, scandent and cirrhose; leaves reniform, 5-lobed; the nerves covered with stiff hair; flowers monoicous, solitary, of an orange yellow; fruit globular, yellow, of the size of an orange, furnished with a thin and rough peel, containing a white pulp; seeds, oval, flattened, white and very numerous.

*Locality.*

An annual plant, native of the Levant, and cultivated in gardens.

*Qualities.*

Colocynth, such as is found in commerce, is in white, round, spongy, dry and light masses, in the pulp of which are placed the seeds. Its taste is nauseous and extremely bitter, without scarcely any smell.

According to Mr. Vauquelin, this substance contains a resinoid matter, more soluble in alcohol than in water, which he calls *colocynthin*, and which is the active principle; another resin, insoluble and not bitter; a fatty oil, some gum, an extractive matter and salts. Water, alcohol and ether dissolve easily its active principles.

*Properties.*

Colocynth is one of the most powerful and violent cathartics. When given alone, it is apt to occasion severe griping; and if it be given in

large doses, it occasions vomiting, tenesmus and other marks of highly intestinal irritation. It appears to act with most energy upon the mucous coat of the lower intestines. Orfila says, that in the animals which he destroyed with this article, he uniformly found the *rectum* in a state of high inflammation and gangrene. As a hydrogogue it is occasionally given by some practitioners. It has likewise been used in coma and apoplexy; and in those cases it depends upon the revulsion which it occasions from the head to the intestinal canal. And, to use the words of Dr. Eberle, "there can be no doubt, that a remedy which produces such prompt and decided impressions on the bowels, and which, therefore, procures such copious watery evacuations as the present one, is well calculated to prove beneficial in affections of this kind." We make no use of it, except as an article that enters into the "dyspeptic pills."

*Dose and mode of administering.*

The colocynth, in substance, is given in doses of from five to ten grains. Compound extract of colocynth is composed of *colocynth*, six drachms; socotorine aloe, one ounce and a half; scammony, half an ounce; cardamum, one drachm; diluted alcohol, one pint. Dose of this from ten to fifteen grains.

---

No. 31.

CELADINE.

*Latin Name*—CHELIDONIUM MAJUS.

*English Name*—GREAT CELANDINE.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XII.—POLYANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—CHELIDONIUM—Calyx 2-leaved; petals 4; silique superior, 2-valved, 1-celled, linear; seeds numerous, crested.

*Species*—MAJUS—Leaves alternate, pinnate, lobed; umbels axillary, peduncled; seeds black, with a white crest.

*Description.*

This plant rises two or three feet in height, has many tender, round, green, watery stalks, with large joints, very brittle and transparent; leaves large, serrated, and very tender; and the flowers, consisting of four leaves, yellow, after which come long pods, which, when pressed by the fingers, fly into pieces instantly.

*Locality.*

This plant grows in meadows, and by the sides of running brooks, and low marshy places; found throughout the United States.

*Properties.*

The properties of this plant are acrid, stimulant, anti-herpetic, detergent, diuretic and discutient. The juice rubbed on warts removes

No. 31.

CHELIDONIUM MAJUS.



GREAT CELANDINE.



them; cures ring-worms and cleanses old ulcers. This herb, boiled in white wine vinegar and added to aromatics, and drank, is considered by some excellent in *jaundice*, and to remove visceral obstructions, especially of the *liver*. We, however, make use of it only for the piles, salt-rheum, or tetter, in the form of tincture and ointment.

*Mode of using.*

An ointment of the roots is made by boiling them in hog's lard, and is useful in the piles. The tincture may be made by digesting one ounce of the plant in one pint of spirits.

---

No. 32.

## SPURRED RYE.

*Latin Name*—SECALE CORNUTUM.

*English Name*—SPURRED RYE, HORNED RYE, ERGOT.

*Botanical Character.*

Class III.—TRIANDRIA.

Order II.—DIGYNIA.

*Genus*—SECALE—Calyx opposite, 2-valved, 2-flowered; glumes subulate, shorter than the florets; corol, with the lower valve, long awned.

† *Species*—CORNUTUM—Glumes with a rugged fringe; corol smooth; bristles scabrous ciliate.

*Description and Qualities.*

‡ The spurred rye (*secale cornutum*) is a fungiform excrescence, which takes place under peculiar circumstances, between the valves of the glume of several cereales, and especially of rye. Ergot (as it is called) is elongated, recurved, cylindrical, swollen in the middle, and generally marked on one of its sides with a longitudinal furrow. It is likewise brittle, hard, horny, and of a slight violet colour externally; whitish with a shade of violet internally; of an acrid and rather pungent taste. The spurred rye, according to Vauqueline, contains a deep yellow colouring matter, soluble in alcohol; a free acid, which seems to be phosphoric acid; some free ammonia; a very putrefiable matter containing nitrogen. Water and alcohol take up the active principles of this article.

*Properties.*

The spurred rye, as an aliment, is attended with serious consequences: such as violent convulsions, acute and burning pains in the extremities, *gangrene* of those parts, and even death. The name of *ergotism* is given to all of these phenomena.

## FERNICIOUS EFFECTS OF VITIATED RYE.

When ground down with the flour, or used in distillation, it proves a mortal poison; and, at times, has proved a pestilential scourge of Europe; it has been equally fatal to America, and is supposed to have been the chief cause of the plague in London. In 1811 and 1812, a great number of lives were lost, from the spurred rye being used as food, and liquor distilled from the rye. The great mortality in this country was chiefly confined to New-York and Vermont. Upwards of twenty thousand victims fell a sacrifice to the ravages produced by that dreadful poison. Meeting after meeting, of the faculty, took place, to endeavour to discover the cause; and after the most mature deliberation, it was discovered by one party, that it was a poisonous miasma floating in the air, confined to certain prescribed limits, and affecting certain persons, more particularly those that were in the habit of drinking gin; the best apology for their ignorance of the true cause, the ergot or spurred rye. What made their report the more ridiculous, was, that there was at that time, a fine, clear, black, hard frost, and the healthiest weather that could be imagined. Many of the members were sceptical, and could not believe the report; they thought that, owing to the fine weather, it was impossible for the contagion to exist in the air: others were of the same opinion with the doctors. One of the non-contagionists wrote, and requested me to go to Albany, where the disorder was then raging, and wished me to endeavour to discover the cause of the afflicting calamity. On my journey from New-York to Albany, where the legislature of the state was sitting, I stopped at a place called Kinderhook, and being cold, contrary to my usual practice, I drank a glass of gin. I had not drunk it many minutes before it affected me as if I had taken something boiling hot into my stomach. Although I immediately took an emetic, which produced the most active effects, the poison had taken so firm a hold of my constitution, that my throat and rectum were extremely painful. I had a cold perspiration towards the morning, with a pain in my bones and head, whereas I was in perfect health before I drank the gin. I accused the tavern-keeper of putting poison in the gin; a gentleman of the town, who heard me, and had observed that the habitual gin drinkers in the place had died, seconded me in my charge. The landlord declared he was innocent, and referred us to the distillery. Upon our applying, the distiller was much alarmed at our charge of his putting poison into the gin; and added, it would be his ruin if the report got abroad, in consequence of the great mortality. He took a voluntary oath that he put nothing but the pure grain into his gin, and invited us to see the grain, in the still-house loft. We found it, on inspection, badly cleaned, and probably one tenth of it spurred rye, or rye vitiated by being infested with the *clarus* or ergot. I was quite astonished when I saw it, particularly as it was so well described by Dr. Darwin, as being a pestilential scourge in various parts of Europe; producing, what is called by Dr. Mason Good, in his history of medicine, mildew mortification; in America it was vulgarly called the *dry rot*. On dissection, I have observed that

the windpipe and rectum were so completely parched by the action of the air, stimulating or attracting the effects of the poison to the parts, that, when pressed, they would give way, and appear like black snuff. I lost no time in repairing to Albany. On my arrival, the inhabitants were in mourning, on account of the loss of their relatives and friends, some of whom had risen in health in the morning, had eaten a hearty breakfast, and at noon were in eternity! Such were the rapid effects of that inflammation, which was ascribed by the doctors of New-York to the air of Albany being charged with the damps of death. The members of the assembly of the state had, at the time, under their consideration, a resolution to enable them to remove the state legislature from Albany; it was expected the resolution would be carried the same night, to the great and irreparable injury of the inhabitants. To the friend, who was waiting for me at the hotel, I communicated the glad tidings, of having discovered the cause of the disorder. He immediately ran to the assembly-room, and obtained the members' consent to adjourn the question until the following morning. The tavern, where I was, was soon crowded by the members and citizens, all anxious to know the cause. It was no sooner communicated, with a detail of my own sufferings, than the members searched the book-shops and libraries, and found to their great satisfaction, that the ergot was capable of committing ravages upon mankind that I had represented to them. One of the sceptical of the faculty, on being requested to analyze the article, and report on the subject, took a few of his acquaintances some distance into the country, to dine at his father's farm; where an opportunity offered to prove whether the ergot was injurious or not, for a large quantity of it, that had been separated from the rye, was given to the pigs; and from its fatal effects, (as it caused their death the next day,) the father became a convert to the opinion. A number of rats, cats and dogs, also, fell a sacrifice to its effects, before the sceptical were convinced.—(*Whitlaw on the Causes of Inflammation, &c.*)

In small doses, this article appears to act in a peculiar manner upon the *uterus*, (womb,) the parenchyma of which, it seems to excite in a powerful manner. It is administered in *difficult labours*, consequently when there is too great debility of the *uterus*, and in *hemorrhage*, so often fatal, produced by inactivity of this organ. This substance must not be administered, so long as there are natural pains present, if they be sufficient to expel the child. It is likewise indispensable that the *os tincæ*, (*mouth of the womb*,) be sufficiently dilated, or easily dilatable, before we attempt the exhibition of the ergot. Dr. W. P. Dewees, who is a warm advocate for the use of this substance, when timely and properly exhibited, says, in the *American Journal of Medical Sciences*, No. II.,

“As regards myself, I have the most firm reliance upon the powers of the ergot, and the character of its action is so distinctly marked, that a very little observation will enable us to detect it.” Again, “When ergot has been administered with success, we find the uterine effort not only more quickly repeated, and more powerfully exerted, but these efforts are accompanied with less suffering than the same apparent exertions of this organ, when not urged by this drug.”

We likewise extract from the same Journal, Dr. Dewees' cardinal rules, laid down for the more successful employment of the ergot.

"1st. It should never be given before the membranes are ruptured, the os uteri dilated, and the external parts disposed to yield.

"2d. It must not be used so long as the natural pains are efficient, and competent to the end.

"3d. But should they flag, from any cause, it may be given; provided the labour be a natural labour, according to our acceptation of the term, 'natural labour;' that is, when the head, (if well situated,) the breech, the feet, or the knees, present. For, independently of any accident which may complicate the labour, it is sometimes desirable, for the safety of the child, to hasten it when the natural powers are incompetent to this end.

"4th. And if the labour be accompanied by any such accident as flooding, convulsions, syncope, &c., it may sometimes be employed to great advantage, provided rules 1 and 2 are not violated.

"5th. It may be used, very often with much advantage, in every kind of premature labour; and at full time, when the placenta is not thrown off, and the uterus is found in a state of atony.

"6th. Where flooding takes place after the rupture of the membranes; the os uteri well dilated; the pains feeble, but the child well situated.

"7th. Where the head of the child has been left in the uterus by being separated from its body.

"8th. Where the uterus is painfully distended by coagula."

Dr. D. is decidedly against the use of this article in alarming uterine hæmorrhage before delivery. "I have," he says, "in so many words, declared that reasoning is against the use of the ergot in the unavoidable hæmorrhage; I will now endeavour to show this to be the case." He had, however, previously remarked, "that in the unavoidable hæmorrhage an advantage may be derived from the exhibition of the ergot, by hastening the labour, though it may for a short time increase the discharge. But, in order that this reasoning may have any value, as a practical precept, the cases in which this advantage could be derived, should be well defined," &c.

*Dose and mode of administering.*

Of the powder, from ten to thirty grains, suspended in four ounces of a proper menstruum; decoction, or infusion, from thirty to forty grains, in one pint of hot water. A tablespoonful of this may be given once every 15 minutes.

No. 33.

## HORSE-RADISH.

*Latin Name*—COCHLEARIA ARMORACIA.

*English Name*—COMMON HORSE-RADISH.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XIV.—TETRADYNAMIA.

Order I.—SILICULOSA.

*Genus*—COCHLEARIA—Silicle thick, rugose, many-seeded, with gibbous obtuse valves; partitions nearly parallel to the valves.

*Species*—ARMORACIA—Radical leaves lanceolate, crenate; cauline leaves gashed.

*Description.*

Stem ramose, two or three feet in height; smooth leaves proceeding from the root, very large, elliptical, petiolate; those growing on the stalk smaller, narrower, lanceolate; flowers white, small, in long spikes at the extremity of the branches; calix, four concave divisions; petals spreading; fruit small; ovoid pods, crowned by a persistent stigma, and composed of two cells, containing five or six seeds; roots cylindrical, one or two feet long, of the size of the arm.

*History.*

A perennial plant, indigenous to France, and growing by the sides of brooks, and cultivated in gardens; flowers in June. It rarely perfects its seeds in Great Britain.

*Qualities.*

The horse-radish contains a very acrid, volatile principle, of an oily character, which seems to contain sulphur; fecula and albumen are likewise found in it. Its active principles are soluble in water, wine and alcohol.

*Properties.*

Stimulant, rubefacient, diuretic, anti-scorbutic. Applied to the skin it produces rubefaction, pain and all the symptoms of inflammation; and as a rubefacient may be used externally instead of mustard. We use it only as a diuretic, united with other articles, in dropsy: It is very wholesome, used as a condiment, with food.

*Dose and mode of administering.*

Infusion, from half to one ounce of the root infused in two pints of water, a wineglassful thrice a day.

No. 34.

**GOLDEN THREAD:***Latin Name*—COPTIS TRIFOLIA.*English Name*—COMMON GOLD THREAD.*Vulgar Names*—GOLD THREAD, MOUTH ROOT.*Botanical Character.*

Class XII.—POLYANDRIA.

Order XIII.—POLYGYNIA.

*Genus*—COPTIS—Petals 5 or more, caducous, necotaries small, 5 or 6, cowed; capsules 5—8; stipulate, diverging, oblong, 1-celled, many-seeded.

*Species*—TRIFOLIA—Leaves ternate, on long petioles, subradical; leaflets dentate, rounded, crenate; scape 1-flowered; flowers white; root long, creeping, beautiful yellow.

*Description.*

Roots perennial, creeping, filiform, of a bright yellow, with many small fibres; condex or base of the scapes and radical leaves covered with imbricate scales, ovate, acuminate and yellowish; leaves evergreen, on long, slender petioles, proceeding from the condex, with ternate folioles; sessile rounded or obovate; base, acute margin, with unequal acuminate crenatures and lobes; surface smooth, firm and veined; flowers about half an inch wide, with white corolliform calyx of five, six or seven folioles; oblong, obtuse, concave petals; as many shorter; obovate, hollow, yellow at the top; pistils from five to eight; styles short and curved; stigmas acute; capsules, like the pistils, naked, the calix having fallen off; umbellate.

*History.*

This plant flowers early in the spring of the cold regions, or in May. The roots are the only parts used; they are of a fine golden colour, whence they derive their name. They ought to be collected in the summer, and are easily dried, but not easily pulverized.

*Locality.*

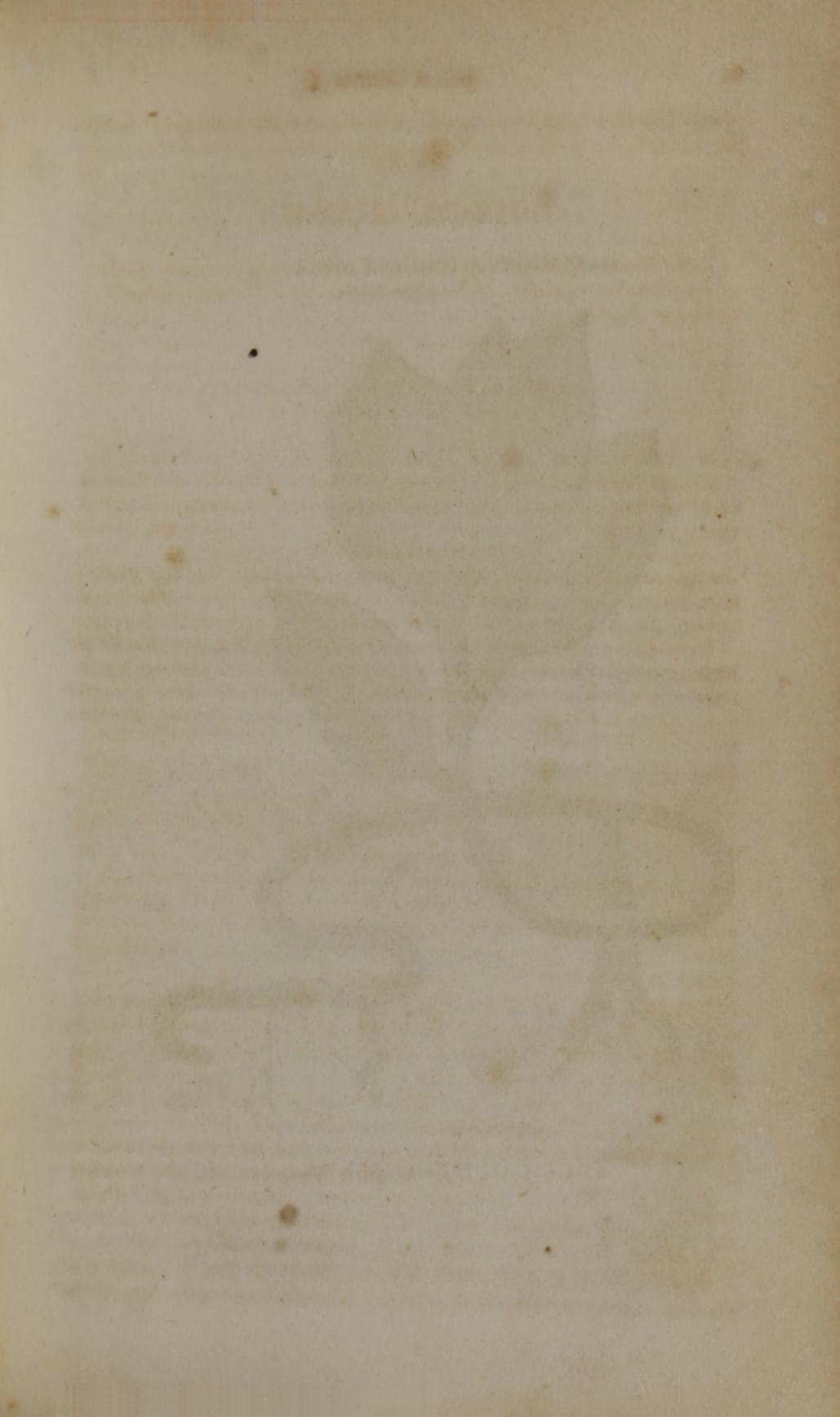
Found from Canada to Greenland and Iceland on the east, and to Siberia on the west. The most southern limits are New-England, New-York and the shores of Lake Erie. It is commonly found in mossy swamps and bogs of evergreen woods; but also on the rocks of the White Mountains, Labrador, Newfoundland, &c.

*Qualities.*

A pure, intense bitter, without smell or astringency, consisting of extractive matter, and a bitter principle, soluble in water and alcohol; the tincture is yellow.

*Properties.*

Tonic and stomachic, promoting digestion, and strengthening the viscera; useful in *dyspepsia*, *debility*, *convalescence* from fevers; a



No. 35.

CALLICOCCA IPECACUANHA.



AMERICAN IPECACUANHA.

good substitute for quassia. It is much used as a gargle, in *ulceration* of the *mouth*.

*Dose.*

Ten or twenty grains of the powder may be given three times a day. A tincture made with an ounce of the roots in a pound of alcohol diluted, of which a teaspoonful may be given three times a day.

---

No. 35.

**IPECACUANHA. *The Root.***

*Latin Name*—CALLICOCCA IPECACUANHA.

*English Name*—IPECACUANHA.

*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—CALLICOCCA—Calyx 5-cleft; coral funnel shape, 5-parted; fruit black, egg-shape, containing two small white nuts.

*Species*—IPECACUANHA—Stem erect; simple leaves, opposite, entire, oval; flowers small, united into a head, surrounded by a large involucre; root horizontal, repent.

*Description.*

Root or stump subterranean, horizontal, repent; stem straight, one or two feet high, simple; leaves six or eight at the top of the stem, opposite, entire and oval; flowers white, very small, united in a capitulum looking apparently as the continuation of the stem, surrounded with a large involucre; calyx 5-toothed; corolla infundibuliform, 5-divided; five stamina; fruit ovoid, black, and containing two small whitish nuts.

*Locality.*

Ipecacuanha is indigenous to South America.

*Qualities.*

The root of ipecacuanha, such as is found in the shops, is from three to four inches long, compact, brittle, irregularly twisted; of the size of a goose-quill; annulated with considerable circular depressions at short intervals; of a brown colour, sometimes gray or reddish; of a weak, but disagreeable smell; of a bitter, acrid and nauseous taste. These roots are composed of a cortical part, the fracture of which is brown and resinous, and of a fibrous *medullium*, of a yellowish colour, less sapid and odorous.

According to Pelletier, this root is composed of *emetia*, 16; fatty matter, 1.2; resinous substance, 1.2; gum and salts, 2.4; starch, 53; matter containing nitrogen, 2.4; lignin, 12.5; and traces of gallic acid. Warm water, alcohol, and ether, take up its active principles.

*Properties.*

*Ipecacuanha* is *emetic, stimulant, tonic* and *diaphoretic*. When administered in proper doses, it acts upon the mucous membrane of the stomach, which is more or less violently irritated by it, producing vomiting. In hæmorrhage, (bleeding,) *ipecacuanha* is sometimes an important article. Dr. Chapman, in his *Therapeutics*, (vol. i. p. 162.) says: "Many physicians of respectability bear testimony to its good effects in hæmoptysis, (bleeding from the lungs,) though it is in uterine hæmorrhage that it displays its best powers. In these cases," says he, "I really think it is quite equal to the *saccharum saturni*, (sugar of lead,) and sometimes superior. The common mode of administering it in hæmorrhage," says the same writer, "is to combine one or two grains of it with half a grain of opium, or less, to be repeated at stated intervals." In dyspepsia, this article has been used with seeming good success. Daubenton, in his tract upon this subject, recommends it in such small doses as not to excite nausea, and thereby acting as an alterative, changing the state of the stomach imperceptibly, till it finally restores this organ to its natural tone and action. We are informed by Dr. James, of Albany, that a pill of one or two grains, taken after dining, will generally obviate the oppression of the stomach felt after dining.

We extract the following article from the *London Medical and Physical Journal*.

To the Editors of the *London Medical and Physical Journal*.

GENTLEMEN,—You possibly may remember, that in my small publication of August, 1801, on diseases of the army, &c., I have mentioned that I first prescribed decoctions of *ipecacuanha* as injections in dysentery, at Columbe, in the island of Ceylon, in the year 1797, when I was surgeon of his majesty's 19th regiment of foot.

It affords me much pleasure to state, that during my residence in France, for upwards of these last nine years, I have had many opportunities of observing the good effects of *ipecacuanha* decoctions, not only in dysentery, but also in internal piles, and in flatulent distension of the bowels, from whatever cause they may have arisen.

While at Verdun, in France, I likewise received a very satisfactory account concerning the effects of the same medicine from Mr. Connin, surgeon of the navy, who was made prisoner of war in the Mediterranean. He asserted to me, that during last war, while on the same station, he lost many men of dysentery; but that, during the present war, although he had the charge of a considerable number of sick labouring under dysentery, yet he did not lose one patient. This astonishing difference of success he attributes chiefly to *ipecacuanha* injections.

Since my return to London, I also have obtained very satisfactory additional information on the same subject from my friend, Mr. Archibald Barklmore, surgeon, High-street, Bloomsbury.

In a letter from our mutual friend, Mr. Baird, surgeon in the Hon-

East India Company's service, to Mr. Barklimore, dated Tigris, off the Cape of Good Hope, 18th May, 1810, the following passage is contained: "With regard to professional news, little has occurred in our ship to afford opportunity for observation. I cannot help mentioning, however, (because it gives me much pleasure,) that a case has lately occurred, in which the valuable remedy that our friend Clark communicated to us has been very successful in curing dysentery. One of the ship's company, who had been afflicted with dysentery for several weeks, and who had been much reduced by mercury, (which seemed to be the cause of the disease,) was snatched from the jaws of death by the ipecacuanha given in clysters. Mr. Graham, surgeon of the ship, consulted me when he had lost all hopes of his patient's recovery. At this time his evacuations were generally slimy, mixed with blood, and he sometimes passed liquid stools of the colour of coffee. I recommended the ipecacuanha, and, though my hopes of its being beneficial were by no means sanguine, I was delighted to find that the poor man was soon relieved by it. I expect to do much good with it in India."

Another letter to Mr. Barklimore from Mr. Baird, dated Port Louis, Isle of France, 5th Dec. 1810, contains the following observations: "I was attached to the 22d regiment, and embarked with Col. Kelso, in the *Illustrious*, 74, with a detachment of 175 men. We had a long passage, and were sickly. Dysentery made dreadful ravages amongst the ship's company. Nearly seventy men died of it in nine weeks. I was very fortunate in only losing three, and two of these were old bad cases. I used Clark's remedy freely with much advantage."

In a third letter from Mr. Baird to Mr. Barklimore, dated Port Louis, Mauritius, 10th Nov. 1811, the subsequent remarks are made: "I have mentioned to you before how successful I had found Clark's mode of treating dysentery. I have daily opportunities of confirming it. Most of my fellow labourers have been in a situation to judge of its effects, and have all, I believe, adopted it. I did not fail on these occasions to do him the justice of quoting him as the teacher of the practice. A few days ago I went into a bookseller's shop here, and, in rummaging over a parcel of medical books, his little work presented itself to my agreeable surprise. I was not long of buying it, you may be sure. I have derived the greatest pleasure from a perusal of it, and shall certainly consider myself indebted to him for much valuable practical information."

Hence, it would seem that the use of decoctions of ipecacuanha in dysentery will soon become general. It would therefore be highly gratifying to me, and probably very beneficial to mankind, if your readers who may have prescribed the remedy in question would acquaint the world at large, through the medium of your valuable *Medical Journal*, with the effects produced by it under their directions.

I here think proper to mention, for the information of those who have not seen my publication of 1811, that the form of decoction which I found most successful in adults, was about three drachms of ipecacuanha boiled in a quart of water down to a pint, strained, and given all at once as a lavement. In cases of internal piles, for reasons

that must appear obvious to every one, it is in most instances unnecessary to administer more than half a pint of the medicine at a time.

I have the honour to be, gentlemen,

With the utmost respect,

Your most obedient servant,

THO. CLARK, M. D.

No. 17, Denmark-street, Soho, June 17, 1812.

#### *Employment.*

As an emetic; about thirty grains of the powder may be exhibited in a suitable vehicle. There is a vinous tincture, the dose of which for an adult is an ounce. Ipecacuanha is useful in every case in which an emetic is required.

---

No. 36.

### JALAP. *The Root.*

*Latin Name*—CONVOLVULUS JALAPA.

• *English Name*—AMERICAN JALAP.

#### *Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—CONVOLVULUS—Corol monopetalous, funnel-form, plaited; calyx 5-parted; stigmata 2; capsule 2 or 3-celled; cells 2-seeded, covered by a lid.

*Species*—JALAPA—Stem triangular, twining; leaves ovate, subcordate, obtuse, obscurely repand, villous beneath; peduncles 1-flowered; seeds downy.

#### *Description.*

This plant has thick, fleshy, radish-like roots, full of a milky juice; stalks numerous, twining for support, and rising to about ten or twelve feet; the leaves vary, being heart-shaped, angular, oblong or pointed, smooth, and stand alternately upon long foot-stalks; the flowers are usually two, bell-shaped, plicate, of a reddish colour on the outside, and of a dark purple within. The calyx is composed of five small oval leaves. Each flower terminates in a wrinkled, roundish, pentagonal, umbilical fruit, about the size of a peppercorn, including a white kernel.

#### *Locality.*

Jalap is a plant indigenous to Mexico and Vera Cruz, and brought to us from thence. I have had this plant growing in my garden, but our climate is rather too cold to cultivate it.

#### *Qualities.*

It is brought to us in transverse slices or pyriform shape. These are compact, solid, and heavy, rugous and blackish externally, and of a grayish colour internally. When powdered, it has a peculiar and somewhat nauseous odour, and a slight acrid, sweetish taste. It

No. 36.

CONVOLVULUS JALAPA.



AMERICAN JALAP.



contains a large portion of resin, upon which its cathartic property appears to depend. It contains likewise a gum, which, although almost wholly destitute of laxative properties, is active as a diuretic, and some extractive matter, with fecula and salts.

*Properties.*

The root of this plant is a brisk cathartic, acting in a remarkably efficacious manner, without griping upon the whole alimentary canal. It enters into the anti-bilious physic of our pharmacopœia; also the compound tincture of senna. It possesses great anti-bilious and detergent properties. Jalap and cream of tartar have long been used by some in combination, in dropsical cases. Twenty-five grains of jalap, united with from forty to sixty grains of cream of tartar, forms a powerful cathartic and hydragogue. Chapman says, that ten grains of jalap, combined with one drachm of cream of tartar, form an excellent preparation where long continued purging is necessary, as in dropsy, &c.

*Employment.*

The pulverized root, in the dose of thirty grains, acts as a safe and efficacious cathartic. This is one of the most valuable roots produced in America.

No. 37.

**ORANGE. *The Fruit.***

*Latin Name*—CITRUS AURANTIUM.

*English Name*—ORANGE TREE.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XII.—POLYANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—CITRUS—Calyx 5-cleft; petals 5, oblong; anthers 20; the filaments united into various bodies; berry 9-celled.

*Species*—AURANTIUM—Petioles winged; leaves elliptic, pointed; stem arboreous.

*Description.*

The leaves are nearly elliptical, smooth entire, of a shining green colour, and the foot-stalk is winged, that is, it has the appearance of a small leaf; the flowers appear during the whole of summer, and some branches are in full bloom whilst others are just going off, and on the others appear the young or full grown oranges. The calyx is salver-shaped, and cut into five small teeth; the petals are five, oblong, white, fleshy, and beset with small glands.

*Locality.*

An evergreen tree, native both of the East and West Indies, and cultivated on a large scale in the south of France, and in almost all warm latitudes.

*Qualities.*

This substance is in flat fragments, of a deep yellow colour, wrinkled, and resembling shagreen on one side, owing to the presence of a number of small glands, which, in the fresh state, contain a large quantity of essential oil, of a bitter aromatic taste, and a very agreeable odour.

It contains a good deal of essential oil, and a very bitter matter. Water and alcohol dissolve its active principles.

*Properties.*

Orange peel acts as a stimulant and tonic, on account of its essential oil, and of its bitterness. It is most commonly used as a carminative and stomachic, united with other stimulants and tonics.

*Employment.*

Of the *powdered peel*, from one scruple to one drachm. *Infusion*, from two drachms to half an ounce to a quart of boiling water.

---

No. 38.

## LEMON. *The Fruit.*

*Latin Name*—CITRUS MEDICA.

*English Name*—LEMON TREE.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XII.—POLYANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—CITRUS—Calyx 5-cleft; petals 5, oblong; anthers 20; the filaments united into various bodies; berry 9-celled.

*Species*—MEDICA—Petioles linear; leaves ovate, pointed.

*Description.*

Trunk straight, slender; leaves oval, acuminate, dentate, of a yellowish-green, supported by an unwinged peduncle; flowers numerous, of a violet-red colour externally, otherwise similar to those of the orange-tree; fruit ovoid, and terminated by a conical apex.

*Qualities.*

The lemon, the peel of which we have already described, contains a considerable quantity of juice of an acid and agreeable taste, and of a very pleasant odour.

C. P. According to Mr. Proust, lemon juice contains citric acid, 1.77; bitter principle, gum, and malic acid, 0.72; and water, 97.51.

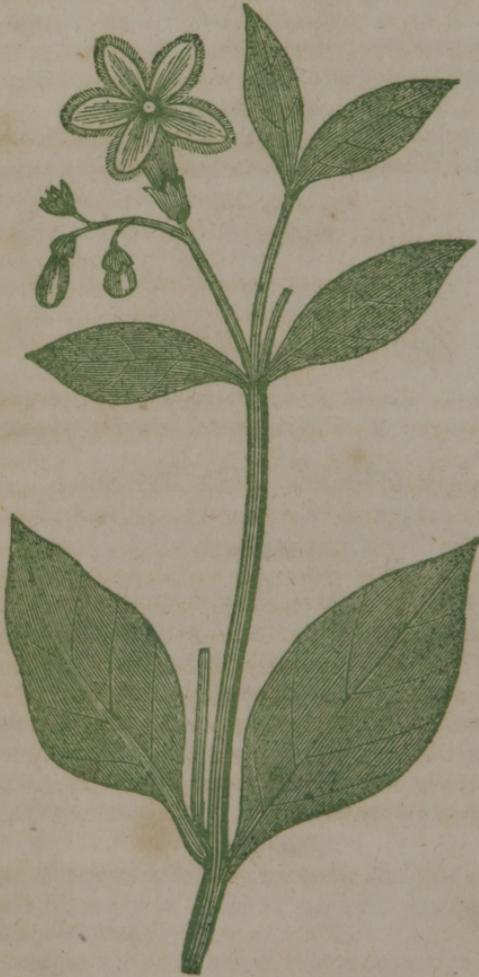
*Properties.*

In small doses, lemon juice stimulates the stomach, and facilitates digestion. Diluted with water, it is employed with great success as a refrigerant in inflammatory diseases. Dr. Broussais has remarked, that it was, of all the acidulous substances, that which suited best the stomach, when this organ was labouring under an acute phlogosis.



No 39.

CINCHONA OFFICINALIS.



PERUVIAN BARK.

It is also very useful in stopping certain irritations of the stomach in which there is a constant vomiting. Its administration is recommended in jaundice, scurvy, and generally in all kinds of febrile diseases in which the thirst is great and the animal heat very much increased.

*Employment.*

It is given in lemonade: the juice of one lemon, water one pint, loaf-sugar sufficient quantity. The *citric acid* obtained by evaporating the juice of the lemon, is used as the best preparation, to combine with *sal æratus* to make the effervescing mixture or draught. It is seldom, however, obtained pure.

---

No. 39.

## PERUVIAN BARK.

*Latin Name*—CINCHONA OFFICINALIS.

*English Name*—PERUVIAN BARK.

*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—CINCHONA—Corol funnel-form, 5-cleft; capsule inferior, 2-celled, bipartite; the valves parallel to the partitions, opening inwardly.

*Species*—OFFICINALIS—Leaves ovate, lanceolate, petiolate, glabrous; capsules oblong, panicle terminal; trichotomous.

*Description.*

The tree which produces the bark varies in size. Woodville describes it as being a very lofty tree, and sending off large branches; its leaves are oblong, three inches in length, and about an inch and a half in breadth. The flowers stand in clusters at the end of the branches, and are composed of single tubular petal, whose border is divided into five segments. These are succeeded by capsules of an olive shape, which, when ripe, split open lengthwise, showing two cells divided by a membrane; each contains a number of small flatted seeds, surrounded with a membranous edge.

*History.*

There are commonly enumerated three varieties of Peruvian bark, viz:

1. The common, the yellow of some authors.
2. The yellow, the orange of some authors.
3. The red.

1 *Cortex cinchonæ cordifoliæ*.—The plant which affords this species is the *Cinchona cordifolia*, of Zea; the *Cinchona officinalis*, of Linnæus; the *Cinchona macrocarpa*, of Willdenow. Heart-leaved cinchona. The bark of this tree is called *yellow bark*, because it approaches more to that colour than either of the others does. It is in flat pieces, not convoluted like the pale, nor dark-coloured like the red; exter-

nally smooth, internally of a light cinnamon colour, friable and fibrous; has no peculiar odour different from the others, but a taste incomparably more bitter, with some degree of astringency.

2. *Cortex cinchonæ lancifolia*.—This species is obtained from the *Cinchona lancifolia*, of Zea. Lance-leaved cinchona. This is the *quilled bark*, which comes in small quilled twigs, breaking close and smooth, friable between the teeth, covered with a rough coat of a brownish colour, internally smooth, and of a light brown; its taste is bitter, and slightly astringent; flavour slightly aromatic, with some degree of mustiness.

3. *Cortex cinchonæ oblongifolia*.—This kind is procured from *Cinchona oblongifolia* of Zea. Oblong-leaved cinchona. This is the *red bark*: it is in large thick pieces, externally covered with a brown rugged coat, internally more smooth and compact, but fibrous, and of a dark red colour; taste and smell similar to that of the *cinchonæ lancifolæ cortex*, but the taste rather stronger.

Geoffroy states that the use of this bark was first learned from the following circumstance:—Some cinchona trees being thrown by the winds into a pool of water, lay there till the water became so bitter, that every body refused to drink it. However, one of the neighbouring inhabitants, being seized with a violent paroxysm of fever, and finding no other water to quench his thirst, was forced to drink of this, by which he was perfectly cured. He afterward related the circumstance to others, and prevailed upon some of his friends, who were ill of fevers, to make use of the same remedy, with whom it proved equally successful. The use of this excellent remedy, however, was very little known till about the year 1638, when, a signal cure having been performed by it on the Spanish viceroy's lady, the Countess del Cinchon, at Lima, it came into general use, and hence it was distinguished by appellation of *cortex cinchonæ*, and *pulvis comitissæ*, or the Countess's powder. On the recovery of the Countess, she distributed a large quantity of the bark to the Jesuits, in whose hands it acquired still greater reputation, and by them it was first introduced into Europe, and thence called *cortex*, or *pulvis jesuiticus*, *pulvis patrum*; and also Cardinal del Lugo's powder, because that charitable prelate bought a large quantity of it at a great expense for the use of the religious poor at Rome.

#### Qualities.

From the general analysis of bark, it appears to consist, besides the woody matter which composes the greater part of it, of gum, resin, gallic acid, of very small portions of tannin and essential oil, and of several salts, having principally lime for their basis. Seguin also supposed the existence of gelatin in it, but without sufficient proof. Cold water infused on pale bark for some hours, acquires a bitter taste, with some share of its odour; when assisted by a moderate heat, the water takes up more of the active matter; by decoction, a fluid, deep coloured, of a bitter styptic taste, is obtained, which, when cold, deposits a precipitate of resinous matter and gallic acid. By long decoction, the virtues of the bark are nearly destroyed, owing to the oxygenation of its active matter. Magnesia enables water to dissolve a larger portion of the principles of bark, as does lime, though in an inferior degree.

Alcohol is the most powerful solvent of its active matter. Brandy, and other spirits, and wines, afford also strong solutions, in proportion to the quantity of alcohol they contain. A saturated solution of ammonia is also a powerful solvent; vinegar is less so even than water. By distillation, water is slightly impregnated with the flavour of bark; it is doubtful whether any essential oil can be obtained.

*Properties.*

Given in small doses, the Peruvian bark acts locally and simply on the stomach and intestinal canal; it increases the vitality of this apparatus, stimulates the digestive functions, and renders the assimilation of the alimentary substances more rapid and perfect; but this tonic action is almost exclusively limited to the tissues with which the bark comes in contact; whilst, under the influence of larger doses, we perceive the manifestation of a series of general phenomena, which leaves no doubt that this action is extended to the whole economy. In fact, after the administration of a common dose of bark, under any shape whatever, the mouth becomes dry; the stomach experiences a sensation of heat, which extends very soon to the whole abdomen; the circulation is quicker, the pulse becomes more active and full; the general heat, and cutaneous perspiration, are increased; finally, a sensation of vigour more or less appreciable and permanent is experienced, which characterizes the tonic preparation. Should the dose of bark be too strong, or its use too long continued, or, finally, the digestive canal, or any other organ be in a state of inflammation, all the phenomena we have just mentioned become more intense, and all the symptoms of inflammation are aggravated. Uneasiness and a dry heat are felt at the epigastric region; nausea, flatulence, vomiting or alvine evacuations take place; a violent thirst and an acrid and burning heat are experienced; the pulse is hard and frequent; the temporal arteries beat violently; all these symptoms are followed by a violent headach, bleeding at the nose, an extreme agitation, dryness of the skin, and even, in some cases, by delirium, sleeplessness, irregular motions, and all the signs of an irritation in the brain.

Intermittent fever is the disease, for the cure of which bark was introduced into practice, and there is still no remedy which equals it in power. It is given as early as possible, after clearing the stomach and bowels, in the dose of from one scruple to a drachm every second or third hour, during the interval of the paroxysm; but it becomes by far more efficacious by uniting it with other ingredients.

We must always avoid giving this remedy during the fever; for, under this circumstance, instead of lessening its intensity, it would increase and render it more obstinate. However, in remittent fevers, when the fits are separated by very short intervals, the bark may be exhibited towards the end of the exacerbation, and the dose should be then administered all at once, in order that it may act before the return of the next paroxysm.

In some forms of continued fever which are connected with debility, as in typhus, cynanche maligna, confluent small-pox, &c., it is regarded as one of the most valuable remedies. It may be prejudicial, however, in those diseases where the brain or its membranes are inflamed, or where there is much irritation, marked by subsultus ten-

dinum, and convulsive motions of the extremities; and in pure typhus it appears to be less useful in the beginning of the disease than in the convalescent stage.

*Employment.*

Internally, the powder as a tonic, from ten grains to half an ounce. As a febrifuge, from one scruple to a drachm, every second or third hour, in wine. The extract is a good form to administer it. It is the basis of our vegetable wine bitters, which we have found a specific in all species of the intermittent fever.

---

No. 40.

**DOGWOOD.** *The Bark.*

*Latin Name*—**CORNUS FLORIDA.**

*English Name*—**LARGE-FLOWERED CORNEL.**

*Botanical Character.*

Class IV.—**TETRANDRIA.**

Order I.—**MONOGYNIA.**

*Genus*—**CORNUS**—Calyx deciduous, 4-toothed, often with a 4-leafed involucre; coral 4-petalled, superior; drupe with a 2-celled nut.

*Species*—**FLORIDA**—Leaves opposite, ovate, acuminate; involucre large; leaflets obcordate; fruit ovate.

*Description.*

The dogwood tree is of slow growth, and possesses a very compact wood, covered with a rough, broken bark. The branches are smooth, covered with a reddish bark, marked with rings at the place of the former leaves. The leaves, which are small at the flowering time, are opposite, petioled, oval, acute, entire, nearly smooth, paler beneath, and marked, as in others of the genus, with strong parallel veins. The flowers are small, grow in heads or sessile umbels, upon peduncles an inch or more in length. At the base of each bunch is the large spreading involucre, constituting the chief beauty of this tree when in bloom. This involucre is composed of four white nerved, obovate leaves, having their point turned abruptly down or up, so as to give them an obcordate appearance. This point has frequently a reddish tinge. Calyx superior, somewhat bell-shaped, ending in four obtuse, spreading teeth. Petals 4, oblong obtuse, reflexed, stamens 4, erect; the anthers oblong, with the filaments inserted in their middle; style erect, shorter than the stamens, with an obtuse stigma. The fruit is an oval drupe, of a glossy scarlet colour, containing a nucleus with two cells and two seeds.

*History.*

This tree is one of the chief ornaments of our forests. It is rather below the middle stature, not usually reaching the

height of more than twenty or thirty feet. It is, however, among the most conspicuous trees in our forests. In the months of April, May and June, according to its latitude, it is then covered with a profusion of its large and elegant flowers.

#### Locality.

This tree is found throughout the United States, but more plentifully in the middle states. In the Carolinas, Georgia, and the Floridas, it is confined principally to the borders of swamps. It is not very common in the most fertile parts of the western states, being found where the soil is of secondary quality.

#### Qualities.

The bark of the root, stem, and branches, taste very much like the *cinchona*; it is bitter, astringent, and slightly aromatic. Its astringency is, however, stronger than that of the Peruvian bark.

Besides tannin, colouring matter, gum extractive, &c., this bark contains an alkaline proximate principle, discovered by Mr. G. W. Carpenter, of Philadelphia, and called by him *cornine*, and afterwards *cornia*.

#### Medical Properties.

*Tonic, astringent, &c.* The bark of the root, of stem, and smaller branches, is employed. That of the root is deemed most efficacious. Drs. Edwards and Vavasseur, in their Manual of Materia Medica, speak of this bark in the following terms:—This bark, which has been ably investigated by Dr. Walker, of Virginia, is, without doubt, one of our most valuable native articles. As a substitute for *cinchona*, which it resembles very much, both in its physical and chemical, as well as therapeutical properties, much has been written in commending it as a succedaneum. It seems, however, to be more particularly related to the *cinchona oblongifolia*; but the *cornus florida* differs from it, in its being rather more astringent. It is extensively employed by country practitioners in intermittent fevers, and the report they give of it is very favourable and satisfactory. Dr. Gregg, of Bristol, observes, that he exhibited it for nearly twenty-three years, during which time he found it always sufficient to cure successfully intermittent fevers, and uniformly beneficial as a tonic in cases of debility.

#### Employment.

This bark is used in powder, or infusion of the powder, from one scruple to half an ounce. Infusion one ounce of the bark to a pint of boiling water.

No. 41.

**ROSE-WILLOW. *The Bark.****Latin Name*—CORNUS SERICEA.*English Name*—ROUND-LEAVED DOGWOOD.*Vulgar Names*—GREEN OSIER, RED ROD, RED WILLOW.*Botanical Character.*

Class IV.—TETRANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—CORNUS—Calyx deciduous, 4-toothed, often with a 4-leaved involucre; corol 4-petalled, superior; drupe with a 2-celled nut.

*Species*—SERICEA—Branches spreading; leaves ovate, acuminate, silky ferruginous beneath; cymes naked, flat; berries blue.

*Description.*

This tree is about the size of a small apple tree, and covered with a greenish coloured bark, and very red within; the flowers resemble a bunch of roses, from whence it derives its name.

*Locality.*

It grows near brooks, along the banks of rivers, and on upland meadows; it is known throughout the United States by the name of red-rose willow, which distinguishes it from the black willow, or the puss willow, which grows in swamps, and along the sides of moist meadows.

*Medical Properties.*

It is a powerful *astringent* and tonic, preferred by some to the Peruvian bark or Columbo, and is much employed in the Northern States, in substance or otherwise, in diarrhœa and dyspepsia; but it is too heating in fevers. In vomiting, this is an excellent remedy, given in form of an infusion, in the vomiting particularly arising from pregnancy and diseased uterus. This is a valuable article.

*Employment.*

This is given mostly in the form of infusion, made as common infusions.

No. 41.

CORNUS SERICEA.



ROSE WILLOW.



No. 42.

**SCAMMONY.***Latin Name*—CONVOLVULUS SCAMMONIA.*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—CONVOLVULUS—Corol monopetalous, funnel-form, plaited ; calyx 5-parted ; stigmata 2 ; capsule 2 or 3-celled ; cells 2-seeded ; covered by a lid.

*Species*—SCAMMONIA—Leaves sagittate, truncate behind ; peduncles round, 2 or 3-flowered ; flowers yellow.

*Description.*

The root is thick and large, like bryony, black on the surface and white within, and it is full of an acrid, milky juice ; from this arises the stalk, weak and trailing, three or four feet high, and beset with triangular leaves, like those of the common field bindweed. The flowers grow from the axilla of these, are large, bell-shaped and whitish, with purplish or yellowish tinge. The seed vessel is of a pointed form, and the seeds themselves angular and blackish.

*Locality.*

This is a climbing, perennial plant, which grows in Syria, Mysia, and Cappadocia.

*Qualities.*

This substance is found in commerce in masses of moderate size, of a deep gray colour, and friable ; its fracture is dull and opaque ; its odour is strong and peculiar ; its taste bitter, acrid.

According to Messrs. Bouillon Lagrange, and Vogel, it is composed of resin, 60 ; gum, 3 ; extractive, 2 ; impurities, 35. It is soluble in alcohol. Triturated with water, it forms a sort of emulsion of a dirty greenish-yellow colour, in which one fourth of the resin appears to be dissolved.

*Medical Properties.*

Scammony is an efficacious and strong purgative. Some practitioners condemn it, as unsafe. Where the intestines are loaded with an excessive burthen of mucus, the scammony is apt to pass through without exerting itself ; but where there is a deficiency of the natural mucus, this article is apt to irritate and inflame the intestines.

*Employment.*

The common dose of scammony is from three to twelve grains.

No. 43.

**SENNA. *The Leaves.****Latin Name*—CASSIA SENNA.*English Name*—ALEXANDRIA SENNA.*Botanical Character.*

Class X.—DECANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—CASSIA—Calyx 5-leaved; corol 5-petalled, unequal; 3 upper anthers barren; 3 lower ones beaked; legume flat.

*Species*—SENNA—Leaflets 4 to 6 pair, sub-ovate; petioles without glands; stipules spreading; pods oval, oblong, bent upwards.

*Description.*

The stalk rises from two to four feet, resembling a shrub, and sending out hollow woody stems; leaves in alternate order, and compound, composed of several pairs of oval, pointed and nerved pinnæ, of yellowish-green colour; flowers yellow, forming a spike consisting of five petals; the pod is covered and short, bivalved with several cordiform seeds, contained in separate cells.

*Qualities.*

Senna, according to Messrs. Lassaigne and Feneulle, contains a peculiar substance, called *cathartin*, some chlorophyllin, a fatty oil, a small quantity of volatile oil, a yellow colouring principle, albumen, and salts of lime and potassa. Water and alcohol dissolve its active properties.

Cathartin seems to be the active principle of senna; it is neither acid nor alkaline, and does not crystallize; it is slightly deliquescent, of a reddish-yellow colour, of a peculiar odour, and of a bitter and nauseous taste. It dissolves in water and alcohol, but not in ether. Heated, it is decomposed rapidly. It has not, as yet, been introduced into practice.

*Medical Properties.*

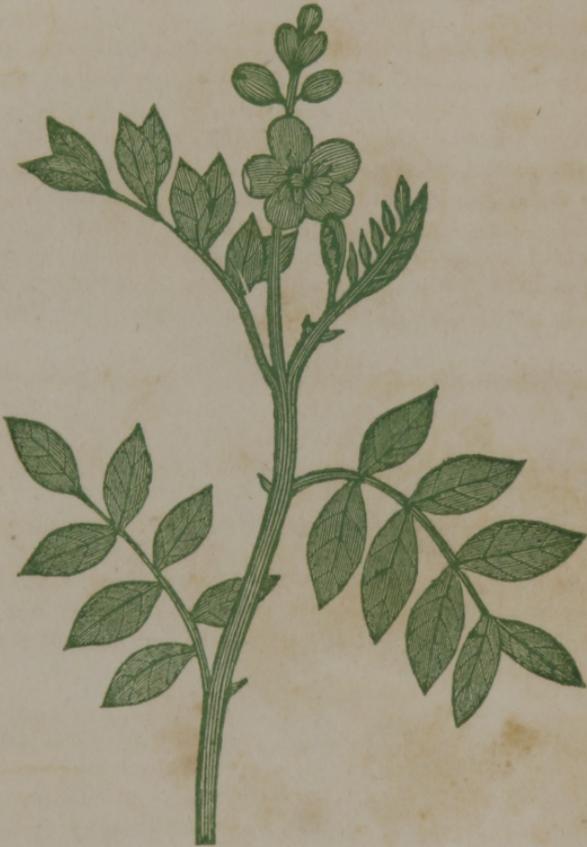
This is a very useful cathartic, operating effectually and mildly. It is necessary to combine this article with other ingredients, to prevent its griping effects. This article enters the *anti-bilious physic* of our pharmacopœia, and into the worm, or vermifuge powders.

*Employment.*

It is often administered, principally, in the form of infusion. *Infusion of senna.*—Take of senna-leaves, an ounce and a half; ginger-root, sliced, a drachm; boiling water, a pint. Macerate for an hour, in a covered vessel, and strain the liquor.

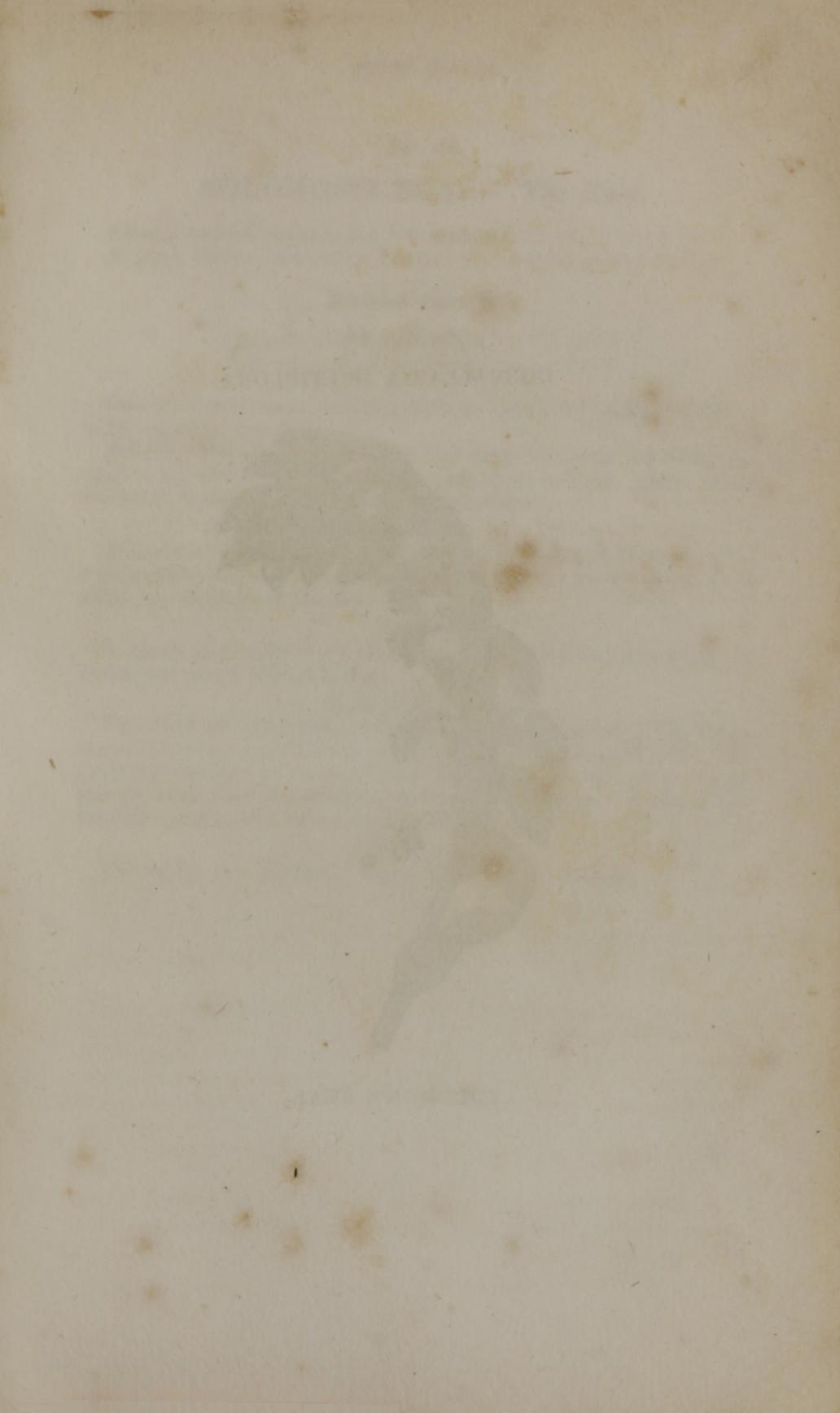
No. 43.

CASSIA SENNA.



ALEXANDRIA SENNA.





No. 44.

CONVALLARIA MULTIFLORA.



SOLOMON'S SEAL.

No. 44.

**SOLOMON'S SEAL. *The Root.*****Latin Name**—CONVALLARIA MULTIFLORA.**English Name**—SOLOMON'S SEAL.*Botanical Character.*

Class VI.—HEXANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

**Genus**—CONVALLARIA—Corol 6-cleft; calyx 0; stigma '3-sided; berry superior, 3-celled.

**Species**—MULTIFLORA—Leaves alternate, clasping the stem, oblong, oval; stem round, bending; peduncles axillary, loose, many flowered; corols funnel form; greenish-white.

*Description.*

This plant rises six or seven inches high; leaves lanceolate, and of a dark-green colour; flowers in umbels, and hang on the sides of the stalks, producing red berries.

*Locality.*

It grows on the sides of meadows, high banks and mountains, in every part of the United States.

*Medical Properties.*

The roots are astringent, incassant and corroborant. The mucilage of the roots is good when applied to inflammations and piles. The roots are useful in all cases of *fluor albus*, (*whites*,) and in immoderate flowing of the menses, arising from female weakness. It enters into the *restorative cordial* of our pharmacopœia.

*Employment.*

*Externally*, as a poultice; *internally*, as above directed.

No. 45.

## SAFFRON.

*Latin Name*—CROCUS SATIVUS.*English Name*—GARDEN SAFFRON.*Botanical Character.*

Class III.—TRIANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—CROCUS—Corol 6-parted, regular, with very long tube ; stigmata convolute, jagged.*Species*—SATIVUS—Stigma exserted, 3-parted ; segments linear.*Description.*

The root is a small bulb, standing upon a larger, with a multitude of fibres growing from the base. Four or five leaves arise from the root, of a dark-green, narrow and grassy, about five inches long ; from the same root arises a stalk, four inches high, sustaining a single flower, resembling crocus. It has three stamina, with yellow anthers, and a centre ; a long pistilum, which, at the top, divides into three cristated, fleshy, capillaments, of an orange colour, which is the part used in practice.

*Locality.*

This plant is a native of the Levant, and cultivated in Europe and in this country.

*Qualities.*

This substance is in long filaments, slightly rolled, flexible, elastic, of a very deep orange-red colour, of a sharp and bitter taste, and of a strong peculiar odour. It dyes saliva of a golden yellow.

Saffron contains an orange-red colouring matter, a very odorous volatile oil, acrid and caustic, a concrete fixed oil, gum, albumen, and salts. The substance which Bouillon Lagrange, and Vogel, have denominated *polychroite*, is but a compound of colouring matter and volatile oil. Water, alcohol, vinegar, &c. dissolve its active principles.

*Medical Properties.*

In small doses, saffron is employed as a diaphoretic, soon causing perspiration ; in large doses, it acts upon the whole animal economy in the same way as stimulus. It extends its action considerably to the uterus. It is useful to allay the lumbar pains which accompany menstruation in some females. It is useful also in chlorosis, hysteria, &c. It may be employed likewise as a stomachic and antispasmodic. It enters into the sudorific drops of our pharmacopœia.

*Employment.*

In powder, twelve grains. Infusion, half to one drachm, in two pounds of boiling water ; very valuable in all eruptive diseases, measles, small-pox, &c.

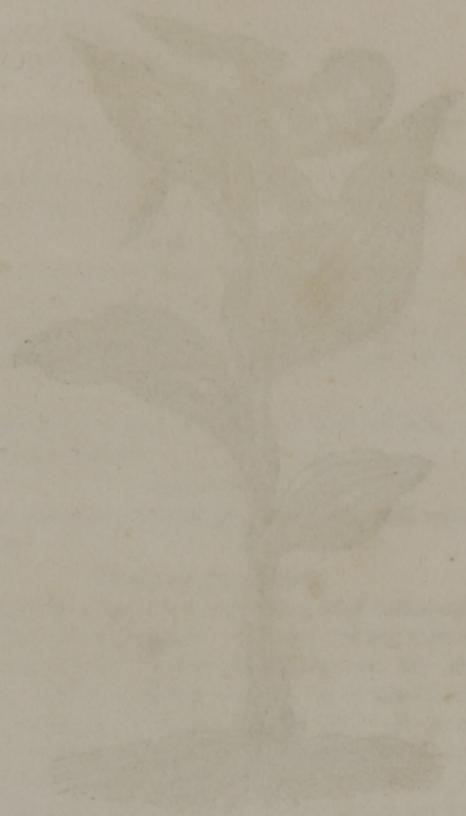
No. 45.

CROCUS SATIVUS.



GARDEN SAFFRON.





No. 46.

CYPRIPEDIUM PUBESCENS.



YELLOW LADIES' SLIPPER.

No. 46.

## LADIES' SLIPPER.

*Latin Name*—CYPRIPEDIUM, PUBESCENS.*English Name*—YELLOW LADIES' SLIPPER.*Vulgar Names*—MOCCASIN FLOWER, YELLOW UMBEL, NERVE-ROOT, &c.*Botanical Character.*

Class XVIII.—GYNANDRIA.

Order II.—DIANDRIA.

*Genus*—CYPRIPEDIUM—Nectary 2-lipped, the lower large, inflated.*Species*—PUBESCENS—Root fibrous; stem leafy; petals 4, lanceolate, pointed; upper lip elliptic, channelled; flowers yellow.*Description.*

Grows from one to two feet high, and sometimes has leaves all the way up; the flower is in the form of a purse or round bag, with a small entrance near where it joins the stalk, and is something like a moccasin, or slipper; the roots are fibrous and thickly matted together.

*Locality.*

It is common in the hills and swamps of New-York, and is found throughout the United States.

*Qualities.*

The roots have a pungent, mucilaginous taste, and a peculiar smell, somewhat nauseous.

*Medical Properties.*

Ladies' slipper root is a sedative, nervine, and antispasmodic, and a substitute for valerian in all cases. They produce beneficial effects in all nervous diseases and hysterical affections, by allaying pain, quieting the nerves, and promoting sleep. It is also used in nervous headach, epilepsy, tremors, nervous fevers, &c. It is preferable to opium in most cases, having no baneful nor narcotic effects. The dose is a teaspoonful of the powder, diluted in sugar water, or any other convenient form. It may also be used in decoction, or formed into an extract. As with valerian, the nervine power is increased by combination with mild tonics.

No. 47.

**CAMPHOR. The Gum.***Latin Name*—LAURUS CAMPHORA.*English Name*—CAMPHOR TREE.*Botanical Character.*

Class IX.—ENNEANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—LAURUS—Calyx 0; corol 6-parted, resembling a calyx; nectary 3-glands surrounding the germ, and each ending in 2-bristles; inner filaments supporting 2-glands each; berry 1-seeded.

*Species*—CAMPHORA—Leaves triply-nerved, lance-ovate, whitish beneath; flowers on long peduncles.

*Description.*

A proximate principle, contained in a great number of plants; but obtained principally from the *dryobalanops camphora*, COLEBROKE, a large tree, native of the forests on the north-western coast of Sumatra; and from the *laurus camphora*, LIN., a tree growing in China and Japan.

*Dryobalanops.* Trunk large, often six or seven feet in diameter; leaves opposite below, and alternate above, elliptical, obtusely acuminate, or rather beaked, parallel-veined, entire, supported on short petioles, with subulate, caducous stipules in pairs; calyx, 1-leafed, permanent, enlarged into a gibbous cup, with 5 ligulate, long, scariose wings; corolla, 5-parted; fruit, a persistent capsule, superior, ovate, woody, fibrous, longitudinally furrowed, 1-celled, and 3-valved, with a solitary seed, possessing a strong terebinthinate fragrance.

*Laurus camphora.* Trunk straight, tolerably high; leaves alternate, oval, shining on the superior surface, glaucous on the inferior one; flowers in corymbs, supported on long peduncles; fruit, similar to that of the cinnamon tree, but smaller.

*Locality.*

The *dryobalanops camphora* is a native of the north-west coast of Sumatra, while the *laurus camphora* is a native of China and Japan.

*Quality.*

Camphor is solid, white, transparent, very volatile, brittle; commonly in the form of round pieces, convex on one side, slightly concave on the other, of a crystalline texture, and shining fracture, not easily pulverized, tenacious between the teeth, of a strong smell, *sui generis*, of an acrid taste, followed by a sensation of cold. Its specific gravity is 0.988.

C. P. It is composed of carbon, 74.38; hydrogen, 10.67; and oxygen, 14.61; it inflames easily, and burns with a good deal of smoke without leaving any residue. Heated, it melts at 175° Centig. (347° Fahr.)

No. 47.

LAURUS CAMPHORA.



CAMPHOR TREE.





No. 48.

DAUCUS CAROTA.



WILD CARROT.

boils at 204° Centig. (400° Fahr.) and is easily reduced to vapours, even at the common temperature. Alcohol dissolves three fourths of its weight; it is very soluble in ether, in fixed and volatile oils; but water dissolves only a small quantity, and precipitates it from its alcoholic solutions. Treated with nitric acid, it gives camphoric acid, and with sulphuric acid, it changes, partly, into artificial tannin.

*Medical Properties.*

Camphor is stimulant, sudorific, and antispasmodic. Exhibited in small doses, it increases excitement; but if pushed too far, it induces delirium, vertigo, convulsions, and death. In low typhoid fevers, this article appears to exert its greatest benefit. Combined with opium and ipecacuanha, it is a very valuable remedy in low *typhus* and putrid fevers. "Its power of allaying," says Dr. Eberle, "the delirium and other nervous symptoms of *typhus* is, I think, more decisive than that of any other remedy we possess." It has likewise been given in *epilepsy* with success. Cullen adduces considerable evidence in its favour, in this disease, when combined with other remedies. Dr. Gooch considers camphor, given in union with hyoscyamus, the best sudorific with which we are now acquainted. His method of administering it, is to give ten grains of each at bedtime, after the use of the tepid bath. Camphor enters into the sudorific drops, and several plasters.

*Employment.*

Given in the form of powder, emulsion, or solution. By triturating it with a few drops of alcohol it is easily pulverized.

The dose of camphor is from two grains to one scruple.

---

No. 48.

**WILD CARROT.** *The Seeds and Roots.*

*Latin Name*—DAUCUS CAROTA.

*English Name*—WILD CARROT.

*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order II.—DIGYNIA.

*Genus*—DAUCUS—Involucres pinnatifid; flowers somewhat radiating; florets of the centre abortive; fruit muricate.

*Species*—CAROTA—Seeds bristly; petioles nerved beneath, divisions of the leaflets linear acute.

*Description.*

The common garden carrot needs no description, being so well known. We shall therefore only describe the *wild*. This grows similar to the garden carrot, except the leaves and stalks are somewhat whiter and rougher. The flowers are situated upon the top of the stalks, forming an umbel, with the edges of the umbel rising higher

than the middle, gives it the form of a bird's nest. The roots are small, long, and hard.

*History.*

This plant is indigenous, and flowers in July and August; seeds ripe in September.

*Locality.*

This plant (the wild) grows in many places of the United States, and is found by the sides of old fields and uncultivated grounds.

*Qualities.*

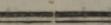
The wild carrot is slender, acrid, and of a strong aromatic smell.

*Medical Properties.*

This plant is diuretic, acting particularly upon the urinary organs. Given in strong decoction, it is very useful in *gravelly* complaints, and in the passage of the *stone* from the *kidneys* and *bladder*; in the *buboes*, arising from the *venereal*, it is very useful in causing suppuration. It is likewise used in *carcinomatous* ulcers, and in cases of *fissures* in the nipples of nurses.

*Employment.*

The seeds are carminative, and are very useful in flatulent disorders. The roots and seeds are the parts principally used. A strong tea, or decoction, of the seeds, to be freely drank as directed above, and in the form of poultice.



No. 49.

**FOX-GLOVE. *The Leaves.***

*Latin Name*—DIGITALIS PURPUREA.

*English Name*—FOX-GLOVE.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XIII.—DIDYNAMIA.

Order II.—ANGIOSPERMIA.

*Genus*—DIGITALIS—Calyx 5-parted; corol campanulate, ventricose 5-cleft; capsule ovate, 2-celled, many seeded; stigma declined.

*Species*—PURPUREA—Divisions of the calyx ovate, acute; corol obtuse, with the upper lip very entire, leaves lance-ovate, pubescent.

*Description.*

Stem herbaceous, simple, straight, hairy, from two to three feet high; radical leaves very large, oval, whitish, hairy on both sides; flowers of a deep purple, hanging in a terminal and unilateral spike; calyx persistent, with five deep divisions; corolla irregular, campanulate, spotted internally with black dots; fruit, an ovoid, acuminate and bivalve capsule.

*History.*

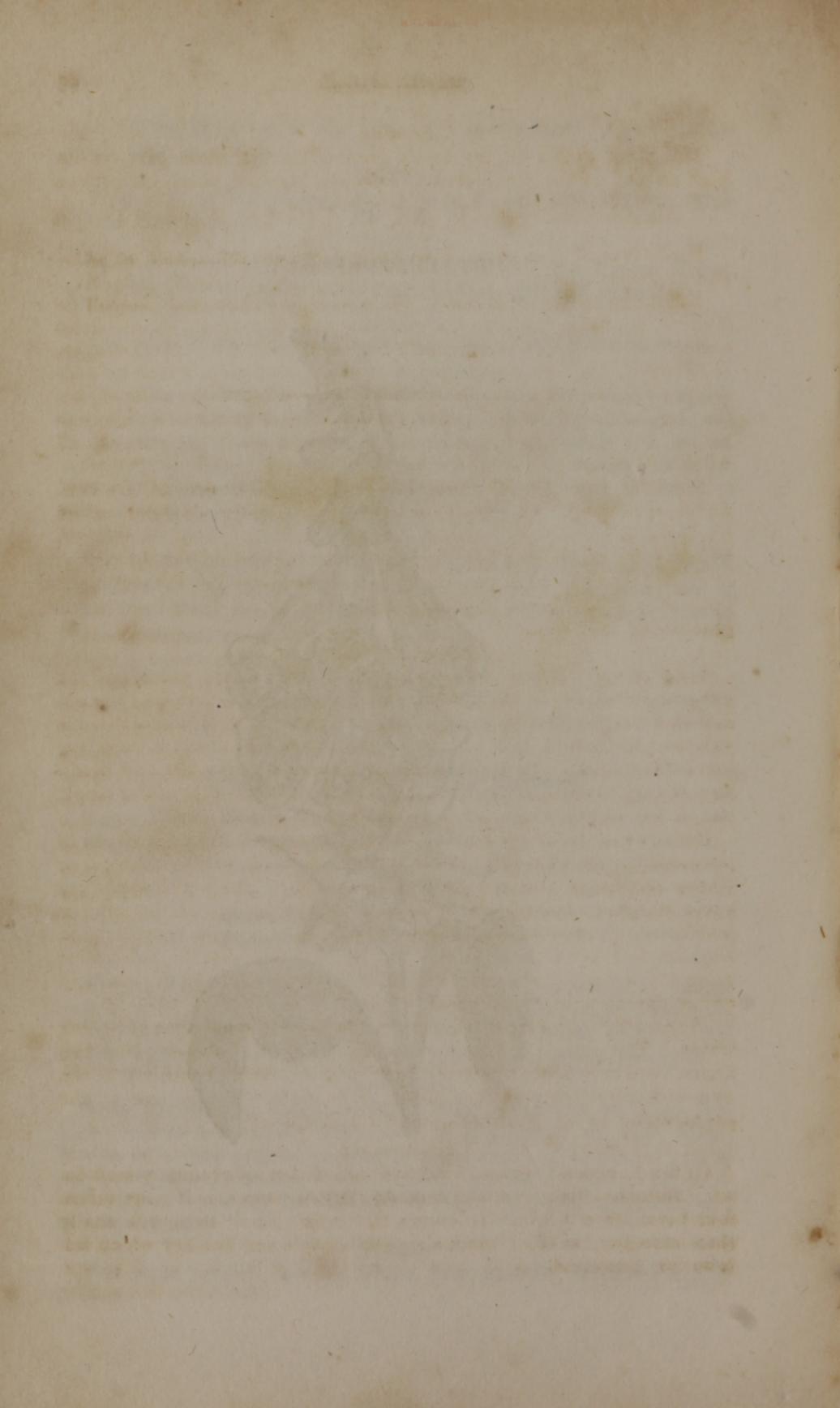
This plant seldom flowers before July, and the seeds are ripe in August.

No. 49.

DIGITALIS PURPUREA.



FOX-GLOVE.



*Locality.*

This plant grows on dry sandy ground, for the most part, on the high as well as the low places. This is a biennial plant, indigenous to Europe, but flourishes well in America.

*Qualities.*

The leaves of this plant have a slight virose smell, and an acrid and unpleasant taste.

According to the analysis of Messrs. Destouches and Bidault de Villiers, digitalis contains an aqueous brown extract, an alcoholic extract, an oily green matter, salts, oxide of iron, &c. Mr. Leroyer, of Geneva, has discovered in it a peculiar substance, which he considers as the active principle of this plant, and which he calls *digitalin*; but, according to Mr. Dulong, this substance is not of an alkaline nature, but is simply a compound of several other substances, all soluble in ether.

*Digitalin*, such as Mr. Leroyer obtained it, is brown, of the consistence of pitch, extremely deliquescent, slightly alkaline, of an intense bitterness, and almost uncrystallizable. This substance, whatever its nature may be, possesses in the highest degree the virtues of digitalis, as has been proved by the experiments Dr. Prevost made upon several species of animals. It has not as yet been used in the practice of Medicine.

*Medical Properties.*

*Sedative* and *diuretic*, diminishing the activity of the *pulse*, and the general *irritability* of the *system*, and increasing the *action* of the absorbents and the discharge of urine. In inflammation this article is valuable, to reduce the activity of the pulse, and thereby lessening the inflammation. In *hydrothorax* or *dropsy* in the *chest*, this medicine is very useful. It is useful in pleurisy, inflammation of the lungs, and in the dropsy, and in all inflammatory affections.

Remarks of Dr. Newman, of Berlin, on the use of the digitalis in pulmonary diseases:—He states, that it is useless in tubercles, or where the lungs are in a state of ulceration. But it almost always cures chronic catarrh, which results from irritation of the mucous membrane of the bronchia, chronic bronchitis, or mucous consumption. Digitalis will be of no service if it does not diminish the pulse after using a few days. The leaves should be green, although dry, without any appearance of brown spots.

*Preparation.*—Infuse two ounces of the plant in six ounces of boiling water. The patient to take a tablespoonful of this infusion every two hours, until it produces nausea, dryness of the throat, sparkling of the eye, and irregularity of the pulse. This article enters one of the preparations of our pharmacopœia for hydrothorax.

*Employment.*

Of the powdered leaves, from two to three grains gradually increased. Infusion, fox-glove, one drachm; boiling water, half pint; infuse four hours, then strain. It lowers the pulse much more effectually than bleeding, without producing that dangerous debility which follows this operation.

No. 50.

**THORN APPLE.** *The Leaves and Seeds.**Latin Name*—**DATURA STRAMONIUM.***English Name*—**COMMON THORN APPLE.***Vulgar Names*—**JAMESTOWN-WEED, JIMSON, STINK-WEED, &c.***Botanical Character.*Class V.—**PENTANDRIA.**Order I.—**MONOGYNIA.**

*Genus*—**DATURA**—Corol monopetalous, funnel-form, plaited; calyx tubular, angular, deciduous, with a permanent orbicular base; capsule, superior, 2-celled, 4-valved, each cell partly divided, many seeded.

*Species*—**STRAMONIUM**—Pericarps spinous, erect ovate; leaves glabrous, ovate, sinuate-angular.

*Description.*

Root, annual, white, crooked; stem erect, from one to eight feet in height, branched by forks, or dichotome, cylindrical, often hollow, smooth or pubescent; leaves alternate at the forks, petiolate, oval or oval-oblong; base decurrent, end acute, margin almost angular by large unequal acute teeth. Flowers, axillary, solitary, on short peduncles, erect or sometimes nodding, large, white, or bluish. Calyx monophylle, tubular, with five angles, and teeth deciduous, but leaving a rim at the base. Corolla twice as long, monopetalous; base tubular, subangular limb with five angle plaits and teeth; the last are acuminate; stamina five; filaments coherent with the persistent rim of the calyx, oval, hairy, one style; filiform as long as the stamina; one stigma. Fruit, a large fleshy capsule, ovate, thorny, with four valves opening at the top inside, with four cells, many black seeds filling the cells, and attached to a central recepticle in each cell.

*History.*

This plant blossoms from May to September in the southern states, and from July to October in the northern, bearing blossoms when the seeds of the first flowers are ripe. It is killed by the frost with us; but in warmer climates it becomes a semi-biennial plant.

*Locality.*

This is one of the wandering plants common to all parts of the world, and spreading with the utmost facility. It is probably a native of Persia and India; but has spread through Europe, Africa, and America. It was once thought to be a native of North America, but it has spread in it only since its colonization by the whites, and is called by the Indians "white people's plant." It is most commonly met with in old fields, along roads, and old houses, &c.; never in woods and mountains.

No. 50.

DATURA STRAMONIUM.



COMMON THORN APPLE.



*Qualities.*

Its smell is virose and nauseous, and its taste acrid and bitter.

Promnitz found the green plant to contain, gummy extractive matter, 0.58 ; extractive, 0.6 ; fecula, 0.64 ; albumen, 0.15 ; resin, 0.12 ; salts, 0.23 ; lignous fibres, 3.15. Mr. Brande, in his analysis of the seeds, discovered an alkaloid proximate principle, combined with malic acid, which he named *daturia*. Water and alcohol take up, by ebullition, the proximate principles of this plant.

*Daturia*, which, according to Messrs. Kirchoff and Engelbart, seems to be the active principle of stramonium, is white, pulverulent, almost insoluble in cold water and alcohol, but soluble in the latter menstruum when boiling, and capable of combining with acids and forming soluble salts. It has not as yet been used in medicine.

*Medical Properties.*

A strong poison, acting upon the animal economy in a powerful manner, resembling the action of *belladonna*. It has been given in the form of extract and powder in *epilepsy*, *mania*, and other nervous disorders. I have given it in other diseases, both internally and externally, with success. Dr. Ives, of New-Haven, says that he has seen beneficial effects arise from the use of this article in *epilepsy* ; but as far as my experience goes, it is designed more for an external than an internal medicine ; and the best form of using it is in an ointment made by simmering the fresh bruised leaves with lard. It possesses discutient, antiphlogistic properties, and is particularly serviceable in burns and piles. The best way of preparing the extract, is as follows :—Select any quantity of the most perfect leaves in the time of flowering, and boil them in water ; during three or four hours strain the decoction and evaporate with a gentle heat until it has acquired the consistence of syrup ; place this in a warm oven in a glazed or earthen vessel until it becomes fit for use. This extract possesses uniform strength and power. From half to one grain is a dose of this extract. All parts of this plant appear to be poisonous. Some soldiers in the revolutionary war died by eating this plant for greens, through mistake.

*Employment.*

Internally, from one grain to twenty of the leaves or seeds, may be given gradually ; externally, as above directed, in form of an ointment. I have used a tincture, made from the seeds, with success, in epilepsy. Twenty or thirty drops may be given three or four times a day.

No. 51.

**BONESET.** *The Leaves and Flowers.**Latin Name*—EUPATORIUM PERFOLIATUM.*English Name*—BONESET.*Vulgar Names*—THOROUGH-WORT, BONESET JOEY, E TEAZEL, FEVER-WORT, SWEATING PLANT, THOROUGH-STEM, CROSS-WORT, INDIAN SAGE, AGUE WEED, THOROUGH-WAX, VEGETABLE ANTIMONY.*Botanical Character.*

Class XVII.—SYNGENESIA.

Order I.—POLYGAMIA ÆQUALIS.

*Genus*—EUPATORIUM—Receptacle naked ; down simple or rough ; calyx imbricate, cylindrical ; style longer than the corol, cloven half way down.*Species*—PERFOLIATUM—Leaves connate-perfoliate, oblong, serrate, rugose, downy beneath ; stem villose ; flowers white.*Description.*

Root perennial, horizontal, crooked, with scanty fibres, and sending up many stems, which are upright, simple at the base, branched above in a trichotome form, forming a depressed corymb, from two to five feet high, round, covered with flexuous hairs ; the whole plant has a grayish green colour, and even the flowers are of a dull white. Leaves opposite, decussate, connate at the base, or united to each other there, where broadest, and gradually tapering to a sharp point ; from three to eight inches long, narrow, oblong, rough above, woolly beneath ; margin serrulate ; upper leaves often sessile, not united ; inflorescence in a dense depressed terminal corymb, formed by smaller fastigate corymbs ; peduncles hairy, as well as the perianthe or common calyx, each enclosing from twelve to fifteen florets ; scales lanceolate, acute ; florets tubulose, white ; five black anthers united into a tube ; seeds black, oblong.

*History.*

A very striking plant, easily recognised among all others, even when not in bloom, by its connate leaves perforated by the stem. This plant blossoms from August to October.

*Locality.*

Common in meadows and swamps near streams. Found growing throughout the United States, from Maine to Florida, from Ohio to Louisiana.

*Qualities.*

The whole plant is exceedingly bitter, and possesses but little smell. According to Dr. Andrew Anderson, this plant contains a free acid, a small quantity of tannin, a bitter extractive matter, a gummy matter, resin, nitrogen, lime, probably in the state of acetate, gallic acid, a resiniform matter, soluble in water and alcohol, containing a bitter principle.

No. 51.

EUPATORIUM PERFOLIATUM.



BONESET.





No. 52.

EUGENIA CARYOPHYLLATA.



CLOVES.

Mr. J. Scattergood has obtained from this plant, a salifiable base, which forms, with sulphuric acid, tasteless, prismatic crystals, and which he calls *Eupatoria*.

*Medical Properties.*

*Emetic, cathartic, sudorific, tonic, &c.* This plant possesses very active remedial properties, according to the dose in which it is administered. It has been given in intermittent fever with complete success, either in infusion, decoction, or powder. Dr. Anderson states, that this article was used in nearly every case of intermittents that occurred in the alms-house in 1812, instead of the Peruvian bark, and it proved uniformly successful. Drs. Bard and Hosack speak very highly of this plant as a diaphoretic in the cure of *yellow fever*. The dried pulverized leaves of this plant, united with aromatics, is a very good tonic in dyspepsia. A warm infusion of this plant, drank previous to taking an emetic, assists its operation, and causes the patient to vomit with more ease.

*Employment.*

The leaves of this plant may be given in powder, infusion, or cold decoction, according to the indications required. Of the leaves, as a tonic, from ten to twelve grains may be given; as an emetic, or to assist the action of other emetics, the warm infusion must be taken. The cold infusion or decoction likewise may be taken as a tonic.

---

No. 52.

**CLOVES.**

*Latin Name*—EUGENIA CARYOPHYLLATA.

*English Name*—CLOVES.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XI.—ICOSANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—EUGENIA—Calyx 4-cleft, superior; corol 4-petalled; berry 1-celled, many-seeded.

*Species*—CARYOPHYLLATA—Leaves very entire, oblong, rather acute; panicles axillary and terminal; peduncles trichotomous; calyx repand; fruit elliptic.

*Description.*

Leaves opposite, oboval, smooth, persistent; flowers of a pink colour, forming a terminal trichotomous corymb; calyx elongate, infundibuliform, with four teeth; four petals; ovary unilocular, monospermous; fruit, a dry ovoid drupe.

*History.*

This is a beautiful tall tree, a native of the Malucca islands. Cloves are the flower buds, which are gathered in October and November, before they are open, and dried in the sun.

*Qualities.*

Cloves have the form of a small nail with a round head ; they are of a light brown colour, of an acrid and sharp taste, of a strong and agreeable aromatic smell.

Cloves contain, according to Tromsdorff, a large proportion of essential oil, heavier than water, and excessively acrid, some tannin and gum. Mr. Lolibert has discovered in it a peculiar resinous matter, crystallizable, white, satin-like, rough to the touch, inodorous and insipid, which he has called *caryophyllin*.

*Medical Properties.*

Cloves are among the most stimulating of the aromatics. They are employed principally as adjuvants to other medicines, particularly in combination with bitters, or with the vegetable cathartics. The essential oil is used with the same intention, and as a local application to severe toothach. We sometimes make use of the pulverized cloves as an aromatic in our "bilious physic," and the essential oil enters into our "dyspeptic pill." Cloves also enter into some other of our preparations, particularly for some forms of bowel complaints.

*Employment.*

In the form of powder or infusion. Of the powder from six to eight grains. Infusion, cloves one drachm, boiling water half a pint. Dose from one ounce to two, twice or thrice a day. Of the oil, from two to four drops triturated with sugar.

---

No. 53.

**ASAFŒTIDA. *The Gum.***

*Latin Name*—FERULA ASAFŒTIDA.

*English Name*—ASAFŒTIDA.

*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order II.—DIGYNIA.

*Genus*—FERULA—Flowers tubulous, all fertile ; petals cordate ; seeds oval, flat, compressed, with three raised lines on both sides.

*Species*—ASAFŒTIDA—Leaflets alternately sinuate, obtuse.

*Description.*

Root similar to that of the parsnip, black externally, white internally, lactescent, fetid ; stem naked, cylindrical, five or six feet high ; leaves all radical, triternate, of a light-green, supported by a peduncle six to eight inches long, of the size of the finger ; flowers of a pale-yellow colour, in umbels of from twelve to twenty rays ; involucre caducous ; involucre polyphyllous ; flowers elliptical, compressed, of a reddish-brown colour.

*Locality.*

A perennial plant, indigenous to Persia. It has been raised in the botanical garden in Edinburgh.

*Qualities.*

This substance is in agglutinated masses, more or less voluminous, of a brown or fallow colour, intermixed with white or violet points; becoming easily soft with a gentle heat; of a penetrating smell, and remarkable for its fetidity; of an acrid, bitter, and sharp taste.

According to Mr. Pelletier, it is composed of resin, 66; volatile oil, 3.60; gum, 19.44; bassorin, 11.66; super-malate of lime, 0.30. It is soluble in alcohol, ether, vinegar, the yolk of eggs, and partly only in water; triturated with this menstruum, it forms a sort of permanent emulsion; with  $\frac{1}{12}$ th of camphor, it produces a plastic mass, and is easily reduced to powder with carbonate of ammonia, without undergoing any alteration in its nature.

*Medical Properties.*

The gum of this plant is very useful in *hysterics* and other nervous disorders. It is very efficacious in *spasmodic asthma*, in which disease it should be given in large doses, of from ten to fifteen grains of the gum for a dose, made into pills, repeated three or four times a day. This dose may be safely increased until the desired effect is produced. This article being laxative, it is likewise very suitable in diseases of the stomach and bowels, particularly in hypochondriasis, as costiveness is apt to be very troublesome in this disease. Richter, in speaking upon this article, thinks it to be entitled, almost as a specific, to correct the morbid condition of the stomach which generates acidity, if combined with the gall of an ox, equal parts of each. It enters the hysteric pills of our pharmacopœia.

Doctor Wolcott states that he cured a case of spasmodic asthma, of nine years standing, which had resisted the treatment prescribed by other practitioners, by administering the asafœtida, in the form of a pill or bolus, 10 grains, three times a day; also the following expectorant:

Squills in powder, 30 grains;

Gum ammoniac  $1\frac{1}{2}$  drachms;

Extract of hemlock, (cicuta,) 30 grains;

Made into 30 pills; of which the patient took one or two every six hours, until a slight giddiness was felt. He also smoked stramonium leaves and tobacco.

*Employment.*

In powder, the asafœtida may be given in from ten grains to half an ounce.

No. 54.

**GAMBOGE. *The Gum.****Latin Name*—GARCINIA GAMBOGIA.*English Name*—GAMBOGE.*Botanical Character.*

Class XII.—POLYANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—GARCINIA—Calyx 4-cleft, inferior; corol 4-petalled; berry globular, 8-seeded; crowned with the stigma.

*Species*—GAMBOGIA—Leaves opposite, elliptic, acute, deep-green; flowers solitary, terminal, nearly sessile.

*Description.*

Trunk of a middle height; leaves opposite, oval, shining, tough, of a deep-green colour; male flowers, in distinct bunches; the hermaphrodite axillary; calyx four-divided; corolla four petals, about thirty stamina; fruit, a globular, whitish, or pink berry, containing several elongate and triangular seeds.

*Locality.*

The tree that furnishes the gamboge is of middling size, and grows wild in the kingdom of Siam and in Ceylon, and in the peninsula of Cambodia. The gum is obtained, by making incisions in the bark of the tree, from which the juice exudes and concretes.

*Qualities.*

Gamboge is found in commerce in cylindrical masses, of various sizes, of a yellowish-brown externally, of a reddish-yellow colour internally, friable, with a shining fracture, of a slight taste at first, then acrid and inodorous.

It seems to be composed of 20 of gum and 80 of resin. It is very soluble in water, alcohol, and ether, which it colours yellow, and also in volatile oils, and in a strong solution of ammonia and potassa, to which it imparts an orange-red colour. Heated, it melts, and burns at a higher temperature with a white flame, leaving a light and spongy coal.

*Medical Properties.*

Gamboge evacuates powerfully both upwards and downwards; and is condemned by some authors, as acting too powerfully; apt to excite too great discharges, and to produce inflammation of the stomach and bowels. Like all other drastic purgatives, gamboge has been employed, with success, in dropsies. In small doses it acts as a mild laxative. Gamboge enters as one of the articles in the anti-dyspeptic pill of our pharmacopœia. The celebrated hydragogue and diaphoretic preparation of Farrier, consists of gamboge, half a grain; ipecacuanha, half a grain; paregoric, one teaspoonful. This he considers as a dose.

*Employment.*

Dose, of the powdered gum, from two to three grains.



No. 55.

GENTIANA LUTEA.



GENTIAN.

No. 55.

**GENTIAN. The Root.***Latin Name*—GENTIANA LUTEA.*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order II.—DIGYNIA.

*Genus*—GENTIANA—Corol monopetalous, tubular at the base, without nectariferous pores; capsule 2-valved, 1-celled, many seeded; stigmas sessile.

*Species*—LUTEA—Corols mostly 5-cleft, sometimes 4, wheel-shaped, whorled; the whorls somewhat cymed; calyx spothaceous; root long, cylindrical. When the corol is but 4-cleft, there are but 4 stamens.

*Description.*

Root perpendicular, branched; stem erect, two or three feet high; leaves amplexicaule, oval, of a light-green, five or seven nerved; flowers yellow, spicate; corolla regular, rosaceous; stamens alternate with the lobes of the corolla; anthers erect; two stigmas; no styles, ovary and capsule fusiform, unilocular; fruit flat, and membranous on the edges.

*Locality.*

Gentian is a perennial plant, indigenous to Europe, growing upon the Alps, Appenines, Pyrenees, and other mountains, in the temperate parts of Europe. It blossoms in May.

*Qualities.*

According to Henry and Caventou, it contains a peculiar bitter principle, which they have called *gentianin*, an oleo-resinous matter, very similar to bird-lime, a greenish oil, uncrystallizable sugar, some gum, a yellow colouring matter, and, finally, some lignin. Water, alcohol, and ether, dissolve the active parts of this root.

The gentian root is elongated, of the size of the finger, wrinkled, twisted, brown externally, of a lively yellow, and spongy texture internally, of a slightly nauseous smell, of a very bitter taste, but devoid of astringency.

*Medical Properties.*

Gentian is a powerful and very useful tonic. In *dyspepsia* this article has obtained much celebrity, and not without foundation. It enters into almost all of the nostrums that are vended, at present, for the cure of this disease. It is administered with good effect, in some cases of *gout*, and *jaundice*, caused by debility of the *biliary organs*, in *chlorosis*, *hysteria*, &c. It is given in conjunction with other tonics and astringents, which appear to increase its value. The extract of gentian enters the anti-dyspeptic pills of our pharmacopœia.

*Employment.*

Compound infusion of gentian; gentian root, half an ounce; orange peel, one drachm; coriander, half a drachm; diluted alcohol, four ounces; water, one pound. Of the powder, as a dose, from one scruple to half a drachm.

No. 56.

**GUAIACUM.** *The Gum and Raspings.**Latin Name*—GUAIACUM OFFICINALE.*English Name*—GUAIACUM.*Botanical Character.*

Class X.—DECANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—GUAIACUM—Calyx 5-cleft, with the two outer divisions least; corol 5-petalled; petal inserted into the calyx, equal: capsule fleshy, angular, 3 or 5-celled.

*Species*—OFFICINALE—Leaflets 2 or 3 pairs, elliptic, sessile, obtuse; flowers lateral, blue.

*Description.*

Trunk elevated; leaves opposite, pari-pinnate, composed of two or three pairs of sessile and oval folioles about one inch long; flowers blue, eight or ten in the axilla of the leaves; calyx, five deep divisions; corolla stellate, 5-petals; ten stamina; ovary pedicellate, surmounted by a simple style; fruit, a capsule, commonly flattened, cordiform, with two, and sometimes five cells.

*Locality.*

This tree is a native of the West Indies.

*Qualities.*

**Guaiacum Wood.** This wood is found in commerce in large irregular pieces or logs, the exterior of which is frequently furnished with a thick, grayish, and resinous bark. The part properly called wood is very compact, hard, heavier than water, and of a greenish-brown, whilst the alburnum, or inner bark, is of a light yellow colour, and of a much softer nature. The taste of guaiacum is very acrid and slightly bitter, and it has hardly any smell. For medical uses, this wood is reduced to a coarse powder by means of a rasp. This powder, yellow at first, becomes green by exposure to light, and provokes sneezing, although it is almost inodorous.

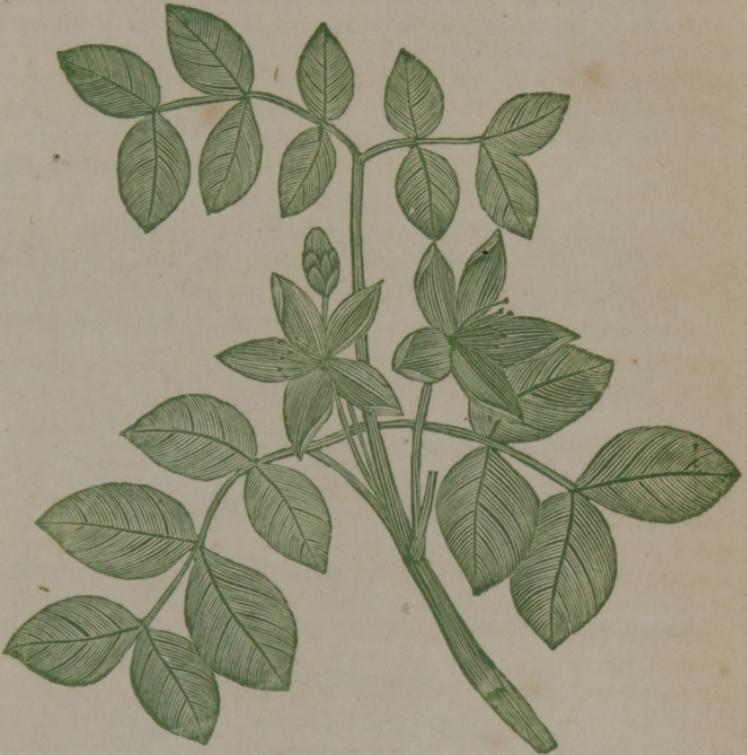
*Resin of Guaiacum.*—A peculiar juice, exuding from the bark of the tree just described, and which Mr. Brande considers as a proximate principle, *sui generis*, which he calls *guaiacin*.

This substance is in irregular masses, brittle, with a shining fracture, of a greenish-brown colour, of an agreeable smell, similar to that of benzoin; its taste is weak at first, then acrid, and producing a considerable irritation of the throat. Its specific gravity is 1.2289. Reduced to powder it is grayish at first, but it soon becomes green wherever it is in contact with the air and light.

C. P. The resin of guaiacum, according to Brande, contains 798 of pure resin, and 202 of bark. Water dissolves only 9 per cent.; whilst alcohol takes up about 95 of that substance. The alcoholic solution is

No. 56.

GUAIACUM OFFICINALE.



GUAIACUM.



of a deep brown colour, which soon changes to blue or green, by the action of nitric acid or starch. It is very soluble in alkalies and in their carbonates.

*Medical Properties.*

Both the wood and resin of guaiacum possess diaphoretic and alterative properties. They appear to produce a more special influence upon the skin by their stimulant action, causing an increase of secretion from this membrane. In consequence of this manner of action, it is employed in *gout, chronic rheumatism*, and affections of the skin in old and very obstinate *venereal ulcers*, scrofulous affections, &c.; in rheumatism, particularly that arising from the use of mercury; in gout, &c. In purulent ophthalmia, we use it in conjunction with other remedies. Dr. Chapman, of Philadelphia, in his Therapeutics, speaks very favourably of this article in diseases of the eyes. The raspings of guaiacum enter into the alterative syrup of our pharmacopœia. The gum enters into the botanical drops. It is well calculated to remove the mercurial disease.

*Employment.*

The *gum* may be given from *ten grains* to one *scruple*, in pills, or suspended in emulsion, by means of the yolk of eggs. *Tincture of guaiacum*; *guaiacum resin*, one pound; *alcohol*, two pounds and a half. Dose from one drachm to two.

=====  
No. 57.

**CRANESBILL. *The Root.***

*Latin Name*—GERANIUM MACULATUM.

*English Name*—SPOTTED CRANESBILL.

*Vulgar Names*—CROWFOOT, ALUM-ROOT, TORMENTIL, STORKBILL.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XV.—MONADELPHIA.

Order X.—DECANDRIA.

*Genus*—GERANIUM—Calyx 5-leaved, equal; corol 5-petalled; petals equal; stamens 10, the 5 alternate ones longer, with nectariferous glands at the base; receptacles beaked, separating into 5 1-seeded capsules, each tipped with a long simple awn.

*Species*—MACULATUM—Stem erect, dichotomous; leaves hairy, opposite, 3 to 5-parted, gashed, the upper ones sessile; peduncles 2-flowered; petals obovate; flowers large, purple.

*Description.*

Root perennial, horizontal, oblong, thick, rough, knobby, brownish, spotted with greenish-white inside, very brittle when dry, with few short fibres; stem erect, round, with few dichotome branches, and leaves covered, as well as the petioles with hairs, and from one to two

feet high ; several radical leaves on long petioles ; the leaves on the stem are opposite ; floral leaves nearly sessile ; flowers germinate on biflore peduncles arising from the forks, erect, round, swelled at the base, with linear bracts similar to the stipules ; calyx formed by five deep segments, oval, lanceolate, hairy outside ; five equal petals ; fruit, a capsule divided into five cocos, or 1-seed capsule.

#### History.

This is a very pretty plant, blossoming in the spring, from May to July. The best time for collecting this plant is in the fall.

#### Qualities.

Root thick, rough, knobby, of a dark brown colour externally, of a pale flesh colour internally ; taste astringent, without being bitter and inodorous. According to the following analysis of Dr. E. Staples, this plant contains gallic acid, tannin, mucilage, starch, red colouring matter, and probably a crystallizable vegetable substance.

#### Medical Properties.—The Root.

Boiled in milk, this proves a very efficacious medicine in *cholera infantum*. The decoction of this root is very useful in *apthous sore throat* and *mouth*. It is considered by the Indians to be very useful in syphilis. The infusion of the root has been used successfully as an injection in *gleets* and *gonorrhæa*. The pulverized roots, when applied to the bleeding orifice of wounds, will restrain the hæmorrhage. The infusion, according to Dr. Thatcher, will suppress the bleeding at the lungs in a prompt manner.

#### Employment.

Dose of the powdered root, from fifteen to twenty-five grains. *Decoction*, from one ounce to one ounce and a half, boiled in half a pint of water. One or two tablespoonfuls may be given at once.

---

No. 58.

## LIQUORICE. *The Root.*

*Latin Name*—GLYCYRRHIZA GLABRA.

*English Name*—SWEET LIQUORICE.

#### *Botanical Character.*

Class XVI.—DIADELPHIA.

Order X.—DECANDRIA.

*Genus*—GLYCYRRHIZA—Calyx 2-lipped ; the upper lip 3-parted, lower undivided ; legume ovate, compressed.

*Species*—GLABRA—Legumes glabrous ; flowers racemed, violet ; stipules none ; leaflets ovate, somewhat retuse.

#### *Description.*

Stem straight, glabrous, from three to four feet high ; leaves impa-

No. 58.

GLYCYRRHIZA GLABRA.



SWEET LIQUORICE.



ripinnate, with thirteen oval folioles, covered with a viscous substance; flowers violet, in axillary spikes; calyx tubular, bilabiate, unequally 5-toothed; carena formed of two distinct petals; 10 diadelphous stamina; fruit, a flattened pod containing from three to six seeds.

#### Locality.

Liquorice is a perennial plant, and indigenous to the south of Europe. It is likewise cultivated in England for medical use.

#### Qualities.

The liquorice root is long, cylindrical, of the size of the finger, brownish externally, yellow internally, of a sweet taste, slightly acrid, and of a faint smell.

It contains, according to Mr. Robiquet, a peculiar saccharine substance, which cannot be fermented, called *glycyrrhizin*; a matter analogous to *asparagin*, but crystallizable; starch, albumen, a resinous oil, thick and acrid; some phosphate and malate of lime and magnesia; finally, some lignous fibres. Cold water dissolves its sugary and demulcent principles; but it does not take up the acrid oil, which dissolves only in warm water.

#### Medical Properties.

The root of this plant is at present used principally to alleviate coughs, pneumonia, (inflammation of the lungs,) and in consumption. Dr. Chapman, in his Therapeutics, says, "I know not, indeed, any article possessing in a higher degree the quality of calming pulmonary irritation, than liquorice. The late Dr. James Malone, of London, gives the following recipe for a cold:

Take a large teaspoonful of linseed, with two pennyworth of stick liquorice, and a quarter of a pound of sun raisins. Put them into two quarts of soft water, till it be reduced to one; then add to it a quarter of a pound of brown sugar candy, pounded, a tablespoonful of white wine vinegar, or lemon juice.

*Note.*—The vinegar is best to be added only to that quantity you are going immediately to take; for if it be put into the whole, it is liable, in a little time, to grow flat.

Drink half a pint at going to bed, and take a little when the cough is troublesome.

This recipe generally cures the worst of colds, in two or three days; and, if taken in time, may be said to be almost an infallible remedy. It is a sovereign balsamic cordial for the lungs, without the opening qualities, which endanger fresh colds, on going out. It has been known to cure colds, that have almost been settled into consumptions, in less than three weeks.

#### Employment.

From twelve grains to one drachm of the powdered root may be given. Cold infusion, from two to three drachms of the root to two pints of boiling water. Dose of the extract, from half an ounce to an ounce.

Dr. Sawyer, of Cleveland, Ohio, a graduate of our school, states

that the following preparation cured him of a very deep-seated cough, bordering on consumption.

Take liquorice root,

Lung-wort,

Iceland moss, equal parts ;

Make a strong decoction ; sweeten with rock candy ; and take as much as the stomach will bear.

---

No. 59.

## HELLEBORE. *The Root.*

*Latin Name*—HELLEBORUS NIGER.

*English Name*—BLACK HELLEBORE.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XII.—POLYANDRIA.

Order XIII.—POLYGYNIA.

*Genus*—HELLEBORUS—Calyx 0 ; petals 5 or more ; persistent ; nectaries numerous, tubular, 2-lipped ; capsules compressed, nearly erect ; many-seeded.

*Species*—NIGER—Scape 1 or 2-flowered, nearly naked ; leaves pedate.

*Description.*

Stem subterraneous, horizontal, articulate ; leaves apparently radical, petiolate, 7 or 8-lobed, tough, dentate, and oboval ; flowers one or two on a scape, from two to six inches high, of a pink colour, very large, nodding, with two bractes ; calyx regular, persistent, 5-parted ; corolla 10 or 12 ; petals hollow and cornet-like ; fruit, from 3 to 6 capsules.

*History.*

About Christmas, if the weather be temperate, this plant flowers. The flowers appear upon foot-stalks ; flowers consisting of five large round white petals, each of which are purple, sometimes, on the edges.

*Locality.*

This is a perennial plant, growing in the mountains of Vases, Dauphine, and Provence.

*Qualities.*

This root is of the length and size of the little finger, gray, or reddish internally, blackish externally, marked with circular rings, not distant from each other, and furnished with numerous radical fibres ; its taste, which at first is acrid and bitter, seems to benumb the tongue ; its odour is nauseous.

It contains, according to Messrs. Feneulle and Capron, a fatty oil slightly acrid, a resinous matter, an odorous volatile acid, a bitter

No. 59.

HELLEBORUS NIGER.



BLACK HELLEBORE.





No. 60.

HYDRASTIS CANADENSIS.



GOLDEN SEAL.

principle, wax, &c. Water, and alcohol especially, take up its active principles, which are mostly lost by a long ebullition.

*Medical Properties.*

The root of this plant is a *cathartic*, and as such was much used by Galen and Hippocrates, and their successors, who esteemed it as a most valuable cathartic. It has likewise obtained the name of *melampodium*. It is recorded that Melampus, a Greek physician, who first discovered this plant, acquired immense wealth and renown by restoring to reason the daughters of an eastern monarch, who by some unknown cause had all of them been deprived of it. The hellebore is the only article which he employed. It is most probable that its powers in this affection of the mind is owing altogether to its griping effects, and to the active and violent evacuations which it occasions from the bowels. It is well known that very active cathartics will sometimes entirely subdue the fiercest forms of *mania*, and that they will also arouse the sensibility of the system in the lowest stages of *melancholy*. It is said that the more griping the purgative, the greater its effects will be in those cases.

We have occasionally employed it in obstructed menses.

*Employment.*

Dose of the powdered root from ten grains to a scruple; of the infusion two drachms to one pound of boiling water, one ounce of which is given every four hours.

For obstructed menses take equal parts of the tincture of hellebore and tincture of logwood, of which let one or two teaspoonfuls be taken three or four times a day.

---

No. 60.

**GOLDEN SEAL. *The Root.***

*Latin Name*—HYDRASTIS CANADENSIS.

*English Name*—YELLOW PUCCON.

*Vulgar Names*—YELLOW-ROOT, GROUND RASPBERRY, YELLOW PAINT, GOLDEN SEAL, ORANGE-ROOT, INDIAN PLANT, &c.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XII.—POLYANDRIA.

Order XIII.—POLYGYNIA.

*Genus*—HYDRASTIS—Calyx 0; corol 3-petalled, petals ovate; berry composed of 1-seeded granulations.

*Species*—CANADENSIS—Stem 1, 2-leaved, the lower ones petioled, emarginate at the base; the upper clasping, palmate, serrate, gashed; peduncle solitary, terminal, 1-flowered; flower yellow; fruit red, succulent.

*Description.*

The root is crooked, knobby, wrinkled, with many long fibres, and

of a bright yellow colour; stem a foot high, or less, simple, straight, round, naked top, with two unequal alternate leaves; first leaf petiole, cordate, palmate, 5 or 7-lobed; lobes oval, unequal, acute, with irregular, sharp, serrate, 5-branched nerves; the upper or second leaf similar, but sessile, and commonly trilobe; flowers, single, terminal, on a peduncle shorter than the upper leaf; 3 petals, or petaloid leaves, flesh or rose-coloured, oval, obtuse, equal; berry red and oval.

#### Locality.

From Canada and Maine to Carolina and Tennessee, in rich shady woods, on the banks of rivers, sides of hills, and deep valleys.

#### Qualities.

The root is only used when fresh; is juicy, but when dried loses about two thirds of its weight. The taste is exceedingly bitter, rather pungent, and nauseous. The smell strong and virose. It contains amarine, extractive, several salts, and a peculiar principle, *hydrastine* of a yellow colour.

#### Properties.

It is an estimable tonic, and at the same time laxative, which makes it very appropriate in dyspeptic disorders; also ophthalmic, detergent, and stimulant. The plant is much used in the western states for diseases of the eyes, and for this purpose it must be cautiously used. The juice or infusion is used as a wash, in sore or inflamed eyes. It is considered a specific by the Indians for that disorder; they also employ it for sore legs, and many external complaints, as a topical tonic. Internally, it is used as a bitter tonic, in infusion or tincture, in disorders of the stomach, *bile*, and liver. A half ounce of the dried pulverized roots is sufficient to infuse in a quart of spirits.

This root appears to be highly narcotic, and is said to enter into many of the compounded remedies for cancer. Some Indians employ it as a diuretic, stimulant, and escharotic, using the powder for blistering, and the infusion for the dropsy.

Golden seal bitters forms one of the best correctives of bile and bilious habits that can be given. It is likewise very beneficial as a gargle, in sore mouth, &c.

#### Employment.

It may be given in powder or infusion, *internally*. Externally in powder as an escharotic. Of the powder, from ten to twelve grains. It enters into the "wine bitters."

No. 61.

**HYSSOP.** *The Leaves and Flowers.**Latin Name*—HYSSOPUS OFFICINALIS.*English Name*—GARDEN HYSSOP.*Botanical Character.*

Class XIII.—DIDYNAMIA.

Order I.—GYMNOSPERMIA.

*Genus*—HYSSOPUS—Calyx 5-parted, divisions nearly equal; corol with the lower lip 3-parted; the middle segment mostly crenate; stamens straight, distant.

*Species*—OFFICINALIS—Flowers in whorls, racemes pointing one way; middle division of the corol 2-lobed, very entire; leaves linear, lanceolate.

*Description.*

The stem of this plant rises about a foot in height; ramous; leaves sessile, narrow, acute; flowers blue or pink colour, united in the axilla of the superior leaves.

*Locality.*

This plant grows in the south of France, and America.

*Qualities.*

Hyssop has an agreeable and aromatic odour, and a warm, pungent, and slightly bitter taste. It contains a yellow essential oil, some bitter principles, and sulphur. The remedial principles are soluble in water and alcohol.

*Medical Properties.*

This substance is slightly stimulant, and is possessed of expectorant properties, which make it very beneficial in *colds, coughs,* and *pulmonary catarrhs,* and in phthisis and other affections of the lungs. As a gargle in sore mouth, this is very useful. Culpepper recommends its being boiled with figs as a gargle in *quinsy* and sore mouth.

*Employment.*

Infusion, a handful of the hyssop infused in two quarts of boiling water, and drank according to the thirst.

No. 62.

**HOPS. *The Fruit.****Latin Name*—**HUMULUS LUPULUS.***English Name*—**GARDEN HOPS.***Botanical Character.*Class XX.—**DIOECIA.**Order V.—**PENTANDRIA.**

*Genus*—**HUMULUS**—Staminate flowers; calyx 5-leaved; corol 0; antheræ with 2 pores at the top; pistillate flowers; calyx an oblique, entire scale; corol 0; styles 2; seed single coated, the head strobile-form.

*Species*—**LUPULUS**—Stem twining, rough; leaves petiolate, 3-5-lobed, acute, sharply serrate, rough; staminate flowers paniced.

*Description.*

The hop vine is an ornamental plant, climbing to a great height; root perennial; stems annual, twining around the poles set for them, angular, covered with rough minute prickles; leaves opposite, on long winding petioles; the smaller ones heart-shaped; the longer ones 3 or 5-lobed; serrate, veiny, serrated, and extremely rough; flowering branches rough, axillary; flowers numerous, and of a greenish colour; stamens short, the anthers oblong, and bursting by two terminal pores.

*Locality.*

The hop is a perennial plant, indigenous to Europe, springing up spontaneously along hedges; likewise cultivated on a large scale in several districts of the north of France, in Flanders, in England, and in the United States.

*Qualities.*

The fruit of the hop is composed of foliaceous and persisting scales, and covered with small hair, charged with a kind of dust called *lupulin*. It is of a green yellow colour, possesses an aromatic and bitter taste. Independently of lupulin, hops contain, according to Messrs. Payen and Chevallier, a volatile oil, a fatty matter, wax, some acetate of ammonia, malate of lime, tannin, gallic acid, a small quantity of osmazome. Boiling water, alcohol, and ether, dissolve the active principles of this plant.

*Lupulin*.—According to Messrs. Payen and Chevallier's analysis, this substance is composed of resin, 105; bitter matter, 25; essential oil, 41; gum, and a small quantity of fatty matter and osmazome, some acetate of ammonia, silica, sulphur, oxide of iron, and salts, with base of potassa and lime. It is soluble in water, alcohol, and ether.

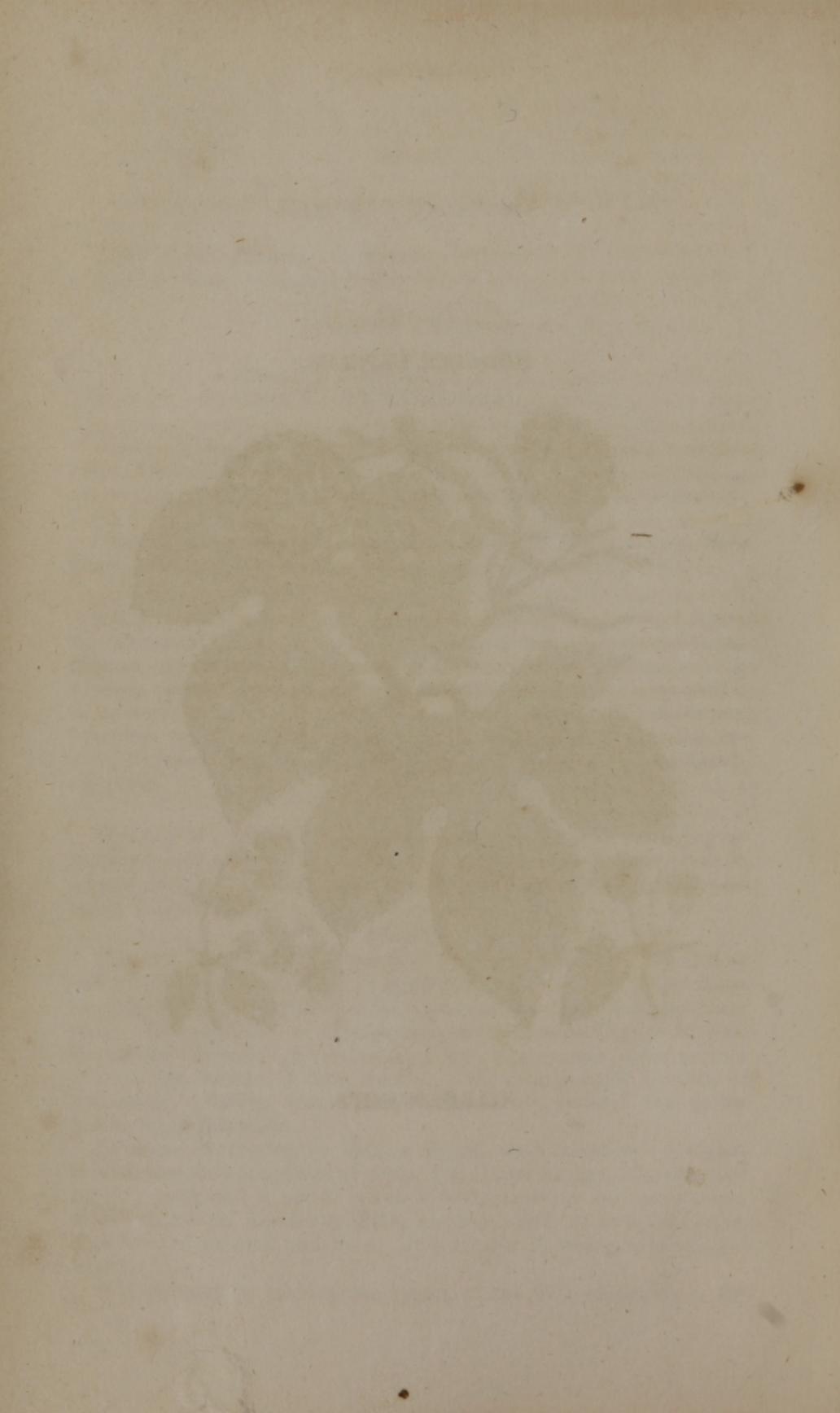
It is obtained by rubbing the cones of the hops on a sieve; the

No. 62.

HUMULUS LUPULUS.



GARDEN HOPS.





No. 63.

HAMAMELIS VIRGINICA.



WINTER WITCH-HAZEL.

lupulin passes through, and is received on a piece of paper. It is purified by immersing it in water.

This article possesses the same properties as the hops, but in a much greater degree. In too great doses it produces a sensation of heat in the epigastric region, and throughout all the abdomen; pains in the abdomen, costiveness, nausea, vomiting, &c.

#### Medical Properties.

It is anodyne, and in many cases may be used instead of laudanum. In the form of tincture I have given it with success in *inflammation* of the *bowels*. A strong infusion or decoction of the hops is very useful in some forms of *dyspepsia* attended with *nervous irritation* and loss of tone in the stomach and bowels; it acts in this case as a *tonic* and *sedative*. Dr. Chapman says, that he has employed the hop successfully in advanced stages of typhoid fevers, where nervous *tremors* and *subsultus tendinum* (twitching of the tendons) existed. I have likewise used it with success in the after pains of women; thereby allaying the *spasmodic uneasiness* of the *uterus*. The same gentleman above spoken of says, "It is well adapted to drunkards, and I have found it a useful auxiliary in the treatment of *mania à potu*."

A bag filled with warm hops, and placed under the head, is a popular remedy to quiet nervous irritation and procure sleep. In fomentations it is exceedingly valuable.

#### Employment.

The hop may be administered in tincture, decoction, infusion, or pills made of the extract. As a tonic, the infusion (of which a wine-glassful may be taken) is the best. Of the extract, half a teaspoonful, to be repeated and increased as the case may require.

---

### No. 63.

## WITCH HAZEL. *The Bark.*

*Latin Name*—HAMAMELIS VIRGINICA.

*English Name*—WINTER WITCH HAZEL.

*Vulgar Names*—WITCH HAZEL, SNAPPING HAZELNUT, WINTER-BLOOM, PISTACHE-NUT, &c.

#### Botanical Character.

Class IV.—TETRANDRIA.

Order II.—DIGYNIA.

*Genus*—HAMAMELIS—Involucre 3-leaved; proper calyx 4-leaved, corol 4-petalled; petals long, linear; filament short, broad; anthers adnate; nut 2-celled, 2-horned.

*Species*—VIRGINICA—Leaves alternate, obovate, acute, obliquely cordate, margin uneven.

*Description.*

This shrub rises from six to ten feet in height, with irregular branches, flexuous and knotty; bark, smooth, gray, with brown dots; leaves rather large, smooth, alternate, petiolate, obovate; margin with unequal faint teeth, commonly obtuse; nerves prominent; flowers on short pedicles, clustered three to five together, in several places along the branches; calyx small, but enlarged with the fruit, with three or four scales at the base; divided into four thick, oval, pubescent segments. Petals yellow, much longer, linear, obtuse, often undulate, or revolute; stamen four, opposed to petals, shorter than the calyx; pistal oval, central, short style, two obtuse stigmas; fruit a nut-like capsule similar to a hazel nut.

*History.*

This shrub blossoms in winter, when no other tree is in bloom. The blossoms remain from October till February. The fruit remains on throughout the whole year till the next fall, and then explodes with a noise, scattering the seeds around.

*Locality.*

Found from New-England to Carolina and Ohio, commonly on hills and mountains, near stony banks of streams; rare in plains, &c.

*Qualities.*

The bark and leaves are somewhat bitter, very astringent, leaving a sweetish pungent taste, which remains some time.

*Medical Properties.*

Sedative, tonic, astringent, discutient, &c. This shrub is valued very highly by the Indians, and is by them much used. They apply the bark, which is *sedative* and *discutient*, to painful tumours and external inflammation. A *cataplasm* of the inner bark is found to be very efficacious in removing painful inflammation of the eyes. An infusion made of the leaves is a very useful astringent in hæmatemesis, (bleeding at the stomach,) amenorrhœa, bowel complaints, and menstrual effusions. The bark likewise affords an excellent topical application in piles, (hæmorrhoids,) &c., falling of the bowel and womb.

*Employment.*

This article may be given internally in the form of infusion; externally as a poultice in foul ulcers, &c.; and in the form of a strong decoction as an injection into the vagina, for prolapsus, or falling down of the womb; and as a wash for falling of the intestine.



No. 64.

HEPATICA TRILOBA.



COMMON LIVERWORT.

No. 64.

**LIVERWORT.** *The Leaves, Stems, and Root.**Latin Name*—HEPATICA TRILOBA.*English Name*—COMMON LIVERWORT.*Vulgar Names*—LIVERWEED, TREFOIL, NOBLE LIVERWORT.*Botanical Character.*

Class XII.—POLYANDRIA.

Order XIII.—POLYGYNIA.

*Genus*—HEPATICA—Calyx 3-leaved ; corol 6 to 9-petalled, petals oblong, seeds naked.*Species*—TRILOBA—Leaves radical, 3-lobed ; lobes entire ; petioles and scape hairy ; scape 1-flowered ; flowers blue.*Description.*

Root perennial, fibrose ; fibres long, fasciculate, brown ; leaves all radical, on long hairy petioles, somewhat leathery and partly persistent in winter ; base cordate, divided into three equal entire lobes, rounded, obtuse, or acute, purplish above, glaucous and purplish beneath ; flowers terminal, drooping at first, spreading when unfolded ; involucre resembling a calyx, very hairy ; hairs gray and long ; segment very deep, oval, entire, obtuse ; anthers elliptic and of a pale yellow ; pistils and seeds oval, acute.

*History.*

This is a vernal plant: the leaves stand the winter, and early in the spring the flowers come out, sometimes while the snow is yet falling. They last from March till May.

*Locality.*

This plant is a native of the northern parts of Europe, Asia, and America ; growing on this last continent from Labradore to Virginia and the Pacific Ocean ; found in woods, hills, and mountains, throughout the United States.

*Qualities.*

This plant has no smell, and not much taste ; not bitter, but a little astringent and mucilaginous. It contains tannin, mucilage, extractive, &c.

*Medical Properties.*

Subtonic, subastringent, deobstruent, pectoral, demulcent. It may be used in fevers, liver complaints, indigestion, hypochondria, &c. It is useful for hemoptysis (bleeding at the lungs) and coughs. It has been used with benefit in those diseases as well as complaints arising from dyspeptic and hypochondriac affections.

*Employment.*

It may be given in the form of infusion, either warm or cold, and drank *ad libitum*. It enters into the vegetable syrup.

No. 65.

**LOGWOOD. *The Wood.****Latin Name*—HÆMATOXYLUM CAMPECHIANUM.*English Name*—CAMPEACHY LOGWOOD.*Botanical Character.*

Class X.—DECANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—HÆMATOXYLON—Calyx 5-parted; corol 5-petalled; capsules lanceolate, 1-celled, 2-valved; valves boat-shaped.*Species*—CAMPECHIANUM—Leaves abruptly pinnate; leaflets orbiculate; branches crooked, spinous; flowers racemed.*Description.*

Too well known to need a description.

*Locality.*

The logwood tree grows at Campeachy, in America, in the islands of Santa Cruz and Jamaica.

*Qualities.*According to the analysis of Chevreul, it contains a volatile oil, tannin, a crystalline colouring matter, soluble in boiling water; called *hematin*, salts of lime, and potassa.*Medical Properties.*This wood is principally used in medicine as an astringent in the latter stages of dysentery, in diarrhœa, and mucous discharges. We, however, seldom use it, except in combination with other articles, in *amenorrhœa*. Dr. Wolcot has used the following formula with success, in dysentery. Extract of logwood one drachm, chalk mixture four ounces, tincture of catechu two drachms, essence of peppermint two drachms; mix. Dose of this from one to two tablespoonfuls every four hours or oftener, according to circumstances. Laudanum was also administered, to allay the griping distressing pains.*Employment.*

Decoction, half an ounce of the wood boiled in two pints of water down to one eighth. Extract, from one drachm to two.

No. 66.

**BUTTERNUT.** *The Bark and unripe Fruit.**Latin Name*—**JUGLANS CINEREA.***English Name*—**WHITE WALNUT AND BUTTERNUT.***Botanical Character.*Class XIX.—**MONOECIA.**Order XII.—**POLYANDRIA.**

*Genus*—**JUGLANS**—Staminate flowers ; corol 6-parted ; calyx 1-leafed, scote form, mostly 5-parted ; filaments twelve to thirty-six. Pistillate flowers ; corol 4-parted ; calyx 4-cleft, superior ; styles 1, 2 ; nut rugose, furrows irregular.

*Species*—**CINEREA**—Leaflets numerous, brancholate, serrate ; base rounded, soft, pubescent beneath ; petioles villous ; nut oblong, ovate, roughly sculptured, edible ; tree large.

*Description.*

Too well known to need a description.

*Locality.*

These trees are very common in the United States. Found growing in valleys and on mountains.

*Medical Properties.*

During the American revolution, when medicines were scarce, this article was brought into use by the physicians of the hospitals, and was esteemed by them an excellent substitute for the ordinary cathartics. The extract made from the inner bark of these trees is alone employed. When given alone, in doses of from fifteen to thirty grains, it operates as an active cathartic, without "occasioning heat and irritation." It is thought to be very applicable in indigestion, as an aperient in habitual costiveness, as it is not so apt to leave the bowels in a costive state as other cathartics do. The extract should be made from the bark in the months of May or June.

*Employment.*

It is given in the form of an extract, in doses of from fifteen to thirty grains.

No. 67.

**JUNIPER. *The Fruit.****Latin Name*—JUNIPERUS COMMUNIS.*English Name*—COMMON JUNIPER.*Botanical Character.*

Class XX.—DIOECIA.

Order XV.—MONADELPHIA.

*Genus*—JUNIPERUS—Staminate flowers; calyx, the scales of an ament; corol 0; stigmata 3; pistillate flowers; calyx, the scales of an ament, fewer, becoming fleshy, uniting into a 3-seeded berry.

*Species*—COMMUNIS—Leaves in threes, spreading, spinous; mucronate, longer than the berries.

*Description.*

This shrub rises four feet in height; leaves numerous, long, sharp-pointed, of a deep green, standing three together without foot-stalks; stem straight, ramose; leaves verticillate, ternate, pungently acute; flowers dioicous, in axillary aments; male flowers; scales in the form of a nail, bearing on their internal surface; globular and sessile anthers; female flowers; involucre, fleshy, globular, 3-parted; fruit, globular berries of the size of a pea, and containing two or three small nuciform triangular seeds.

*History.*

The berries of this shrub, which is the only part used, are ripe in August. It flowers in June.

*Locality.*

This shrub is indigenous to Europe, but naturalized in this country, and grows in abundance in the state of New-York, on the banks of rivers, &c.

*Qualities.*

The juniper berries are blackish, pulpy, of the size of a pea, of a strong and agreeable smell, of a bitter, warm, and turpentine taste. They are composed, according to Tromsdorff, of volatile oil, 1; wax, 4; resin, 10; sugar, 33.8; gum, 7; lignous fibres and water, 48; besides several salts. Water and alcohol dissolve their active principles.

*Medical Properties.*

The berries and essential oil are possessed of a powerful diuretic quality, exercising a very decided stimulating action on the general economy, but more especially upon the kidneys, increasing the secretion of those organs. They are principally exhibited in dropsy. The oil is carminative, and may be given in flatulencies.

*Employment.*

The berries may be given in the form of infusion, and the oil may likewise be given. Eight or ten drops is a dose.

No. 67.

JUNIPERUS COMMUNIS.



COMMON JUNIPER.





No. 68.

INULA HELENIUM.



ELECOMPANE.

No. 68.

**ELECAMPANE. *The Root.****Latin Name*—**INULA HELENIUM.***English Name*—**ELECAMPANE.***Botanical Character.*Class XVII.—**SYGENESIA.**Order II.—**POLYGAMIA SUPERFLUA.**

*Genus*—**INULA**—Receptacle naked ; egret simple ; calyx imbricate ; antheræ ending in two bristles at the base ; ray florets ligulate, numerous, yellow.

*Species*—**HELENIUM**—Leaves clasping, ovate, rugose, downy beneath ; scales of the calyx ovate.

*Description.*

Stem cylindrical, from four to six feet high, branched towards its summit, covered with a whitish down ; radical leaves oval, acute, tomentose underneath, irregularly dentate and petiolate ; the caulinary small, sessile, and almost round ; flowers yellow, at the extremity of the branches ; the florets of the circumference are female ; involucre formed of imbricate leaflets ; seeds elongate, cylindrical, surmounted by a silky and sessile pappus.

*Locality.*

This is a perennial plant, indigenous to Europe, but is very common in this country, growing in low meadows, by the road side, and in stony pastures. It flowers in July or August.

*Qualities.*

The elecampane root is large, tuberous, elongated, brown externally, white internally, of an aromatic smell, of a very bitter taste at first, and afterwards sharp and camphorated.

It contains 36.7 of a very peculiar principle, discovered by Rose, and called *Inulin* by Thomson ; white, pulverulent, soluble in boiling water, from which it precipitates on cooling, and finally, which is considered as starch ; 0.3 of a concrete volative oil, very analogous to camphor ; 0.6 of wax ; 1.7 of acrid resin ; 36.7 of a bitter extractive matter ; 4.5 of gum, and finally some lignous parts, albumen, and salts, with a base of potassa, lime, and magnesia. Water and alcohol dissolve all its active principles.

*Medical Properties.*

This plant is possessed of pretty energetic tonic properties. It acts likewise as an excitant, owing to the camphorated oil which it contains. It is an excellent article, in combination with others, in colds and coughs, in pulmonary irritation, in phthisis pulmonalis, (consumption,) and in some forms of indigestion, when it proceeds from a debility of the digestive organs. It enters into the pulmonary balsam of our pharmacopœia.

*Employment.*

It may be given in powder, decoction, or infusion. Dose of the powder, from half to one ounce; decoction or infusion, from half an ounce to one ounce, in one quart of water.

---

No. 69.

**CEDAR.** *The Leaves and Berries.*

*Latin Name*—JUNIPERUS VIRGINIANA.

*English Name*—RED CEDAR.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XX.—DIOECIA.

Order XV.—MONADELPHIA.

*Genus*—JUNIPERUS—Staminate flowers; calyx, the scales of an ament; corol 0; stigmata 3; pistillate flowers; calyx, scales of an ament, fewer, becoming fleshy, uniting into a 3-seeded berry.

*Species*—VIRGINIANA—Leaves in threes, joined at the base; the younger ones imbricate, older ones spreading.

*Description.*

Trunk from thirty to forty feet high, very branchy; leaves numerous, small, scaly, and mucronate, ternate, and joined at the base, the younger imbricate, the older loose; flowers very small, both sexes frequently found on the same tree, and in other instances located on two different trees; fruit, small blue berries, 1 or 2-seeded; seeds nuciform.

*Locality.*

This tree is indigenous to America, growing in great abundance in the southern states, but found all over the United States.

*Qualities.*

The leaves of this tree have a strong, unpleasant smell, and acrid, hot, bitterish taste. Distilled with water, they give out an essential oil.

*Medical Properties.*

Internally, the leaves of the red cedar have been found to produce nearly the same effects as the savin. They have been useful in *rheumatism*, as a general *stimulant* and *diaphoretic*. They have been used likewise as an *emmenagogue*. The oil which is procured from the cedar by distillation, is very useful in rheumatic affections, by bathing the affected parts with it. It may also be combined with the oil of spearmint, which is very beneficial in gravel, diseases of the kidneys, scalding of the urine in gonorrhœa, &c.

*Employment.*

The leaves pulverized may be given in doses of from ten to twelve grains, or an infusion of the leaves may be given. Externally, the essential oil.

No. 70.

**SAVIN. *The Leaves.****Latin Name*—**JUNIPERUS SABINA.***English Name*—**SAVIN TREE.***Botanical Character.*Class XX.—**DIOECIA.**Order XV.—**MONADELPHIA.**

*Genus*—**JUNIPERUS**—Staminate flowers; calyx, the scales of an ament; corol 0; stigmata 3; pistillate flowers; calyx, the scales of an ament, fewer, becoming fleshy, uniting into a 3-seeded berry.

*Species*—**SABINA**—Leaves opposite, erect, decurrent; the oppositions closed.

*Description.*

Stem from ten to fifteen feet high; leaves very small, squamiform, opposite, imbricate upon the stem; flowers dioicous, in aments; fruit, pisiform and blackish berries, containing two small stones.

*Locality.*

This is an evergreen shrub, a native of Siberia, Tartary, the southern parts of Europe, and of North America. It grows plentifully in New-Jersey.

*Qualities.*

The leaves and tops of this plant have a moderately strong smell of the disagreeable kind, and a hot, bitterish, acrid taste. They give out great part of their active matter to watery liquors, and the whole to rectified spirit. Distilled with water, they yield a large quantity of essential oil. Decoctions of the leaves, freed from the volatile principle by inspissation to the consistence of an extract, retain a considerable share of their pungency and warmth along with their bitterness, and have some degree of smell, but not resembling that of the plant itself. On inspissating the spiritous tincture, there remains an extract consisting of two distinct substances, of which one is yellow, unctuous, or oily, bitterish, and very pungent; the other black, resinous, less pungent, and sub-astringent.

*Medical Properties.*

Savin is a powerful and active medicine, and has been long reputed the most efficacious in the materia medica, for producing a determination to the uterus, and thereby proving emmenagogue; it heats and stimulates the whole system very considerably, and is said to promote the fluid secretions. The power which this plant possesses (observes Dr. Woodville) in opening uterine obstructions, is considered to be so great, that we are told it has been frequently employed, and with too much success, for purposes the most infamous and unnatural. It seems probable, however, that its effects in this way have been somewhat overrated, as it is found, very frequently,

to fail as an emmenagogue, though this, in some measure, may be ascribed to the smallness of the dose in which it has been usually prescribed by physicians; for Dr. Cullen observes, "that savin is a very acrid and heating substance, and I have been often, on account of these qualities, prevented from employing it in the quantity necessary to render it emmenagogue. I must own, however, that it shows a more powerful determination to the uterus than any other plant I have employed; but I have been frequently disappointed in this; and its heating qualities always require a great deal of caution." Dr. Home appears to have had very great success with this medicine, for in five cases of amenorrhœa, which occurred at the Royal Infirmary at Edinburgh, four were cured by the sabina, which he gave in powder, from a scruple to a drachm twice a day.

Dr. Chapman speaks in very high terms of the savin in chronic rheumatism, where "there exists a *coldness of the surface*, and especially of the lower extremities, which are dry, or covered with a clammy sweat; and connected with this state there is also a swelling and rigidity of the joints, amounting sometimes even to the loss of motion, accompanied with pains very acute, and aggravated by changes of the weather." He states that the pulse, previous to the administration of this medicine, which was "small, weak, and accelerated, becomes full, active, and comparatively slow, upon administering this article; and" that "its wide spreading influence is peculiarly felt throughout the whole animal economy, especially the organs of secretion, viz. of perspiration, urinary, catamenial, and perhaps the seminal." Dr. Eberle's experience with this article likewise concurs with that of the above named gentlemen.

#### *Employment.*

It is given in substance in the dose of from one to two scruples, three times a day. A decoction made by boiling one ounce of the leaves in a pint of water, down to half a pint, with the addition of two ounces of syrup. Dose, a wineglassful every two hours.

*Savin Cerate.*—Take of fresh leaves of savin, bruised, a pound; yellow wax, half a pound; prepared lard, two pounds. Having melted together the wax and lard, boil therein the savin leaves, and strain through a linen cloth. This article is of late introduction for the purpose of keeping up a discharge from blistered surfaces. It was first described by Mr. Crowther, and has since been received into extensive use, because it does not produce the inconveniences that follow the constant application of the common blistering cerate. A thick white layer forms daily upon the part, which requires to be removed, that the cerate may be applied immediately to the surface from which the discharge is to be made.



No. 71.

ICTODES FETIDA.



SKUNK CABBAGE.

No. 71.

**SKUNK CABBAGE.** *The Balls and Roots.**Latin Name*—**ICTODES FÆTIDA.***English Name*—**SWAMP CABBAGE.***Botanical Character.*Class IV.—**TETRANDRIA.**Order I.—**MONOGYNIA.**

*Genus*—**ICTODES**—General calyx a spathe; spathe ventricose, ovate acuminate; spadix sub-globular, covered with perfect flowers; petals 0; calyx deeply 4-parted, permanent; segments cucullate, becoming thick and fleshy; style 4-sided; stigma minute; seeds immersed in the spongy receptacle.

*Species*—**FÆTIDA**—Stemless; leaves radical; cordate ovate, very large; spathe purple, spotted, cucullate; plant very fetid.

*Description.*

Spathe ventricose, ovate, acuminate; spadix roundish, covered with hermaphrodite flowers; calyx deeply 4-parted, persistent; segments cucullate, truncate, becoming thick and spongy; petals none; style pyramidal, 4-sided; seeds solitary, immersed in the spongy receptacle; leaves very large, smooth, and green, strongly veined and entire, preceded by conspicuous sheathing stipules.

*History.*

Its flowers are among the first that appear in the spring, after the rigours of winter have passed, appearing from February to April, according to its latitude.

*Locality.*

This is a perennial, native plant, growing in boggy woods and swamps, and other moist places, throughout the United States.

*Qualities.*

Root verticillately fibrous, truncate; fibres whitish, coloured with brownish-red rings. Every part of the plant, even the seeds, is imbued with a peculiar fetid smell, resembling that of asafœtida, or the odour thrown off by the skunk or pole cat, whence its name.

It seems to contain a volatile acrid principle, readily dissipated by heat; a resinous substance, and a gummy or mucous principle. The seeds contain a considerable quantity of fixed oil.

*Medical Properties.*

The root of this plant is possessed of anti-spasmodic properties, similar to asafœtida and other fetid gums. It is very useful in spasmodic asthma, and is very highly recommended by the Rev. Dr. Cutler, in this disease. Dr. Eberle likewise speaks very favourably of this article in the same disease. "Dr. Thatcher, on the authority of a correspondent," says Dr. Eberle, states, "that two teaspoonfuls

of the pulverized root of this vegetable, gave very prompt and effectual relief in a case of hysteria, after the ordinary remedies for such cases had been used without benefit." This root, pulverized, and given in cold, phlegmatic habits of the body, attended with chronic cough, will produce the most decided benefits. In the *tussis senilis*, or cough of old people, it may be administered with benefit, relieving the cough and difficulty of breathing.

☞ It constitutes one of the ingredients of our vegetable syrup, used for bleeding at the lungs, coughs, asthma, &c.

#### Employment.

This article may be given in substance, of from ten to forty grains, in pills, mixed with syrup. A tincture or syrup may likewise be formed from the root or seeds.

---

No. 72.

### BUGLE. *The Plant.*

*Latin Name*—LYCOPUS VIRGINICUS.

*English Name*—SWEET BUGLE.

*Vulgar Names*—BUGLE-WEED, WATER BUGLE, BUGLE-WORT, WATER HOREHOUND, &c.

#### Botanical Character.

Class II.—DIANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—LYCOPUS—Calyx tubular, 5-toothed; corol 4-cleft, nearly equal; superior division broader and emarginate; stamens distant; seeds 4, naked, retuse.

*Species*—VIRGINICUS—Leaves lanceolate, serrate, narrow, and entire at the base; calyx very short, spineless; stem quadrangular.

#### Description.

Root perennial, creeping, and fibrous; stem erect, commonly simple, somewhat rough, with four furrows and four obtuse angles; leaves opposite, sessile, acuminate, or attenuated and entire at both ends, remote, serrate in the middle, broad, lanceolate, somewhat rough, covered with glandular dots beneath; flowers sessile, in small axillary whorls, very small; two subulate bracts under each flower; calyx with four ovate-lanceolate and acute segments; corolla white, tubular, with four small round lobes; two stamina, hardly exert, filiform; style erect; four seeds, longer than the calyx, obovate, compressed.

#### History.

This plant blossoms in the summer, in July and August; seeds ripen in September.

No. 72.

LYCOPUS VIRGINICUS.



COMMON BUGLE-WEED.



*Locality.*

This plant is found growing near water, ditches, creeks, swamps, &c.

*Qualities.*

This plant affords an essential oil; also a little tannin. To this oil this plant probably owes its active properties.

*Medical Properties.*

Sedative, subtonic, subastringent. It is very useful in coughs, and in hemoptisis, (bleeding of the lungs,) and in incipient phthisis. "The first inquirers respecting its properties, were Drs. Pendleton and Rodgers, of the city of New-York, and who have published a number of cases of incipient phthisis and hemoptisis cured by this article." Those properties have been confirmed by Drs. Smith, Ives, Lawrence, Rafinesque, and myself. In its action it somewhat resembles that of the digitalis, lowering the pulse, and lessening its frequency; allays irritation, cough, and equalizes the circulation; and is considered by Rafinesque, "as one of the mildest and best narcotics in existence." It enters into the vegetable syrup of our pharmacopœia.

*Employment.*

It may be given in infusion or decoction.

---

 No. 73.

## POPLAR. *The Bark of the Trunk and Roots.*

*Latin Name*—LIRIODENDRON TULIPIFERA.

*English Name*—WHITE POPLAR.

*Vulgar Names*—WHITE-WOOD, WILD POPLAR, WHITE POPLAR, &c.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XII.—POLYANDRIA.

Order XIII.—POLYGYNIA.

*Genus*—LIRIODENDRON—Calyx 3-leaved; petals 6; seeds ending in a lanceolate scale, and imbricate into a strobile.

*Species*—TULIPIFERA—Leaves 3-lobed, truncate at the end; a large tree.

*Description.*

This beautiful and noble tree rises sometimes to the height of 140 feet; its trunk is straight, and its branches regularly disposed; leaves large, 3-lobed, with the central lobe truncated; flowers large, solitary, terminal, subcampanulate, variegated with yellow, orange, and lake-green colours; stamina about 86, disposed in a simple series; pistils numerous; germs disposed in the form of a cone; fruit conical, composed of numerous thin and imbricated scales.

*History.*

This tree flowers about the middle of May.

*Locality.*

This is a tree indigenous to America, and is found growing throughout the United States, on mountains and in low forests.

*Qualities.*

Very bitter, slightly aromatic, and astringent. According to Dr. Rogers' analysis, this bark contains gum, resin, muriatic acid, iron, calcareous salt, mucus, fecula, &c.

*Medical Properties.*

The bark of the tree and root is possessed of valuable tonic properties, and by some is considered equal to Peruvian bark. It is likewise stimulant; but its virtues appear to consist altogether in its tonic powers. "It occasionally acts as a diuretic, and it most generally produces very conspicuous diaphoretic effects when largely given." The bark of the root is more tonic but less stimulant than that of the trunk. Dr. J. T. Young, in a letter to Gov. Clayton, of Delaware, says: "I have prescribed the poplar bark in a variety of cases of intermittent fever, and can declare from experience, that it is equally efficacious with the Peruvian bark, if properly administered." The same gentleman says he has used it in hysteria, with the greatest benefit. "There is not," says he, "in all the *materia medica*, a more certain, speedy and effectual remedy in hysteria, than the poplar bark, combined with a small quantity of laudanum." In dyspeptic states of the stomach and bowels, this is a valuable remedy, owing to its tonic and stimulant powers. In phthisis pulmonalis, accompanied with hectic fever, nocturnal sweats, and diarrhœa, it will frequently abate these troublesome and alarming symptoms, if administered in union with laudanum.

*Employment.*

The dose of this bark is from half to two drachms in powder; the infusion from half to one ounce, in a pint of boiling water. It enters into the wine bitters.



No. 73.

LIRIODENDRON TULIPIFERA.



WHITE POPLAR.

No. 74.

## COHOSH.

*Latin Name*—LEONTICE THALICTROIDES.*English Name*—BLUE COHOSH.*Vulgar Names*—BLUE BERRY, PAPPOOSE-ROOT, SQUAW-ROOT, BLUE GINSENG, &c.*Botanical Character.*

Class VI.—HEXANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—LEONTICE—Calyx inferior, 3 to 6-leaved, deciduous; corol 6-petalled, petals opposite the leaves; nectary 6-leaved, spreading, placed on the claws of the petals; anthers adnate to the filaments, opening longitudinally; fruit 1-seeded.

*Species*—THALICTROIDES—Stem; leaf simply ternate; floral one doubly ternate; stem ending in 3 leaves each; petiole being trifid, and supporting 9 leaflets; the two lateral ones sessile, and 2-lobed; middle one petioled, and 3-lobed; raceme simple; berries dark blue.

*Description.*

It grows from two to four feet high. The root yellow inside, brown outside, hard, irregular, knobby, branched, with many fibres. Stem upright, straight, smooth, dividing at top into three branches, each of which has three leaves, and in the centre of which comes out the flower stem; leaves smooth, lobed, somewhat in shape like the hand. The flowers are of a yellowish green, producing a stone berry, of a dark blue colour, something like sour grapes.

*Locality.*

It is perennial, growing all over the United States; and is generally found in low, moist, rich grounds, near running streams, in swamps, and on islands that have been overflowed with water.

*Medical Properties.*

This plant is very efficacious in the cure of *rheumatism* and *amenorrhœa*. This plant appears to be well suited to the complaints of females, and is much used by the Indian women to expedite parturition. For rheumatism, Henry recommends two ounces of this root, and one ounce of blood-root, (*sanguinaris canadensis*), bruised and infused in three pints of spirits. Of this a wineglassful three times a day may be taken. This preparation will also promote the menstrual discharge.

*Employment.*

Given in the forms of infusion and decoction.

No. 75.

**CINNAMON.** *The inner Bark.**Latin Name*—LAURUS CINNAMOMUM.*English Name*—CINNAMON TREE.*Botanical Character.*

Class IX.—ENNEANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—LAURUS—Calyx 0; corol 6-petalled, resembling a calyx; nectary 3 glands, surrounding the germ, and each ending in two bristles; inner filaments supporting two glands each; berry 1-seeded.

*Species*—CINNAMOMUM—Leaves 3-nerved, ovate, oblong; the nerves disappearing towards the tip; flowers paniced; bark smooth.

*Description.*

Trunk twenty-five to thirty feet high; bark grayish outside, red inside; leaves irregularly opposite, acute, tough, smooth, green on one side, and glaucous on the other; flowers yellowish, in a loose and axillary panicle; calyx pubescent, with six divisions; male flowers, nine stamina, forming several rows; female flowers ovoid, terminated by a thick style; stigma capitulate; fruit ovoid, resembling an acorn.

*Locality.*

This tree was formally cultivated in the island of Ceylon, and was guarded by the Dutch with unremitting jealousy, that they might monopolize the whole commerce of its production. They, however, at length failed in their attempts, and the cinnamon is now cultivated in other parts of the East Indies, and is likewise produced in the West India islands.

*Qualities.*

Cinnamon contains, according to Vauquelin, a very acrid and strong volatile oil, of a yellow colour, and heavier than water; a great deal of tannin; a colouring matter containing nitrogen, an acid, a mucilage, and some fecula. In the Ceylon and Cayenne cinnamon, these proximate principles are found in very nearly the same proportions; but the Chinese contains a more considerable quantity of essential oil. Water and alcohol take up the active principles of cinnamon.

*Medical Properties.*

Cinnamon is a very elegant and grateful aromatic to the taste and stomach; more so than any others of this class of remedies. It is, like others of this class, stimulating, warming to the stomach, carminative, and tonic. It is principally used as an adjunct to other remedies, to disguise their smell and taste. It occasionally enters into the



No. 76.

LEONTODON TARAXACUM.



COMMON DANDELION.

---

No. 116.

SOLANUM NIGRUM.



GARDEN NIGHTSHADE.

“neutralizing physic” of our pharmacopœia, and also in the compound spirits of lavender. It is also useful in bowel complaints.

*Employment.*

Given in powder of from twelve grains to one scruple.

---

No. 76.

**DANDELION.** *The Leaves and Roots.*

*Latin Name*—LEONTODON TARAXACUM.

*English Name*—COMMON DANDELION.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XVII.—SYNGENESIA.

Order I.—POLYGAMIA ÆQUALIS.

*Genus*—LEONTODON—Receptacle naked; florets ligulate; calyx double, imbricate; down simple, pedicelled.

*Species*—TARAXACUM—Outer calyx reflexed; scape 1-flowered; leaves runcinate, glabrous, with toothed lobes.

*Description.*

This is a perennial plant, the leaves all radical, smooth, oblong, and acute, cut up on the sides in a runcinate form, sometimes almost pinnatifid; the divisions acute, toothed, unequal, like the teeth of a saw; sinuses, acute, only one large mid rib; stems erect, naked, from six to eighteen inches high, cylindrical, hollow, smooth, milky when broken, bearing only one blossom; florets yellow, numerous, unequal, triangular; seeds black.

*History.*

This is a well known plant, common to Europe, Asia, and America. It blossoms from April to October. It derives its name from *dent de lion*, an old French name, meaning a lion's tooth.

*Locality.*

It is found in pastures, fields, and along road sides.

*Qualities.*

Root fusiform, covered with a blackish epidermis; it contains an abundance of milky juice, inodorous, of a bitter, sweetish, and slightly acid taste. The leaves are also slightly lactescent, and of a pleasant bitterness.

This plant contains a good deal of extractive, a green resin, some fecula, a saccharine substance, some nitrate of potassa, and lime, and acetate of lime, &c.

*Medical Properties.*

☞ Deobstruent, diuretic, hepatic, sub-tonic, aperient. It has been much used in liver complaints, dropsy, jaundice, hypochondria, and obstructions. Dr. Rush had much confidence in this article, and gave it frequently in hepatic affections. Zimmerman, Bergins, and particularly Pemberton, have highly spoken of the deobstruent properties

of the dandelion. Dr. Wilson Phillip, in his valuable treatise on indigestion, speaks in the highest terms of this article, in disorders of the liver, arising from dyspepsia. He considers it to be much more suitable to those disorders than mercury in any shape.

It is said that *liver grown cattle* have been cured, by feeding upon it. Good in complaints of the urinary organs, dropsy, &c.

*Employment.*

Given in the form of infusion, one ounce of the roots and leaves, infused in a pint of boiling water.

---



---

No. 77.

**LOBELIA.** *The Seeds, Leaves, and Capsules.*

*Latin Name*—LOBELIA INFLATA.

*English Name*—COMMON LOBELIA.

*Vulgar Names*—INDIAN TOBACCO, EMETIC-WEED, WILD TOBACCO, PUKE-WEED, ASTHMA-WEED, &c.

*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—LOBELIA—Corol irregular, 5-cleft, slit longitudinally on its upper side; anthers united into a tube; stigma capitate; capsule inferior, 2 or 3-celled.

*Species*—INFLATA—Stem erect, branching, hirsute; leaves ovate, serrate; racemes leafy; capsule inflated; many-seeded.

*Description.*

Biennial plant, one or two feet in height; stem erect, ramose, flexuose, subangular, hirsute; leaves alternate, oval, or oblong, acute, sessile, or semi-amplexicaule, serrate, or toothed, pubescent; racemes of flowers, terminal, erect, foliose; flowers remote, each nearly sessile and axillary to a smaller bract, somewhat similar to the leaves, but smaller, the upper ones smallest; lower flowers pedunculated; ovary swelled, oval, globose; calyx with five unequal sublate divisions; corolla small, blue; capsule crowned by the calyx, swelled, striated, 2-celled, full of very small seeds.

*History.*

This plant blossoms from June to November. The flowers are very small, but singular; when broken, a milky, acrid juice is emitted. It is biennial, throwing out, the first year, only a few radical roundish leaves.

*Locality.*

This plant is indigenous to America, and found growing all over the United States, in fields, woods, &c.

No. 77.

LOBELIA INFLATA.



COMMON LOBELIA.



*Qualities.*

Roots fibrous, yellowish-white, acrid, nauseous; leaves and capsules very acrid; taste resembling tobacco, and when chewed produces a copious flow of saliva, sickness at the stomach, and giddiness.

*Medical Properties.*

Lobelia is a very valuable plant, containing many active medicinal properties. It is stated that it was first used by the aborigines of this country as an emetic; but we are indebted more especially to Dr. Samuel Thompson, for bringing it into use. It constitutes the basis of his practice for diseases generally; but this indiscriminate use of the plant is, we think, very objectionable. It is, like every other article, good and proper when used in its place; in other words, it is designed only to fulfil certain indications, which the practitioner should bear in mind.

It is emetic, and peculiarly stimulating, and from its action upon the *great sympathetic nerve*, its effect is peculiarly felt throughout the whole system. It exerts a peculiar action upon the *trachea* and *bronchial vessels*, almost instantaneously expelling from them any collections of mucus that may have been collected in them. Hence it is exceedingly valuable in *asthma*, *croup*, *hooping-cough*, and in pulmonary diseases generally.

From its extensive influence over the animal economy, particularly the stomach and liver, it is found very effectual in exciting healthy action in many *chronic* diseases, such as *dyspepsia*, *chronic affections* of the *liver*, &c. It is also an excellent emetic, where poisonous substances have been taken into the stomach; but there is no disease in which it displays such a remarkable effect as in asthma. In paroxysms of the complaint, where the patient is nearly suffocated, it will give relief instantaneously. It is equally valuable in the *pneumonia* of infants. It affords immediate relief where the child seems to be suffocated by mucus or phlegm. It is also very valuable as an *expectorant* in consumption. In some of those complaints I have been called when the case appeared hopeless; and the exhibition of this article has produced the happiest effects. When large doses have been given, it caused much debility, shortness of breath, with some degree of stupor or lethargy, and usually proves somewhat laxative. It appears to be in some small degree *narcotic*; but the charge brought against it by some physicians is totally false. I have used it for many years in various diseases, both of men, women, and children, and in which I have never seen a single unpleasant symptom arise from its administration. Of late, I learn that many physicians in Europe have used it with success in *asthma*. It enters into the emetic powders, expectorant tincture, &c. of our pharmacopœia.

*Employment.*

The leaves, seeds, and inflated capsules, may be given in the form of powders, and tincture. The dose, of the powder, about a drachm, or a small teaspoonful. Of the tincture, the dose is about half an ounce, or a tablespoonful.

Says Dr. E. Smith, of Boston, "It is now about fourteen years since my first acquaintance with this herb, as an emetic, in my family; and

towards six years since, I took it to relieve in sickness, and nearly five years since I administered it to others. Though one of the most useful herbs on earth with others, it is not so alone, as it does not possess all needful to restore health to the sick man. It is very quick in its operations, but if some other medicine is not added to assist, it soon exhausts itself, and is done.

“Not far from thirteen years ago, my eldest daughter was very feeble, supposed to be in a consumption. I applied to the most skilful doctor in Portsmouth, (as was supposed;) he attended her awhile; she failed continually with all his directions. A young man, somewhat acquainted with this emetic, and the manner of using it, proposed to administer it to her; this he did, three times in one week. In a few weeks she recovered, and afterwards enjoyed good health.

“Five years ago, I was violently seized, in Boston, with the bilious cholick, and found no relief. I went to Portsmouth, and was attended with this emetic and other things in harmony with it, and with twice being attended, was entirely cured, and have not had a return of the complaint to this day. Soon after this, I began to administer it to others; which practice I have continued till now, with a success unknown in the administration of any other medicine.

“I have found it, with other medicines, an infallible cure in all cases, excepting such as are beyond all cure. I have given it to all ages, from two days old to men of eighty-two, with safety and success. I have given it to females in all cases peculiar to them, and have never known it to fail, in curable cases. There are two cases, where it will not operate; one is, when the person is dying; here it will not act, of course it will not cause death to any one. The other case is, when all disease is removed. It will not make a well man sick. When a man is so sick as to be past cure, this emetic will relieve him, and cause him to live longer, and easier than without, excepting in mortification.”

“It is said by some, that if it does not operate, it is immediate death. This is not true, neither can it be proved so by any one.” The foregoing encomiums are passed upon this plant, by Dr. E. Smith.

No. 78.

**SASSAFRAS. *Roots, Twigs, and Bark.****Latin Name*—LAURUS SASSAFRAS.*English Name*—COMMON SASSAFRAS.*Botanical Character.*

Class IX.—ENNEANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—LAURUS—Calyx 0; corol 6-petalled, resembling a calyx; nectary 3-glands, surrounding the germ, and each ending in 2-bristles; inner filaments supporting 2-glands each; berry 1-seeded.

*Species*—SASSAFRAS—Leaves entire and lobed on the same tree; downy beneath.

*Description.*

Trunk, from thirty to forty feet in height; leaves alternate, caducous, of various shapes, green on the upper surface, whitish on the under surface; flowers forked, yellowish, in small panicles; male flowers calyx; pubescent, 6-parted; 9 stamina, 3 of which are barren; anthers quadrilateral, 4-celled; pistil barren; female flowers five, barren stamina; stigma globular; ovary ovoid; fruit a pisiform drupe.

*Locality.*

This tree is a native of North America, and found growing plentifully throughout the United States, in forests and along the borders of swamps.

*Qualities.*

This root is found in commerce in pieces of the size of the arm; the lignous part is light, porous, composed of concentric layers, of a yellowish colour, of a strong and aromatic smell, of a sweetish taste at first, then warm and slightly acrid. The bark is thick, rugose, of a spongy nature, of a red-brown colour, and furnished with a resinous and yellowish epidermis. Its smell and taste are much stronger than those of the wood.

This substance contains an essential oil, heavier than water, very volatile, of a pale-yellow colour, becoming red by the action of light. Water and alcohol principally take up its active principles.

*Medical Properties.*

This article is stimulating and attenuating, very good in *rheumatic* complaints and in eruptive diseases. The bark of the young branches and the pith contain a considerable quantity of mucilage. If the pith be infused in a glass of water a considerable quantity of mucilage is extracted, which renders this infusion very useful in *acute inflammation* of the *eyes*, and in *catarrhs*, and *dysentery*. Alibert frequently administered sassafras, at the hospital of St. Louis, in rheumatic complaints, and it appeared always to him to produce a manifest action on the cutaneous vessels. He mentions likewise two cases of *gout*, in

which sassafras was employed with complete success. Dr. Eberle says, "I have known the long continued use of an infusion of this article effectually cure a case of inveterate rheumatism. It enters into the alterative syrup of our pharmacopœia. The pith of sassafras put into rose-water makes the laurus eye-water, which is very valuable for ophthalmia, or inflammation of the eyes.

*Employment.*

Infusion, infuse from one ounce to two ounces of the bark of the root in a quart of boiling water. Drink according to circumstances.

---

No. 79.

**WHITE LILY. *The Root.***

*Latin Name*—LILIUM CANDIDUM.

*English Name*—COMMON WHITE LILY.

*Botanical Character.*

Class VI.—HEXANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—LILIUM—Corol 6-petalled, companulate, with a longitudinal nectariferous groove from the middle to the base; capsules with the valves connected by cancelled hairs.

*Species*—CANDIDUM—Leaves lanceolate, scattered, tapering to the base; corols, companulate, glabrous within, white.

*Description.*

Root bulbous; stem upright, rising about three feet; leaves, numerous, smooth, without foot-stalks; flowers, large, white, terminating the stem in clusters upon short peduncles. The corolla is bell-shaped, composed of 6 petals of a beautiful white colour; capsule oblong, divided into three cells, containing many flattish seeds of a semicircular shape.

*Locality.*

This plant is a native of the Levant, but is cultivated in our gardens for its beauty.

*Medical Properties.*

It is mucilaginous, which makes it very useful as a poultice in inflammatory swellings. It likewise, when simmered with lard, forms a good ointment for *tetters*, &c. It enters into the tetter ointment of our pharmacopœia.

*Employment.*

Externally, in poultice and ointment.

No. 80.

**LAVENDER.** *The Leaves and Stems.*

*Latin Name*—LAVANDULA SPICA.

*English Name*—BROAD-LEAVED LAVENDER.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XIII.—DIDYNAMIA.

Order I.--GYMNOPERMIA.

*Genus*—LAVANDULA—Calyx ovate, subdentate, supported by a bract; corol reversed; stamens within the tube.

*Species*—SPICA—Leaves sessile, lance-linear; margin revolute; spikes terminal, intercepted, naked; flowers blue; shrub branched.

*Description.*

Stem woody, ramose, whitish; leaves lanceolate, pointed, entire, glaucous; flowers bluish, verticillate, sessile, disposed in terminal spikes.

*Locality.*

A perennial plant, native of the south of France; flowering from May to September.

*Qualities.*

Its smell is aromatic and pleasant, and its taste bitter and warm. It contains a large proportion of essential oil, of a straw colour, which furnishes 0.25 of camphor. Water and alcohol take up its active principles.

*Medical Properties.*

Although lavender possesses very energetic stimulant properties, it is, nevertheless, very little used now, except as a perfume. It may, however, be administered with advantage in flatulence, fainting, and nervous affections. It is carminative, pectoral, nervine, and anti-spasmodic.

*Employment.*

Powder, from one scruple to half a drachm. In the form of infusion or tea. It constitutes the principal ingredient in the compound spirits of lavender.

No. 81.

**BAYBERRY.** *The Bark of the Root.**Latin Name*—MYRICA CERIFERA.*English Name*—WAX MYRTLE.*Botanical Character.*

Class XX.—DIOECIA.

Order IV.—TETRANDRIA.

*Genus*—MYRICA—Staminate flowers; ament long; calyx a concave scale of the ament; corol 0; stamens 4 to 6; anthers 4-valved; pistillate flowers; calyx like the staminate; corol 0; styles 2; berry 1-seeded.

*Species*—CERIFERA—Leaves wedge-lanceolate, acute, with distant serratures at the apex; fruit small, globose, covered with a whitish wax in a mealy state; stem arboreous; shrub.

*Description.*

Stem ramose, furnished with a grayish bark, from six to twelve feet high; branches cylindrical, covered with a brown or slightly reddish epidermis; leaves alternate, oblong, lanceolate, pointed at top, and scattered with resinous atoms; aments loose; axillary short; calycinal scales acute, not shining; fruit, a globular berry, furnished externally with an unctuous white powder, and containing a large quantity of wax.

*Locality.*

A native shrub of the United States, found particularly in the states of Connecticut, New-Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Virginia, the Carolinas, and Louisiana.

*Qualities.*

According to Dr. Dana's analysis, the berries of the myrica cerifera contain wax, 32.00; resino-extractive, 5.00; black powder, 15.00; kernels, 47; loss, 0.50.

*Medical Properties.*

This article is narcotic, astringent, emetic, &c. The bark of the root is found to be a sovereign remedy in *scrofula*, applied in the form of poultice, by bruising the bark, and simmering it in rain water; then applying the poultice to the ulcers, and injecting a strong decoction into the sinuses. It is likewise very good in *jaundice*, especially that called "*black jaundice*." In *dysentery*, I have given an infusion of this bark with success. Dr. Fahnestock has used the pulverized concrete oil in dysentery of a typhoid kind, which prevailed at Harrisburg, (Pennsylvania,) and it was attended with much success. His mode of administering it is by rubbing down to a powder a drachm or two of the concrete oil, or the wax, and by uniting the oil of cinnamon to the powder, using gentle evacuants before administering it.

I consider this shrub to be one of the most valuable productions of



No 78.

LAURUS SASSAFRAS.



COMMON SASSAFRAS.

this or any other country. It enters in the composition of the anti-dysenteric cordial of our pharmacopœia.

We use it principally in the form of poultice, as a remedy in the scrofula, or king's evil; and also combined with blood-root, as a sternutatory, or snuff, for the polypus.

*Employment.*  
It may be given in powder, infusion, or decoction.

The poultice for scrofulous ulcers is made by simmering the bark of the root, bruised or pulverized, in rain or spring water, until soft; and then stirring in Indian meal, or, which is better, slippery-elm bark, until a poultice of a proper consistence is formed.

Bayberry tallow, or wax, is the basis of one of our plasters for scrofulous ulcers.

---

No. 82.

## COLOMBO. *The Root.*

*Latin Name*—MENISPERMUM PALMATUM.

*English Name*—COLOMBO.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XX.—DIOECIA.

Order XII.—POLYANDRIA.

*Genus*—MENISPERMUM—Petals 4 exterior, 8 interior; male stamina 16; female stamina 8; barren; berries 2, 1-seeded.

*Species*—PALMATUM—Stem simple, hirsute; leaves orbicular, with five distant and palmated lobes.

*Description.*

Stem climbing, simple, furnished with long hair; leaves orbicular, 5-nerved, and five distant and palmated lobes; male flowers, supported by simple or ramose peduncles, longer than the leaves; calyx 6-parted; corolla six fleshy petals; six stamens longer than the petals; female flowers unknown.

*Locality.*

This is a native growth of Africa, Madagascar, and the East Indies.

*Qualities.*

This root is thick, fibrous, and composed of fusiform ramifications. It is found in commerce in sections of about one inch and a half diameter, or in pieces two or three inches long, covered with a thick and yellowish bark, easily detached, and offering a rugose epidermis of a brown or olive colour. The parenchyma is of a spongy texture, of a greenish-yellow colour, presenting several concentric zones; its taste is bitter, and its smell unpleasant.

Colombo contains, according to Mr. Planché, starch, 33; gum, 9; a principle containing nitrogen, 6; a yellow bitter matter, 13; a little

volatile oil; some salts of lime and potassa; some oxide of iron, silica, and lignin.

#### Medical Properties.

This article is possessed of a bitter quality, without any astringency or acrimony; but if it is given in too large doses, it is apt to nauseate. When given in proper doses, it acts as a tonic, giving strength to the stomach and intestinal canal, without stimulating; and on that account it is very useful in *hectic fever*. In dyspeptic complaints, it exerts its greatest benefits, and is one of the best tonics which we can employ in those cases. Dr. Eberle administered this article, in union with ipecacuanha, with "marked advantage," in dyspepsia. He gives ten or twelve grains of colombo with two of ipecacuanha. Colombo enters into the *restorative cordial* of our pharmacopœia.

#### Employment.

Colombo may be administered in the forms of powder and infusion. Dose of the powder, from twelve to fifteen grains; infusion, from one to two drachms, infused in a pint of boiling water.

No. 83.

## GUM ARABIC. *The Gum.*

*Latin Name*—MIMOSA NILOTICA.

*English Name*—GUM ARABIC.

#### Botanical Character.

#### Order X.—DECANDRIA.

*Genus*—MIMOSA—Polygamous; calyx tubular, 5-toothed; corol 5-petalled; staminæ 5 or more, exert; style 1; stigma truncate; legume 1-celled, 2-valved.

*Species*—NILOTICA—Spines stipular, spreading; leaves doubly pinnate, outer partial leaves separated by a gland; spikes globular, peduncled; flowers yellow.

#### Description.

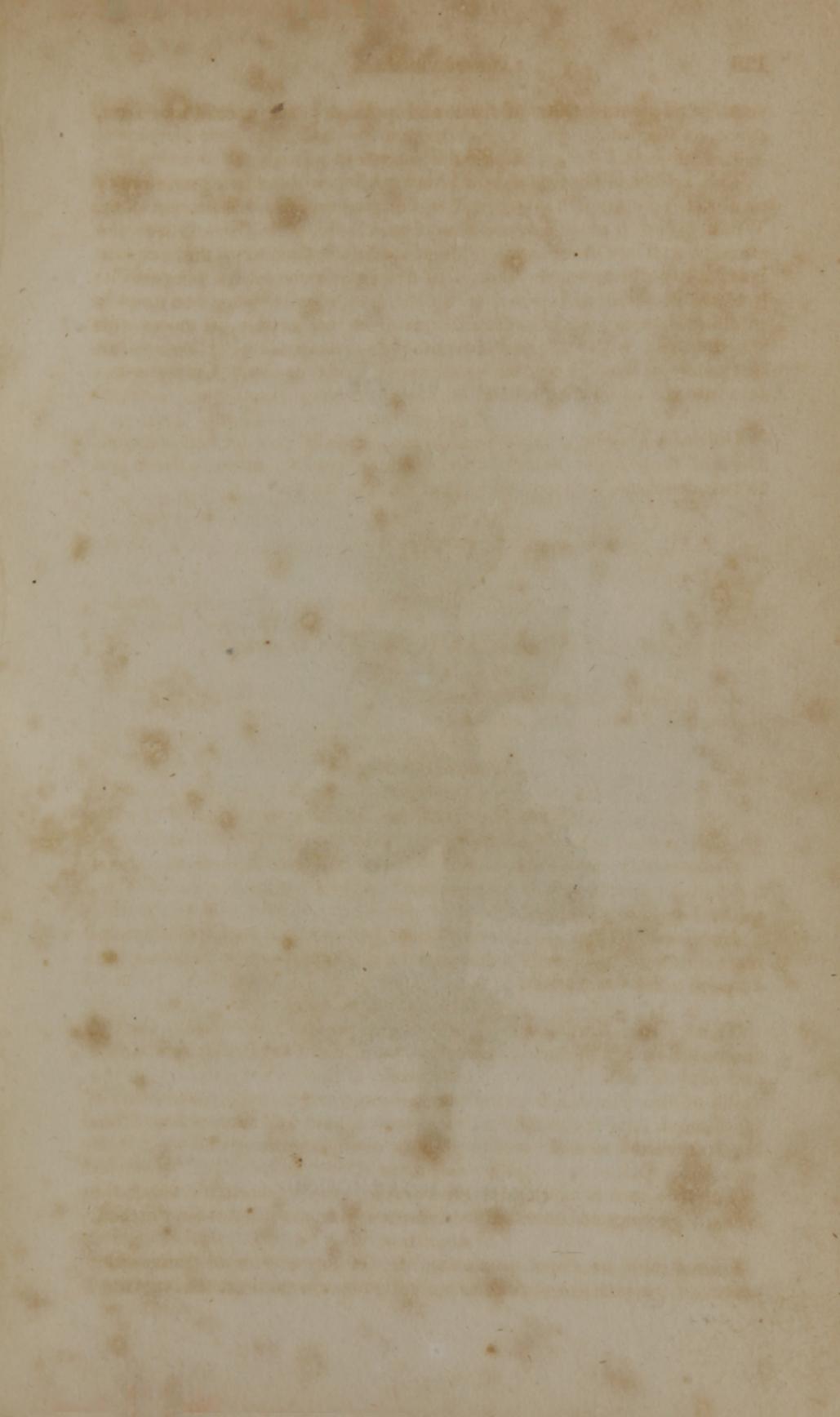
Trunk from thirty to forty feet high, ramose; leaves bi-pinnate, composed of ten *pinnulae*, supporting each about twenty pairs of small and oval folioles; flowers yellow, small, united in a capitulum, in the axilla of the leaves; stamina very numerous, monadelphous, two of them much longer than the calyx; fruit, a long and narrow pod, offering from seven to eight estrangulations, each containing one seed.

#### Locality.

The tree that furnishes the gum arabic, grows principally along the Nile, in Egypt, and in the sandy deserts of Africa, and Arabia Petraea.

#### Qualities.

Gum arabic is found in commerce, in dry and semi-transparent pieces of various sizes, rugose, and slightly cracked on the surface;



No. 84.

MARRUBIUM VULGARE.



COMMON HOARHOUND.

No. 81.

MYRICA CERIFERA.



BAYBERRY.



friable, irregularly round, colourless, or yellowish; inodorous, of a sweet and viscous taste. It is composed, according to Messrs. Gay Lussac, and Thénard, of carbon, 42.23; oxygen and hydrogen, in suitable proportions to form 57 of water. It contains, besides, a small quantity of saline substances; otherwise, its chemical properties do not differ from those of gums in general.

*Medical Properties.*

The gum of this tree is highly nutritious. During the whole time of the harvest, of the journey, and of the fair, the Moors of the desert live almost entirely upon it. It has likewise been ascertained that six ounces of this gum is sufficient to support a person during the space of twenty-four hours. It possesses the power of being a mucilaginous demulcent, which makes it very valuable in hoarseness, dysentery, strangury, whooping-cough, &c. In gonorrhœa it is an excellent article. It is very useful as a vehicle for other medicines.

*Employment.*

Given in doses of the pulverized gum, of from half to one drachm. *Solution*, gum Arabic, from half to one ounce, in two pounds or two pints of boiling water, used as common drink.

---

No. 84.

## HOARHOUND. *The Leaves and Stems.*

*Latin Name*—MARRUBIUM VULGARE.

*English Name*—COMMON HOARHOUND.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XIII.—DIDYNAMIA.

Order I.—GYMNOSPERMIA.

*Genus*—MARRUBIUM—Calyx salver-form, rigid; 10 striate; the upper lip of the corol cloven, linear straight.

*Species*—VULGARE—Leaves roundish, ovate, toothed, rugose, veined; calyx 10-toothed, with setaceous hooked teeth.

*Description.*

This plant is perennial, arising about a foot in height, leaves deeply serrated, veined, wrinkled and hoary, in pairs, standing upon long thick foot, and broad foot-stalks; flowers white; calyx cut into ten segments.

*Locality.*

This is a native plant of Europe, but flourishes well with us; and is found growing along fences and road sides.

*Qualities.*

Hoarhound has an aromatic and musk-like odour, and an acrid, warm, and bitter taste.

It contains a volatile oil, a bitter principle, and some gallic acid. Water and alcohol dissolve its active principles.

*Medical Properties.*

It is a very energetic stimulant, diaphoretic, pectoral, and tonic, and is a very excellent remedy in colds, coughs, and all pulmonary affections. It is very good in consumption and pneumonia; it acts as an emmenagogue and antispasmodic. Given in very large doses it sometimes acts as a laxative. It enters into the *pulmonary* balsam of our pharmacopœia; and which constitutes an exceedingly valuable preparation in all pulmonary diseases.

*Employment.*

It is most generally given in the form of syrup and infusion, or tea. It is used also in the form of syrup, for colds and coughs.

---

No. 85.

**PEPPERMINT.** *The Leaves and Stems.*

*Latin Name*—MENTHA PIPERITA.

*English Name*—PEPPERMINT.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XIII.—DIDYNAMIA.

Order I.—GYMNOSPERMIA.

*Genus*—MENTHA—Calyx 5-cleft; corol nearly equal, 4-parted, the broadest segment notched; stamens erect, distant.

*Species*—PIPERITA—Spikes obtuse, interrupted below; leaves petiolate, subovate, nearly glabrous; stem glabrous.

*Description.*

Stem erect, one or two feet high, ramose; leaves oval, dentate on the periphery; flowers violet, in short and very close spikes at the top of the branches.

*Locality.*

This plant is indigenous to Europe, but is cultivated in our gardens for medical use.

*Qualities.*

The odour of this plant is agreeable and penetrating; its taste is pungent, slightly bitter, followed by a sensation of cold in the mouth.

It contains an abundance of yellowish essential oil, containing camphor, a little resin, and extractive. Its active principles are soluble in water and alcohol.

*Medical Properties.*

This plant possesses decided stimulant, sudorific, antispasmodic, pungent, and anti-emetic properties, which principally arise from the essential oil which resides in this plant. It is accordingly administered in affections which require the use of stimulating articles. It may be administered with advantage in nervous affections of the stomach: such as flatulence, colics, *dyspepsia*, *spasmodic vomiting*, *cardialgia*, &c. It may likewise be administered with some success in amenorrhœa, chlorosis, hysteria, and other nervous diseases. It is also

No. 85.

MENTHA PIPERITA.



PEPPERMINT.





No. 86.

NEPETA CATARIA.



CATNIP.

very useful as an adjunct to other medicines, particularly cathartics, to facilitate their action, and to conceal their odour or unpleasant taste. It enters into the neutralizing and antibilious physic of our pharmacopœia. It is excellent to allay vomiting; it is very useful in bowel complaints, cholera morbus, &c.

*Employment.*

It may be given in powder, infusion, or the essential oil, essence, or powder. From one scruple to half a drachm may be given at a dose. Infusion, an ounce to a quart of boiling water; and should be taken freely.

No. 86.

**CATNIP.** *The Leaves and Flowers.*

*Latin Name*—NEPETA CATARIA.

*English Name*—COMMON CATNIP.

*Vulgar Names*—CATNIP, CATMINT, &c.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XIII.—DIDYNAMIA.

Order I.—GYMNOSPERMIA.

*Genus*—NEPETA—Corol with the middle segment of the corol crenate, the orifice with a reflected margin; stamina approximate.

*Species*—CATARIA—Flowers in whorled spikes; whorls slightly pedicelled; leaves petioled, cordate; tooth serrate; plant hoary, pubescent.

*Description.*

This plant rises from two to three feet in height; stalk quadrilateral, ramous; leaves roundish, dentate, pubescent; flowers in a whorled spike, whitish.

*Locality.*

This is a perennial plant, indigenous to this country, and is found growing throughout the United States, along the sides of roads and old buildings.

*Medical Properties.*

It is diaphoretic, carminative, diluent, refrigerant. It is useful in all kinds of fevers, producing perspiration without increasing the heat of the body. Although this plant is very simple, and is by some despised, yet it is a very valuable article. In colds, a tea made of it is much used in domestic practice, and not without effect, as it most generally induces a profuse perspiration, which throws off the cold, and restores the patient to his ordinary health. Very efficacious in all kinds of fevers.

*Employment.*

It is given in infusion, by infusing a small quantity in a quart of boiling water. Externally as a poultice in painful swellings. Excellent also in fomentations.

No. 87.

**SPEARMINT.** *The Leaves, Branches, &c.**Latin Name*—**MENTHA VIRIDIS.***English Name*—**SPEARMINT.***Botanical Character.***Class XIII.—DIDYNAMIA.****Order I.—GYMNOSPERMIA.**

**Genus**—**MENTHA**—Calyx 5-cleft; corol nearly equal, 4-parted; the broadest segment notched; stamens erect, distant.

**Species**—**VIRIDIS**—Spikes interrupted; leaves sessile, lanceolate, acute, naked; bracts setaceous, and with the teeth of the calyx somewhat hairy; leaves glabrous; flowers purple.

*Description.*

This plant arises two or three feet in height; stem quadrangular, straight, with small branches, leaves opposite, on short peduncles, oval, serrated; flowers on a short terminal spike.

*Locality.*

It is a perennial plant, found growing along brooks and rivulets.

*Qualities.*

It has a warm, stimulating, aromatic taste, which is owing to the essential oil which it contains.

*Medical Properties.*

Febrifuge, diuretic, antispasmodic, and antiemetic. This plant is excellent to allay nausea, and sickness at the stomach. It is also an excellent remedy in gravel, suppression of urine, &c. The oil is also valuable in pains, and rheumatic affections.

*Employment.*

Infusion, made by bruising a handful, in a quart of boiling water. It constitutes the principal article in the spirits of mint, which is made by bruising the green plant, and adding sufficient fourth-proof Holland gin to make a saturated tincture, which makes a preparation remarkably efficacious in suppression of urine, gravelly affections, &c. I discovered this many years ago, more by accident than design. The dose of this preparation is a wineglassful, drank as often as the stomach will bear. Cotton, wet with the above liquid, or tincture, and applied to the *piles*, affords immediate relief.

No. 87.

MENTHA VIRIDIS.



SPEARMINT.



No. 88.

**TOBACCO.***Latin Name*—NICOTIANA TABACUM.*English Name*—COMMON TOBACCO.*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—NICOTIANA—Corol funnel-form, with a plaited border; stamina inclined; capsule 2-valved, 2-celled.

*Species*—TABACUM—Leaves lanceovate, sessile, decurrent; flowers acute.

*Description.*

Stem straight, ramose and viscous, from two to three feet high; leaves alternate, pubescent, very large, oval, and sessile; flowers in panicles at the extremity of the branches, large; calyx urceolate; corolla, infundibuliform, regular, five stamina; ovary ovoid, with two polyspermous cells; fruit an ovoid and bivalve capsule.

*Locality.*

This plant is a native of America, but is cultivated in Europe. It flourishes best in the southern states.

*Qualities.*

The tobacco leaves, in their green state, have a virose smell, and an acrid and aromatic taste. Such as they are found in commerce, they are dry, and have experienced a beginning of fermentation, which, to a certain degree, changes their nature; their colour is then more or less brown, their odour aromatic and penetrating, and their taste acrid.

According to Vauquelin, the juice obtained from the fresh leaves contains a red animal matter, soluble in water and alcohol; a peculiar acrid principle, soluble in water and alcohol, volatile, colourless, and apparently the active principle; a green resin, albumen, lignous fibres, acetic acid, and some salts. The tobacco of commerce, contains besides, some carbonate of ammonia. Water and alcohol take up easily its active principles.

*Medical Properties.*

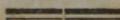
The properties of this plant are well known. Its influencing powers are every where felt. The Arab cultivates it in the burning sands of his barren desert, and its influence is so well experienced by him, that he will perform tedious and lengthy journeys through the scorching sands to procure it. The Laplander places his life in jeopardy, amidst the drifting snows of his country, to obtain it. The Indian, that roams the "forest wild" alone, finds in this article a companion. The sailor and soldier, too, to whom the thundering cannon and depri-

vation of every other luxury is nothing, if he can procure this grateful morsel. Even the polished citizen, although surrounded with all the pleasures and comforts of civilized and elegant society, will not dispense with his favourite cigar. This article is emetic, narcotic, &c. It is good in ulcers, and in wounds. Sternutatory, making an excellent snuff for catarrh, and affections of the head. It has been used by some physicians as an emetic, but it is not a fit article for this purpose.

Jewett, who some years since was cast away in Nootka Sound, on the northwest coast of America, applied a leaf of tobacco, steeped in spirits, to a severe wound of the skull which he had received in an encounter with the Indians, and the application was attended with success. All but one or two of the crew were massacred by the savages. The wound was received upon the head by a tomahawk, which caused a considerable depression of the skull. Upon his return to this country, he showed me the scar of the wound he had received, and he stated that he used nothing else but the tobacco to effect a cure. A weak infusion, as an injection, removes worms which sometimes infest the rectum. Hosack recommended one good remedy, when I attended his lectures, viz. that tobacco be used only externally. He stated that this plant was made for the *anus*, but not for the *mouth*.

*Employment.*

Externally, as a wash in foul ulcers ; and in snuff, taken in catarrh.



No. 89.

## THYME.

*Latin Name*—*ORIGANUM MAJORANA.*

*English Name*—*GARDEN THYME.*

*Botanical Character.*

Class XIII.—*DIDYNAMIA.*

Order I.—*GYMNOSPERMIA.*

*Genus*—*ORIGANUM*—Calyxes collected into a quadrangular cone, with intervening bracts ; the upper lip of the corol erect, flat, emarginate ; under lip 3-parted, divisions nearly equal.

*Species*—*MAJORANA*—Spikes roundish, ternate, compact, peduncled ; leaves petiolate, elliptic, obtuse, somewhat glabrous.

*Description.*

This is a well known garden plant, so familiar as to need no description.

*Medical Properties.*

Both the plant and the oil are possessed of medicinal properties.

*Employment.*

A tea of the plant, drank warm, is very valuable in painful or difficult menstruation. The oil is useful externally, in rheumatic and other painful affections.

---



---

No. 90.

**OLIVE. *The Oil.***

*Latin Name*—OLEA EUROPEA.

*English Name*—OLIVE TREE.

*Botanical Character.*

Class II.—DIANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—OLEA—Corol 4-cleft, the segments somewhat ovate ; drupe 1-celled, 1-seeded.

*Species*—EUROPEA—Leaves lanceolate, very entire ; racemes axillary, close ; tree evergreen.

*Description.*

This is an evergreen, with oblong, narrow, willow-like leaves, and monopetalous, whitish flowers, cut into four sections or segments, followed by a cluster of oval, black fruit, containing, under a fleshy pulp, a hard, rough stone.

*Locality.*

This tree is a native of the south of Europe, and north of Africa. It is cultivated in France, Spain, and Italy, for the sake of its fruit and oil.

*Qualities.*

Olives, when fresh, have an acrid, bitter, and extremely unpleasant taste. The oil is viscous, of greenish-yellow colour, becoming solid a few degrees above the freezing point, of an agreeable taste and smell, and of the specific gravity of 0.9153. Its composition is the same as that of the other oils ; it is not desiccative, and does not become rancid as easily as that of sweet almond.

*Medical Properties.*

Emollient, purgative, antiseptic, vulnerary, refrigerant, &c. This oil, taken internally, operates as a gentle laxative, and is useful in inflammation of the bowels and stomach ; also in dysentery. It is often used to mitigate the action of acrid substances, taken in the stomach. It is used externally in frictions, in gargles, and in clysters ; but its principal employment is in the composition of ointments and plasters. It has been thought to be a specific for the bite of poisonous serpents.

In the Philosophical Transactions, (vol. xxxiv. p. 310.,) are related the experiments of one William Oliver, who suffered his arm to be

bitten by a viper, and waited until the most violent symptoms ensued, which were soon removed by applying the warm oil of olives to the affected parts. This oil is found to be very serviceable in dropsies, especially in ascites. The oil, in those cases, seems to soften the skin, and lessen the inflammation, which is produced by distension. The leaves of the olive possess a very bitter and harsh taste, and contain tannin and gallic acid. They are frequently used in the south of France, in intermittent fevers. They have been used at the Hospital de la Charité, and not without benefit. They may be administered in powder or decoction.

*Employment.*

The dose of the oil, as a cathartic, is one ounce. Externally, it is rubbed on the parts, or formed into plasters or ointments.

No. 91.

**ALDER.** *The Bark and Leaves.*

*Latin Name*—PRINOS VERTICILLATUS.

*English Name*—BLACK ALDER.

*Botanical Character.*

Class VI.—HEXANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—PRINOS—Consists of shrubs, a part of which are deciduous, and a part evergreen; bearing small, lateral, or axillary flowers. Its character is formed by a 6-cleft calyx; a monopetalous subrotate, 6-cleft corolla; and a 6-seeded berry.

*Species*—VERTICILLATUS—Leaves deciduous, oval, serrate, acuminate, slightly pubescent beneath; flowers axillary, aggregate.

*Description.*

The black alder is irregular in its growth, but most commonly forms bunches six or eight feet in height. The leaves are alternate, or scattered, on short petioles, oval, acute at the base, sharply serrate, acuminate, with some hairiness, particularly on the veins underneath. The flowers are small, white, growing in little tufts, or imperfect umbels, which are nearly sessile in the axils of the leaves; calyx small; 6-cleft, persistent; corolla monopetalous, spreading, without a tube; the border divided into six outer segments. The stamens are erect, with oblong anthers; in the barren flowers they are equal in length to the corolla; in the fertile ones, shorter. The germ in the fertile flowers is large, green, roundish, with a short neck, or style, terminating in an obtuse stigma. These are followed by irregular bunches of bright scarlet berries, which are roundish, supported by the persistent calyx, and crowned with the stigma; 6-celled, containing six long seeds, convex outwardly, and sharp-edged within. The berries

No. 91.

PRINOS VERTICILLATUS.



BLACK ALDER.





No. 90.

OLEA EUROPÆA.



OLIVE TREE.

are bitter, and unpleasant to the taste, with a little sweetness and some acrimony.

*Qualities.*

The bark of the black alder is moderately bitter, but inferior in this respect to some other shrubs. It is not very astringent.

*Medical Properties.*

Alterative, subastringent, corroborant, anti-herpetic, &c. It has been much used by some in intermittents. Barton thinks that, on some occasions, it is better than the Peruvian bark. It is recommended in cases of great debility, accompanied with fever. Barton says, that in incipient gangrene, it is unquestionably a medicine of great efficacy. To be given internally, and applied externally as a wash.

Dr. Thatcher recommends a decoction, or infusion of the bark, taken internally, in doses of a teacupful, and employed also as a wash, for the cure of cutaneous eruptions, particularly the herpetic kind.

A tea or decoction of the bark, sweetened, has been highly extolled for the removal of worms in the stomach of children.

The bark, or the root of black alder, is found excellent to purify the blood; to be combined with other articles, and made into beer, or diet drink.

The berries, infused in brandy, are said to be very efficacious in some pulmonary affections.

Matthew Noyes, a clergyman, in Northford, Connecticut, it is said, was cured of an affection of the lungs, which had rendered him unable to preach. He took a wineglassful of the above preparation, three or four times a day.

---



---

No. 92.

**ANISEED. *The Seed.***

*Latin Name*—PIMPINELLA ANISUM.

*English Name*—GARDEN ANISEED.

*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order II.—DIGYNIA.

*Genus*—PIMPINELLA—Flowers tubulous, all fertile; petals cordate, incurved; seeds striate, ovate, oblong; stigma subglobular.

*Species*—ANISUM—Radical leaves, trifid, and cut; stem striate; cauline leaves, in narrow pinnate segments.

*Description.*

Stem herbaceous, ramose, one foot high; radical leaves petiolate, round and dentate; the cauline leaves gashed into narrow and linear segments; flowers white, without involucre or involucellum; petals equal, cordiform; stamina longer than the petals; anthers round, globular; fruit ovoid, slightly pubescent.

*Locality.*

An annual plant; native of the Levant; cultivated both in Europe and America.

*Qualities.*

Seeds greenish, ovoid, lunated, striate longitudinally; of a warm, aromatic, and sweet taste; of an agreeable smell.

Their shell contains a white essential oil, congealing at 10° Centig. (50° Fahr.) and the almond yields an inodorous fixed oil. Its active principles are soluble in water, and principally in alcohol.

*Medical Properties.*

The properties of this plant are somewhat similar to those of fennel. The seeds are *carminative* and *pectoral*. They are useful in dyspepsia, and flatulent affections incident to children. The oil of aniseed enters into the cough-drops of our pharmacopœia.

*Employment.*

The seeds may be given, but the oil dropped on sugar is preferable. For flatulence, an infusion of the seeds may be given.

---

No. 93.

## CANADA BALSAM. *The Resinous Juice.*

*Latin Name*—PINUS BALSAMEA.

*English Name*—CANADA FIR BALSAM.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XIX.—MONOECIA.

Order XV.—MONADELPHIA.

*Genus*—PINUS—*Male*.—Calyx a peltate scale of the ament: corol 0; anthers sessile, growing to the scales.

*Female*.—Calyx 2-flowered, scale of the cone; corol 0; pistil 1; two nuts under each scale; winged.

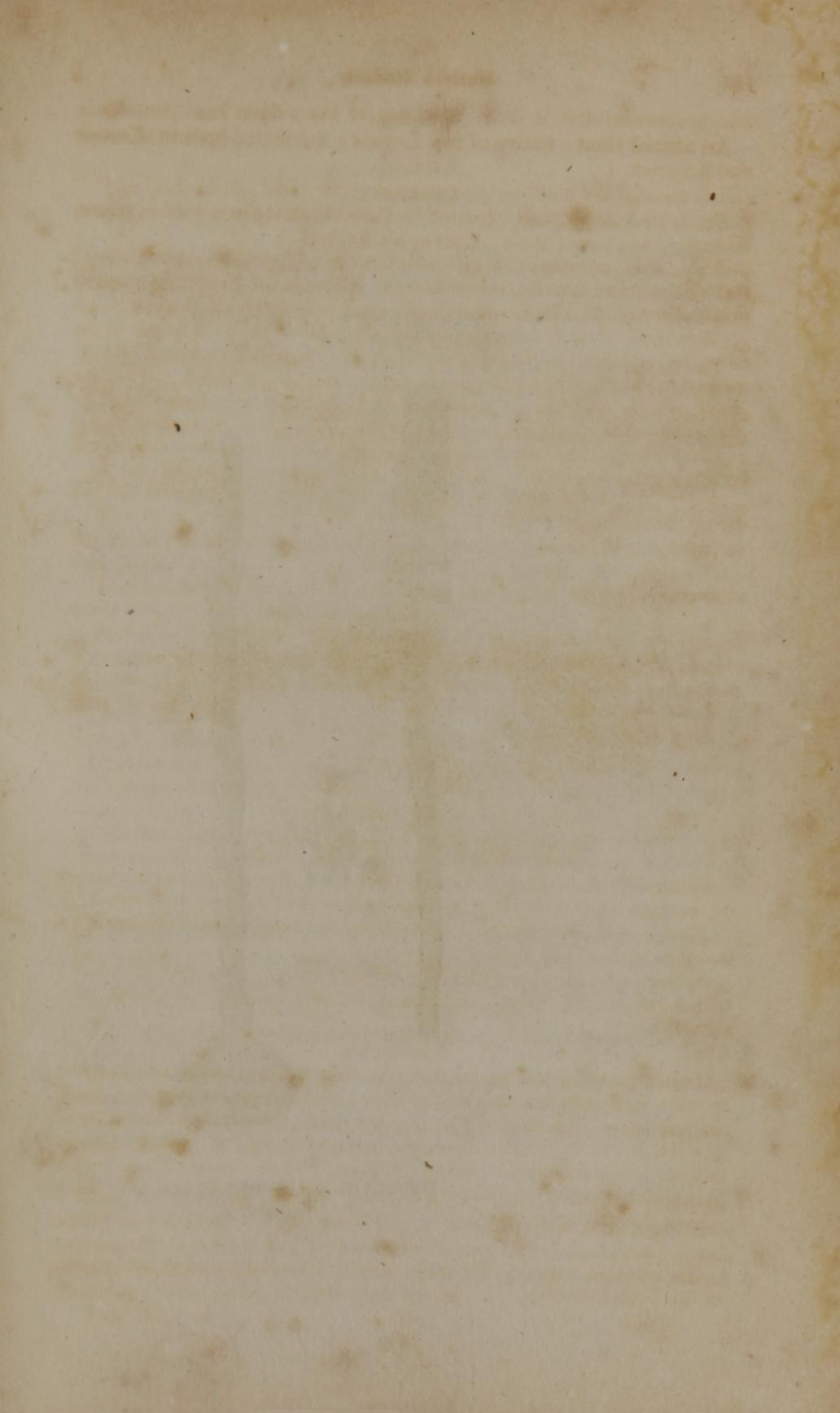
*Species*—BALSAMEA—Leaves solitary, flat, glaucous beneath; cones cylindrical, erect, with short bracts; bracts mucronate, subserrulate.

*Description.*

Trunk elevated, ramose at top, covered with a smooth, and in some species with rough bark; leaves linear, more or less elongate, pointed, persistent, of a more or less deep green; flowers monoicous, male flowers in scaly aments; two anthers fixed to the scales; female flowers amentaceous as well as the male, two on each scale; fruit, a pyramidal cone, of variable size, composed of imbricated and thick scales, containing almonds of a turpentine taste.

*Locality.*

This tree is found growing plentifully in Canada, and in some parts of the United States.



No. 94.

PTEROSPORA ANDROMEDA.



DRAGON'S CLAW.

*Qualities.*

This balsam is composed of resin and essential oil. It is entirely soluble in alcohol, and partially in water.

*Medical Properties.*

When given internally, this balsam is stimulating, gently laxative ; applied internally, it is emollient and cooling. It is efficacious when applied to sore nipples, and is esteemed very much by some in cuts, wounds, &c. Dr. Budd prescribes this in leucorrhœa or fluor albus.

*Employment.*

The dose is from twenty to thirty drops.

---

No. 94.

**DRAGON'S CLAW. *The Root.***

*Latin Name*—PTEROSPORA ANDROMEDA.

*Vulgar Names*—DRAGON'S CLAW, FEVER-ROOT, &c.

*Botanical Character.*

Class X.—DECANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—PTEROSPORA—Corol monopetalous ; margin 5-toothed, reflexed, enclosing the stamens ; anthers 2-celled, 2-bristled, peltate ; filaments flat ; style short ; capsule 5-celled, 5-valved ; calyx 5-parted ; seeds minute, and very numerous, each furnished with a terminal wing.

*Species*—ANDROMEDA—Scape purple, tall, bearing a many-flowered raceme, of reddish-white flowers ; flowers lateral and terminal, nodding ; stem simple, scaly ; leafless.

*Description.*

This plant rises six or seven inches in height ; the leaves grow in a cluster from the top of the root ; blossoms yellow ; small black root, about the size of cloves, very tender resembling the claws of a hen.

*Locality.*

It is found in the Genesee country, and in the mountains around Albany.

*Medical Properties.*

This plant is useful in different kinds of fevers, particularly typhus. It keeps up a moisture of the skin, without producing any excitement.

*Employment.*

To a teaspoonful of the root, add about half a pint of boiling water. It may be drank freely.

No. 95.

**WHITE, AND YELLOW, OR PITCH PINE.***Latin Names*—PINUS, STROBUS, AND PALUSTUS.*English Names*—WHITE PINE; also, PITCH AND YELLOW, OR SOUTHERN PINE.*Botanical Character.*

Class XIX.—MONOECIA.

Order XV.—MONADELPHIA.

*Genus*—PINUS—Staminate flowers; corol 0; calyx, a peltate scale of the ament; anthers sessile, growing to the scales; pistillate flowers; calyx, a 2-leaved scale of the cone; corol 0; pistil 1, 2-winged; nuts under each scale.

*Species*—STROBUS—Leaves in fives, slender; cones cylindrical, smooth, longer than the leaves; anthers with a double subulate, minute, crest; cones pendulous.

*Locality.*

Found principally in the northern states.

*Medical Properties.*

Both the white and yellow pitch, or southern pine, are stimulant, laxative, diuretic, pectoral, vermifuge, discutient, antiherpetic, detergent, balsamic, vulnerary, &c. This, together with the white pine, is one of the most valuable productions to be found. The bark and gum are very useful in rheumatism, and consumption. It likewise acts as an emmenagogue, increasing the flow of the menses. It is also beneficial in diseases of the kidneys. Externally, it is much used in the form of plasters, for ulcers, &c. In short, it appears to act upon all the secretions and excretions of the body.

*Employment.*

Internally, infusion of the pitch, white, and other pines, drank, or pills made of the gum; externally, plasters, spread on cloth or leather, for lumbago, rheumatism, and local pains. The gum itself, spread on leather, makes an excellent strengthening plaster. Digested in wine, it is an excellent remedy in rheumatic affections, and obstructed menses. The oil of tar is excellent in pain in the breast. Ten drops, three or four times a day, are a dose; to be given in milk.

No. 95.

PINUS PALUSTRIS OR AUSTRALIS.



YELLOW, OR PITCH PINE.



No. 96.

**WILD CHERRY. *The Bark.****Latin Name*—PRUNUS VIRGINIANA.*English Name*—WILD CHERRY-TREE.*Botanical Character.*

Class XI.—ICOSANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus* —PRUNUS—Calyx inferior, 5-cleft; corol 5-petalled; drupe, with a stone, with slightly prominent seams.

*Species*—VIRGINIANA—Flowers in erect racemes; petals roundish; leaves doubly toothed, oblong, acuminate, smooth; petioles with about 4 glands.

*Description.*

Trunk from twenty-five to thirty feet high; leaves deciduous, oval, pointed, and dentate, of a fine shining green colour, furnished at their base with two small reddish glands; flowers white, in erect racemes, from six to eight inches long; calyx inferior, 5-cleft; 5 petals; style terminal; fruit, a black drupe, containing a nut with a prominent suture.

*Locality.*

This tree is indigenous to the United States, in many parts of which it is found in abundance. Found growing in our forests.

*Qualities.*

It has a bitter astringent taste, slightly aromatic, and similar to that of the peach kernels.

Dr. Conwell, in his dissertation on vegetable chemistry, mentions that he has obtained from this bark a new crystalline principle, which he calls *cerasia*.

*Medical Properties.*

The bark, when taken into the system, produces some increase in the action of the heart and arteries, and is apt, in some persons, to produce some drowsiness. When continued for a length of time in small doses, it increases the tone of the stomach, and invigorates the whole system; but if taken in very large doses, it produces the contrary effects.

Dr. Eberle says, that "he has several times reduced his pulse from seventy-five to fifty strokes in a minute, by copious draughts of the cold infusion taken several times during the day, and continued for twelve or fourteen days." He further adds, "this effect has not, I believe, been noticed before, but from much experience with it, I am strongly inclined to believe that we may control the action of the heart and arteries, (*circulation*,) to a considerable extent, by the use of this substance."

This bark has been particularly recommended in intermittent fevers, phthisis, hectic fever, and in some instances with decided benefit. Its effects are pretty obvious, and we may easily perceive how this bark may produce this beneficial medication in cases of this nature. The infusion of wild cherry bark contains, as we have said, prussic acid, together with a bitter and an astringent principle, dissolved in a considerable quantity of water; and to the combination of these remedies, we must therefore ascribe the beneficial effects produced by them in consumption, and catarrhal affections.

“This is a very good article (says a writer) in dyspepsia, given in small doses; but if given in too large doses, it is apt to weaken rather than invigorate those organs.” It is useful as a corroborant in fever and ague. It enters into the wine bitters, given in intermittent fever. It is excellent in many forms of dysentery, and, combined with other articles, makes a good beer for the blood.

*Employment.*

In the form of infusion; as a tonic, should be given cold; the powdered bark, in the dose of from half a drachm to two, may be given.

---

No. 97.

## HEMLOCK. *The Bark, Leaves, and Oil.*

*Latin Name*—PINUS CANADENSIS.

*English Name*—COMMON HEMLOCK.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XIX.—MONOECIA.

Order XV.—MONADELPHIA.

*Genus*—PINUS—Staminate flowers; corol 0; calyx a peltate scale of the ament; anthers sessile, growing to the scales; pistillate flowers; calyx a 2-leaved scale of the cone; corol 0; pistil 1; 2-winged nuts or seeds under each scale.

*Species*—CANADENSIS—Leaves flat, denticulate, leaning two ways; strobiles ovate, terminal, acute; scales round; strobiles scarcely longer than the leaves.

*Description.*

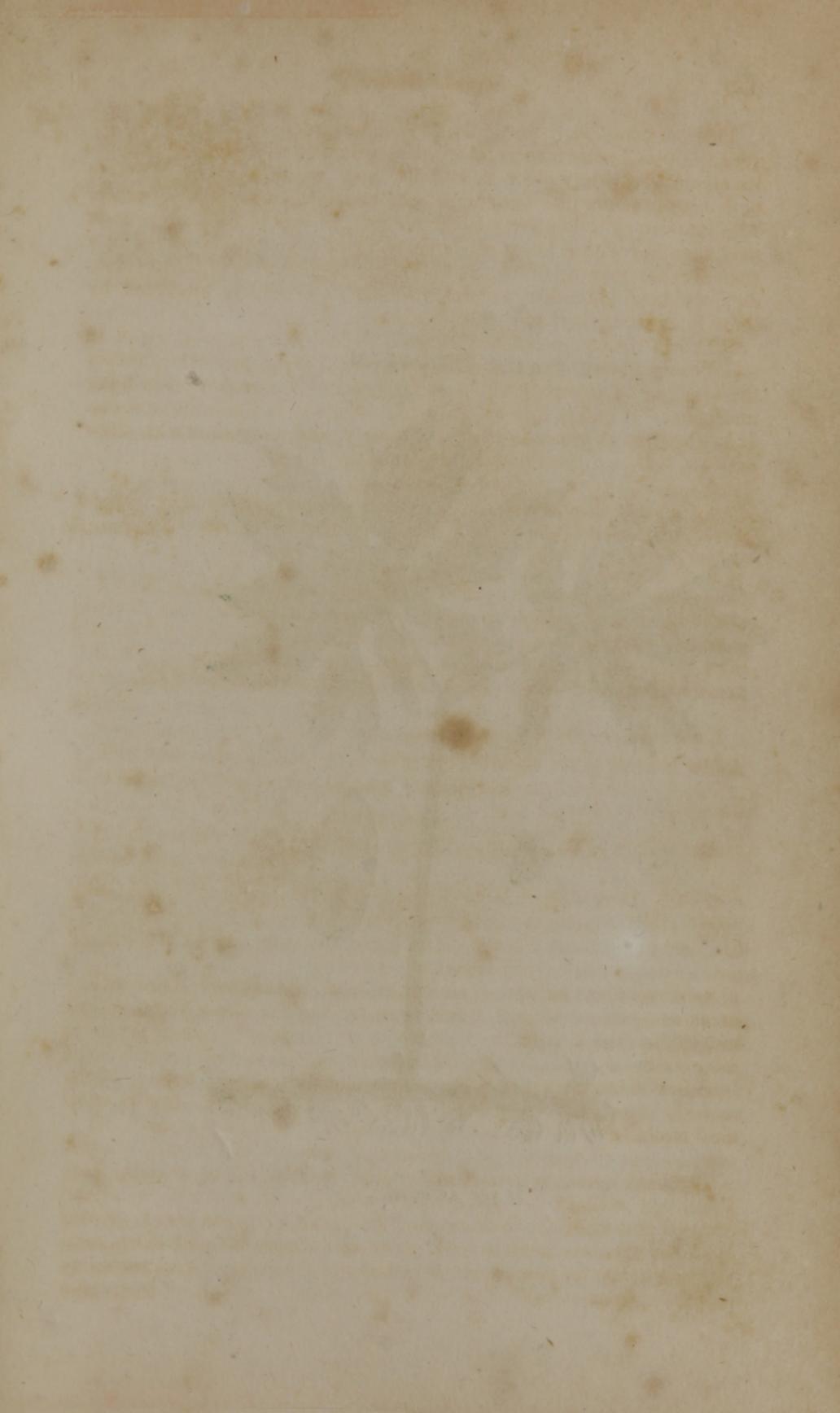
This is a large tree, growing throughout the northern states, and is so well known as to need no description. The bark is used for tanning leather.

*Qualities.*

The bark contains tannin, gallic acid, &c., and is very astringent.

*Medical Properties.*

A decoction of the bark makes an excellent astringent wash for falling of the bowels and womb. A tea or infusion made of the leaves, an Indian doctor informs me, is excellent to produce perspiration in incipient rheumatism. The oil is very valuable in painful rheumatic



No. 98.

PODOPHYLLUM PELTATUM.



MAY APPLE.

affections, externally; and internally, is very good in pain of the breast; also for quinsy, bathed on the throat. The gum makes an excellent plaster for lumbago, sciatica, and rheumatism. Dr. Thompson says, that a tea made of the bark is excellent to remove canker.

*Employment.*

It is said that a fomentation of the hemlock is very useful when applied to swelled testicles, arising from the mumps, when translated to these parts.

---

No. 98.

## MANDRAKE. *The Root.*

*Latin Name*—**PODOPHYLLUM PELTATUM.**

*Vulgar Names*—MAY APPLE, INDIAN APPLE, MANDRAKE, &c.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XII.—POLYANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—**PODOPHYLLUM**—Calyx 3-leaved; petals 6 to 9; berry 1-celled, many-seeded, crowned with the stigma.

*Species*—**PELTATUM**—Leaves palmate, peltate; sinus obtuse; segments cuneiform, bilobe, and toothed at the end.

*Description.*

The May apple has a jointed, running root, about half the size of the finger; the stem is about a foot high, and is enveloped at its base by the sheaths which covered it when in bud; it is smooth, round, and erect, dividing at the top into two round petioles, from three to six inches long; each petiole supports a large peltate, palmate leaf, smooth above, slightly pubescent beneath, divided into seven lobes, which are wedge-shaped, toothed at the extremity; in the fork of the stem is a solitary flower, on a round, nodding peduncle, one or two inches long; calyx 3; oval, obtuse, concave leaves; petals from 6 to 9, obovate, obtuse, concave, smooth, white; stamens shorter than the petals, curving upward; anthers oblong, twice as long as their filaments; germ oval, compressed, obscurely angular; stigma nearly sessile, convex; fruit large, ovate, and yellowish, which is 1-celled, many-seeded, and crowned with the stigma; flowers from March till May.

*Locality.*

The May apple inhabits in this country from New-England to Georgia, but is found in the interior of the country the most.

*Qualities.*

The dried root of the May apple is fragile, and easily reduced to powder. It has a peculiar and rather unpleasant taste, but not much acrimony. When chewed for some time, it manifests a strong, bitter

taste. It appears, according to Bigelow, to contain a resin, a bitter, extractive matter, fecula, and a slight proportion of gummy substance.

*Medical Properties.*

Purgative, deobstruent, anti-bilious, anthelmintic, hydrogogue, anti-dyspeptic.

The properties of this article are that of a sure and active cathartic, equal, if not superior, in some diseases, to that of jalap. "We have," says Professor Bigelow, "hardly any native plant which answers better the common purposes of jalap, aloes, and rhubarb, and which is more mild and safe in its operation."

We have found this root very valuable in many inveterate chronic diseases, such as venereal, scrofulous, bilious, dyspeptic, or chronic, affections of the liver, dropsy, &c.

The following is an excellent form to administer it:

*Compound Powder of Mandrake.*

Pulv. mandrake root,

Pulv. spearmint,

Cream tartar,

Equal parts; mix; dose, a teaspoonful in molasses or tea.

The mandrake is often considerably nauseating, and sometimes vomits, and, upon the whole, is not so pleasant as some other purgatives; but, as far as my experience goes, it has a peculiar effect upon all the secretions and excretions, stimulating them to a healthy action, and often answers the purpose both of an emetic and cathartic. It is excellent in chronic affections of the liver, indigestion, &c. I have invariably given this preparation with success in a variety of complaints. It is a powerful medicine, and requires caution in the administration of it.

"The root of this plant," says Miles, "is peculiarly calculated for a *cathartic*, extending its influence through every part of the system; touching every gland, when given in small doses, and repeated every two or three hours. It is particularly serviceable in all dropsical cases and intermittents, or in any other disease where a general action is wanting. It is often successfully employed as a *vermifuge*, in teaspoonful doses, and repeated." "I will remark," says he, "in regard to this medicine, also, that small doses excite a general action, and stimulate the glands to a discharge of their respective offices; while large doses evacuate, and exhaust the system."

We likewise have pleasure in stating the opinion of our worthy friend, and able practitioner, Dr. J. F. D. Lobstein, upon this article. He says it is of the greatest service in incontinence of urine; in which disease, he says, he has never known it to fail in procuring immediate relief.

*Employment.*

Internally, the pulverized root may be given in the dose of a small teaspoonful, or from twenty to thirty grains, combined with aromatics.



No. 99.

PAPAVER SOMNIFERUM.



GARDEN POPPY.

No. 99.

**POPPY.** *The Capsules, Flowers, and Gum.**Latin Name*—PAPAVER SOMNIFERUM.*English Name*—GARDEN POPPY.*Botanical Character.*

Class XII.—POLYANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—PAPAVER—Calyx 2-leaved; corol 4-petalled; stigma radiate; capsule superior, discharging its seeds by numerous pores under the permanent stigma.

*Species*—SOMNIFERUM—Calyx and capsules glabrous; leaves clasping the stem, cut, glaucous.

*Description.*

Stem cylindrical, smooth, from three to four feet high; leaves sessile, elongate, semi-amplexicaule, glaucous, irregularly cut on the borders; flowers solitary, terminal, red, or white, very large; corolla 4 petals, about 100 stamina; stigma orbicular, stellate; fruit, a round capsule, crowned by the persistent stigma, and containing numerous white or gray seeds, very small and reniform.

*Locality.*

This plant is indigenous to Asia, and is cultivated now, both in Europe and America.

*Qualities of Opium.*

Opium, such as it is brought from the Levant, is in flattened, circular masses, reddish externally, of a blackish-brown internally, hard, with a shining and compact fracture, of a bitter, acrid, and nauseous taste, of a peculiar *virose* smell, and of a specific gravity of 1.336. Worked with the fingers, this substance becomes soft, tenacious, and resembles pitch.

Opium is partly soluble in water, alcohol, ether, vinegar, lemon-juice, &c. Rubbed in warm water, five twelfths are dissolved, six twelfths are suspended, and one twelfth remains insoluble. Heated in the air, it inflames and burns rapidly. It is composed of an alkaline principle, discovered by Sertuerner, and called *morphia*, which, according to Robinet's experiments, is combined with a peculiar acid he designates by the name of *codeic*; of another peculiar acid, called *meconic acid*, which, in opium, seems to be combined with soda; of a crystallizable principle, discovered by Derosne, and named *narcotin*; finally, of extractive matter, mucilage, fecula, resin, fixed oil, a glutinous matter similar to caoutchouc, a vegeto-animal substance, vegetable fibres, and sand.

*Qualities of Morphia.*

This substance is white, in prismatic rectangular needles, inodorous.

rous, almost tasteless on account of its insolubility, but very bitter when it is dissolved. It is unalterable in the air.

According to Pelletier and Dumas, it is composed of carbon, 72.02; nitrogen, 5.53; hydrogen, 7.01; and oxygen, 14.84. It is almost insoluble in water; it dissolves slightly in this menstruum when boiling, and completely in alcohol, and in ether especially. Gently heated, morphia melts, and forms on cooling in a radiated mass; at a high temperature, it is decomposed. It possesses alkaline properties, turns green the syrup of violets, combines with diluted acids, and forms neutral salts. Mixed with nitric acid, it acquires a lively red colour, and the salts of iron in the maximum of oxidation, strike a fine blue colour with it.

#### *Medical Properties.*

The action of opium appears to be directly, or indirectly, upon the nervous system. When administered in small doses, it diminishes sensibility, and causes a tranquillity in the system, which is followed by sleep. It is very useful in diarrhœa and vomiting, to calm the irritation of the stomach and intestines. Taken when going to bed, it produces an equable glow throughout the system, produces sleep, calms pulmonary irritation, and most generally produces a moisture of the surface. In typhus fever, which is attended with local inflammation, opium, united with camphor and ipecacuanha, is attended, most generally, with very good success. In some acute inflammatory affections, after the symptoms of inflammation have subsided, and there still appears to be general irritation, produced by the disturbance of the nervous system, opium may be administered with benefit, to calm the nervous irritability which exists. But this plant is exceedingly abused. It is given by physicians too frequently and too indiscriminately. It is often prescribed, in some form or other, for almost every disease, by which the exciting cause of the complaint is locked in the system, instead of its being expelled.

It should be seldom used, merely as an anodyne; but when combined with other ingredients, with a view to act upon the secretions, it may be given in very many diseases, with signal benefit.

#### *Employment.*

Opium may be given in doses of from one to three grains. Laudanum, from 30 to 100 drops. A medium dose, for an adult, is 40 or 50 drops. A syrup, made of the capsules, is excellent for children, as the water takes up less of the narcotic principle than spirits. About a teaspoonful of it is a dose for a child of two years old. The product of this plant enters into the sudorific drops, diaphoretic powders, &c.



No. 100.  
PLANTAGO MAJOR.



LARGE PLANTAIN.

No. 100.

**PLANTAIN.** *The Root and Leaves.**Latin Name*—PLANTAGO MAJOR.*English Name*—LARGE PLANTAIN.*Botanical Character.*

Class IV.—TETRANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—PLANTAGO—Calyx 4-cleft; corol 4-cleft, with a reflected border; stamens very long; capsule superior, 2-celled, opening transversely.

*Species*—MAJOR—Leaves ovate, nearly glabrous, shorter than the petiole; scape round; spike with imbricate flowers; seeds numerous.

*Description.*

This plant has a fibrous root, sending out long oval leaves, irregularly dentated, of a pale-green colour; the under surface is nerved; there are generally from five to nine leaves. The flower-stem grows from six inches to a foot in height, crowned with a spike of clustered flowers, which are very small.

*Locality.*

This plant is indigenous to this country, and is found growing plentifully in meadows, pastures, by road-sides, and in gardens.

*Medical Properties.*

This plant is possessed of refrigerant, vulnerary, antiseptic, antihæmorrhagic, detergent, and subastringent properties. It is held in high repute, by some, in the cure of bites from poisonous serpents, and insects.

It was recorded in a Virginia paper, that a gentleman was bitten above the knee, by a spider. A few minutes after, he perceived a pain shooting upwards from the spot, which soon reached his heart. A quantity of plantain was immediately gathered and bruised, and the juice squeezed out and swallowed, which stopped the progress of the poison, so that a cure of the bite was obtained immediately.

Culpepper considers this to be the best plant in nature. He says, that if the juice of it be purified, and drank for several days, it will prevent all "torments and excoriations" of the bowels. Dioscorides thought it to be of service in tertian agues. The leaves, simmered in spirits, or fresh butter, makes an excellent ointment for erysipelas, tetter, or salt-rheum. It is also remarkably efficacious in poisons of all kinds.

A negro, at the south, obtained his freedom, by disclosing a nostrum for the bite of snakes; the basis of which was the plantain. It consisted in giving the expressed juice of plantain, and hoarhound, equal parts. A tablespoonful, to be repeated as often as the stomach would bear, and the same to be applied to the wound.

A writer states, that a toad, in fighting with a spider, as often as it was bit, retired a few steps, ate of the plantain, and then renewed the attack. The person deprived him of the plant, and it soon died.

No. 101.

**POKE.** *The Root, Leaves, and Berries.**Latin Name*—PHYTOLACCA DECANDRIA.*English Name*—POKE.*Vulgar Names*—POKE, SKOKE, GARGET, COAKUM.*Botanical Character.*

Class X.—DECANDRIA.

Order VI.—DECAGYNIA.

*Genus*—PHYTOLACCA—Calyx 0; corol 5-petalled, resembling a calyx; berry superior, 10-celled, 10-seeded.*Species*—DECANDRIA—Leaves ovate, acute at each end; flowers racemed; berries flattened at the ends.*Description.*

Stem from five to seven feet high, thick, round, branched, and glabrous; leaves ovate, narrow at both ends, acute, veined on the under side, and smooth on both; flowers in long racemes, often opposite to the leaves; perianthe 5-leaved, divisions concave and ovate, folding inwards; stamina short, from seven to twenty, with double anthers; styles from five to ten; fruit, a superior 10-celled, 10-seeded berry.

*Locality.*

This is a plant indigenous to America; but is now naturalized in Europe. It is found growing in all parts of the United States, along the way-sides, in woods, and fields, &c.

*Medical Properties.*

Drs. Bigelow, Fisher, Hayward, Shultz, and others, have tested the medical properties of this plant, and have proved, in their experiments, that it is a valuable remedy.

“As an emetic,” says a writer, “it seems hardly inferior to ipecacuanha; ten grains of the powder will seldom remain on the stomach, and twenty or thirty grains will always produce a powerful emesis, and sometimes catharsis. It operates with ease, and rarely occasions nausea, pain, or cramp; it is rather slow in its effects, but continues to operate for a longer period of time than is usual with emetics, though it is readily checked with opium.”

We, however, do not use it for an emetic.

The inspissated juice of the berries is of great service in rheumatism, and externally in ulcers. It has been considered by some practitioners to be of service in the venereal, &c.

We occasionally employ it in the cure of fistula; also as a discutient in hard, glandular tumours, and it frequently proves very efficacious.

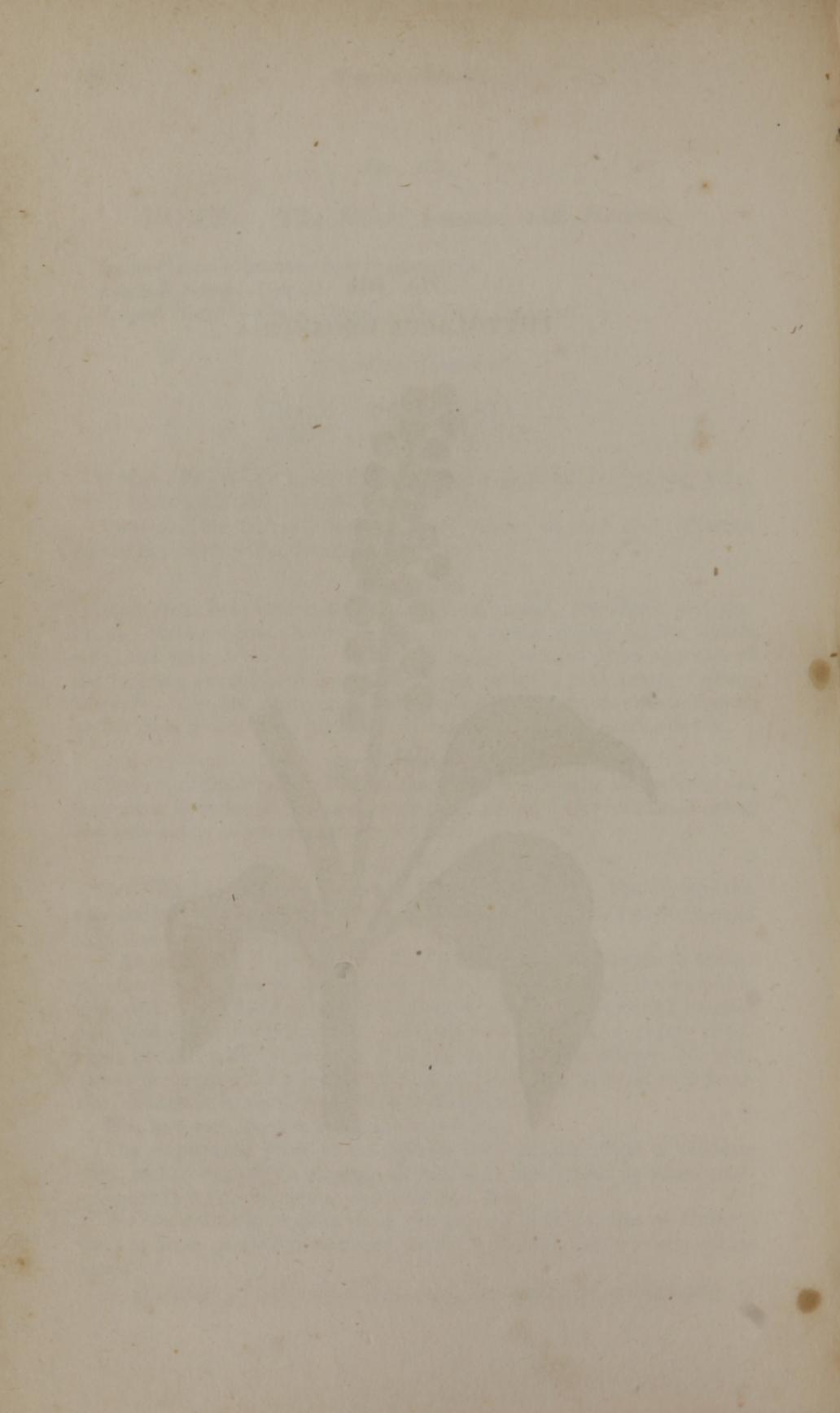
A graduate of our school has used the ointment successfully in

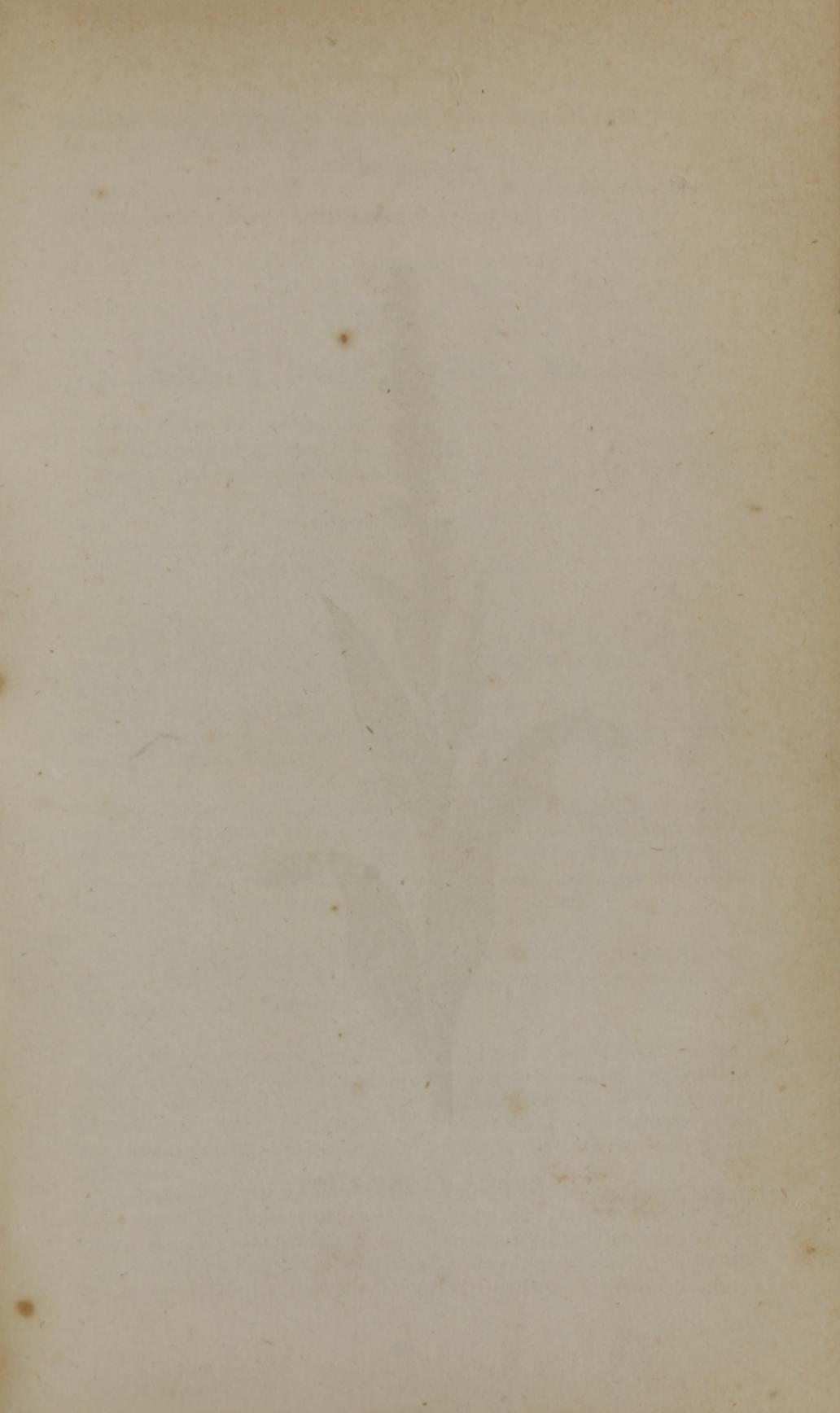
No. 101.

PHYTOLACCA DECANDRIA.



POKE.





No. 102.

POLYGALA SENECA.



SENECA SNAKE-ROOT.

bronchocele. The juice has removed a bony tumour from an animal, by rubbing it with it.

*Employment.*

We use it in the form of extract, and the inspissated juice of the berries; also in the form of ointment.

---

No. 102.

**SENECA SNAKE-ROOT. *The Root.***

*Latin Name*—POLYGALA SENEGA.

*English Name*—SENECA SNAKE-ROOT.

*Vulgar Name*—RATTLE-SNAKE ROOT.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XVI.—DIADELPHIA.

Order VIII.—OCTANDRIA.

*Genus*—POLYGALA—Calyx 5-leaved, two of them larger, wing-shaped, and coloured; corol irregular; legume obcordate, 2-celled, 2-valved.

*Species*—SENEGA—Stem erect, herbaceous, quite simple, leafy; leaves alternate, lanceolate, acute; spikes terminal, filiform; flowers beardless, alternate, white.

*Description.*

Stem herbaceous, from eight to ten inches high; leaves sessile, oval, of a light green colour; flowers small, in terminal spikes; calyx five deep and irregular divisions; corolla irregular, five petals; fruit, a compressed and bivalve capsule, with two monospermous cells, containing black elongated seeds, terminated in a point.

*Locality.*

This is a perennial plant, indigenous to America. It is found growing in nearly all the states in the Union, but more particularly in Pennsylvania and Virginia.

*Qualities.*

Root of a variable size, from that of a quill to the size of the little finger, contorted, ramose, having on one side a sort of longitudinal membranous margin. Its bark is grayish, resinous, and covering a whitish and lignous *medullium*. Its odour is weak and nauseous; its taste sweet at first, afterwards acrid and bitter; provokes coughing and salivation.

According to Mr. Gehlen, this root contains *senegin*, 6.15; resin, 7.5; sweet extractive matter, 26.85; gum and albumen, 9.5; lignous fibres, &c. 50. According to Dr. Giacomo Folchi, it is composed of a thick oil, partly volatile; free gallic acid; an acrid matter; a yellow colouring matter; a little wax; a gummy extract; a matter contain-

ing nitrogen, similar to gluten; woody fibres, sub-carbonate, sulphate, and muriate of potassa; carbonate, sulphate, and a little phosphate of lime; carbonate of magnesia, iron, and silex.

Mr. Peschier, an eminent pharmaceutist of Geneva, asserts, that he obtained from the polygala senega three new substances, which he calls *polygalina*, *polygalic acid*, and *isolisin*. The two first substances form in the root a polygalate of polygalina. Water and alcohol take up the remedial principles of this root.

Senegin seems to be the active principle of polygala. It is solid, brown, translucent, of an unpleasant taste; when it is reduced to powder, its smell provokes sneezing. It is insoluble in water and ether, but easily soluble in alcohol. It has not, as yet, been introduced into practice.

#### Medical Properties.

This article is possessed of very energetic, stimulant properties. If the dose of the root be large, it is apt to induce vomiting, together with alvine evacuations. This article has been highly recommended in *cynanche trachealis*, (croup,) but I have never seen any very great benefit arise from the use of this medicine in that disease. I have sometimes witnessed its good effects as a hydragogue, in dropsical complaints.

Dr. Chapman, of Philadelphia, speaks in the highest terms of this root, as an emmenagogue, but considers it to be of the greatest service where the *decidua* exists. On the other hand, Dr. Eberle affirms, that he has used this substance repeatedly, and most generally without success. He adds, that "Dr. Chapman has expressed an opinion much too favourable of its efficacy as an emmenagogue." In the latter stages of pneumonia, this article is of service as an expectorant.

#### Employment.

Dose of the pulverized root, from ten grains to half a drachm. Decoction: take one ounce of the root bruised, and simmer it in a close vessel, with a pint of boiling water, until the quantity is reduced to one third.



No. 103.

PÆONIA OFFICINALIS.



GARDEN PEONY.

No. 103.

**PEONY.** *The Root.**Latin Name*—**PÆONIA OFFICINALIS.***English Name*—**GARDEN PEONY.***Botanical Character.*Class XII.—**POLYANDRIA.**Order II.—**DIGYNIA.**

*Genus*—**PÆONIA**—Calyx 5-leaved ; corol 5-petalled, increased to a great number by culture ; styles ; capsules podlike, many-seeded.

*Species*—**OFFICINALIS**—Leaves decomposed, naked ; leaflets lobed, broad, lanceolate ; capsules nearly erect, downy.

*Description.*

The peony rises to the height of two or three feet ; stalks large, green, and branching ; leaves tolerably large, toothed, and red-coloured ; flowers terminal, standing on the top of the main stalks ; petals red, cordiform ; in the centre there are three seed-vessels, containing round black seeds when ripe ; roots many, thick, long, spreading, and running deep in the ground.

*Locality.*

The peony is cultivated in our gardens, as an ornamental flower. It is found growing in gardens throughout the United States.

*Qualities.*

The roots and seeds of the peony have, when fresh, a faint, unpleasant smell, somewhat of the narcotic kind, and a mucilaginous subacid taste, with a slight degree of bitterness and astringency. In drying, they lose their smell and part of their taste. Extracts made from them by water, are almost insipid, as well as inodorous ; but extracts made by rectified spirits, are manifestly bitterish, and considerably astringent. The flowers have rather more smell than any of the other parts of the plant, and a rough, sweetish taste, which they impart, together with their colour, both to water and spirit.

*Medical Properties.*

The roots, flowers, and seeds of the peony have been esteemed in the character of an anodyne and corroborant, but more especially the roots ; which, since the days of Galen, have been very commonly employed as a remedy for the epilepsy. For this purpose, it was usual to cut the root into thin slices, which were to be attached to a string, and suspended about the neck as an amulet ; if this failed of success, the patient was to have recourse to the internal use of this root, which Willis directs to be given in the form of a powder, and in the quantity of a drachm, two or three times a day, by which, as we are informed, both infants and adults were cured of this disease. Culpepper thinks

the seeds valuable in *incubus* attendant upon hydrophobic persons, taken in the morning, and at bed time. We use it only in the antispasmodic syrup, for epilepsy.

*Employment.*

Dose of the pulverized root or seeds, from thirty to forty grains.

---

No. 104.

## WHITE OAK. *The Bark.*

*Latin Name*—QUERCUS ALBA.

*English Name*—WHITE OAK.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XIX.—MONOECIA.

Order VI.—HEXANDRIA.

*Genus*—QUERCUS—Staminate flowers; calyx campanulate lobed; corol 0; stamina 5 to 10; pistillate flowers; calyx campanulate; very entire, rough; corol 0; style 1; stigmata 3; nut superior.

*Species*—ALBA—Leaves annual, pinnatifid; the sinuses narrowed; segments oblong, without points.

*Description.*

This tree rises fifty or sixty feet in height, sending off numerous large branches; leaves lacerated, ribbed, having long foot-stalks; fruit conical, surrounded at the base by a rough shell.

*Locality.*

Found growing in the forests throughout the United States abundantly.

*Qualities.*

Most, and perhaps all, the species of oak, have a high degree of astringency, depending upon tannin, which they possess in great quantities, and on account of which they are extensively used in the preparation of leather. The white oak is one of the American species, which is most esteemed for this property. The bark of the young branches is probably more astringent than that of the trunk, on account of the mass of dead cortical layers, which constitutes a part of the thickness of the latter.

*Medical Properties.*

Oak-bark has been given, in some instances, as a substitute for cinchona, to which, however, it is greatly inferior. Its chief use is an external astringent and antiseptic. A strong decoction is employed with advantage, as a gargle in cynanche, and as a lotion in gangrenous ulcers, and offensive discharges of different kinds.

The powder of this bark has, it is said, by inhaling, cured phthisis

No. 104.

QUERCUS ALBA.



WHITE OAK.



pulmonalis. It is used by us in *procedentia*, (or falling down of the uterus,) and *prolapsus ani*, in *leucorrhœa*, and all other diseases in which astringents are required. It enters into the "astringent decoction" of our pharmacopœia. The extract is used for hernia, or rupture, and ulcers. It forms an excellent wash, or injection.

*Employment.*

It is the basis of the astringent decoction. It enters into Ferris' cancer plaster, for cancers and inveterate ulcers.

---

No. 105.

## BLACKBERRY. *The Root and Berries.*

*Latin Name*—RUBUS VILLOSUS.

*English Name*—COMMON BLACKBERRY.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XI.—ICOSANDRIA.

Order XIII.—POLYGYNIA.

*Genus*—RUBUS—Calyx 5-cleft; corol 5-petalled; berry superior, composed of several single-seeded granulations.

*Species*—VILLOSUS—Leaflets in threes or fives, ovate, acuminate, sharply serrate, villous on both sides; stems and petioles prickly; racemes naked; petals lanceolate; flowers white.

*Description.*

The blackberry is too well known to need a description.

*Locality.*

This plant is found growing abundantly throughout the United States, and is indigenous to this country. Found growing along swamps and fences.

*Qualities.*

The root of this plant is contorted, of the size of a quill, black externally, and lighter colour internally. They are possessed of astringent qualities.

*Medical Properties.*

The bark of the root, formed into a syrup, is exceedingly valuable in chronic diarrhœa, and dysentery, cholera infantum, or summer complaint. It often proves a sovereign remedy, when all other remedies fail.

Dr. Chapman, in speaking upon the use of the blackberry, says: "Of the vegetable astringents, I have reason to believe that they (the black and dew berries) are among the most active and efficacious." In cholera infantum, says he, "to check the inordinate evacuations which attend the protracted stages of this disease, no remedy has ever done so much in my practice." In diarrhœa, proceeding from any cause, this article may be administered with great advantage, as

it will check the discharge, and give tone to the alimentary canal. It is a medicine much used by the Indians in dysentery; and it is said, that, in the Oneida tribe, five hundred were attacked with this disease in one season, and, by the use of the blackberry-root, all recovered, whilst their neighbours, the whites, fell before the disease; no doubt, in consequence of taking mercury, or some of the common agents made use of.

*Employment.*

The root may be given in powder, infusion, decoction, or syrup. Dose of the powder, from one to two drachms; decoction, one ounce of the bruised root, to a pint of water. I prescribe it in the form of syrup.

---

No. 106.

## CASTOR BEAN. *The Oil.*

*Latin Name*—RICINUS COMMUNIS.

*English Name*—CASTOR BEAN.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XIX.—MONOECIA.

Order XV.—MONADELPHIA.

*Genus*—RICINUS—Staminate flowers; calyx 5-parted; corol 0; filaments numerous, filiform; pistiliferous flowers; calyx 5-parted; corol 0; styles 3, cloven; capsule 3-celled, 3-valved; seed solitary.

*Species*—COMMUNIS—Leaves peltate, somewhat palmate; fruit prickly.

*Description.*

Stem straight, ramose, fistulous, glaucous and reddish; leaves alternate, peltate, palmate, with seven or nine lobes; flowers monoicous, united in extra-axillary and pyramidal clusters; male flowers, calyx, with five caducous divisions; ovary free, globular, 3-sided, and 3-celled; one very short style; three stigmas; fruit, a capsule, with three prominent sides, covered with prickles, and containing each one seed.

*Locality.*

This plant is a native of the East Indies, and Africa. In those countries, it is said to be perennial; but in our country, and in Europe, where it flourishes well, it is an annual plant.

*Qualities.*

The seeds of the ricinus are oval, flattened on one side, convex and round on the other, of a variable size, generally of the size of a French bean; smooth, shining, of a gray colour, with brown spots on their surface, with a fleshy and white appendix on the umbilicus; white inside; of a sweet taste at first, and afterwards acrid. The

No. 106.

RICINUS COMMUNIS.

ca



CASTOR BEAN.



oil obtained from it is of a yellowish-white, thick, viscous, and inodorous. It congeals only several degrees below the freezing point, and its specific gravity is greater than that of the other fixed oils.

From the recent experiments of Messrs. Lecanu and Bussy, castor oil submitted to distillation, has furnished a solid, spongy, and yellowish residue, amounting to nearly two thirds the quantity of the oil employed in the experiment, a very odorous volatile oil, which crystallizes on cooling, and two new acids, which they call *ricinic*, and *oleo-ricinic acids*, almost concrete, very acrid, to which they ascribe the active properties of the oil under consideration. Besides, it differs from the other fixed oils in this particular, that it is completely soluble in absolute alcohol and ether. Finally, it becomes easily rancid, and then acquires a very acrid taste.

#### *Medical Properties.*

The castor oil is a very mild cathartic, unloading the bowels of their contents, without occasioning any gastro-intestinal irritation, which renders it very useful in bowel complaints, by its oleaginous particles lubricating the inflamed mucous surface of the intestines. But where we wish to make a decided impression upon the system, or to unload the bowels of impacted mucus, we should not administer the oil, as it will pass the bowels without removing any mucus, bilious matter, or without making much impression upon the system. In piles, this medicine is useful, depending upon its mild laxative properties. If this oil become rancid, its mild properties are converted into those of an irritating quality, and produce effects resembling those medicines of a drastic nature. When it is rancid, it should never be administered in any form or disease. It is also serviceable in cholics, and in strangulated hernia. It is excellent in inflammation of the stomach and bowels, and in all diseases where an unirritating, emollient purgative is required.

#### *Employment.*

The dose of this oil, is from half an ounce to one ounce, poured on peppermint water, or in boiled milk, which disguises it in a manner.

No. 107.

**YELLOW DOCK.** *The Root.**Latin Name*—RUMEX CRISPUS.*English Name*—YELLOW DOCK.*Vulgar Name*—GARDEN PATIENCE.*Botanical Character.*

Class VI.—HEXANDRIA.

Order III.—TRIGYNIA.

*Genus*—RUMEX—Calyx 3-leaved; corol 3-petalled; petals connivent; seed 1, superior, 3-sided, naked; stigma many cleft.

*Species*—CRISPUS—Valves of the calyx ovate, entire, all marked with a grain-like appendage on the back; leaves lanceolate, undulate, acute.

*Description.*

Stem herbaceous, branched at top, four or five feet high, cylindrical and channelled; leaves elongate, sagittate, supported by long petioles; flowers greenish, in panicles at the top of the branches; calyx turbinate, with six divisions; six stamens inserted in the calyx; three stigmas; fruit triangular.

*Locality.*

Plant perennial, indigenous to Europe, and naturalized in America. Grows abundantly in damp places, in gardens, &c.; flowering in the summer.

*Qualities.*

Root long, fibrous, fusiform, brownish externally, yellowish internally, almost inodorous, and of an acrid and bitter taste. The leaves possess a sub-acid taste.

This substance, of which no accurate analysis has as yet been made, seems to contain sulphur in a free state, some oxalate of lime, starch, and some extractive principles soluble in water.

*Medical Properties.*

This plant is slightly tonic, narcotic, and detergent. The decoction of this root drunk, is considered very useful in the cure of cancers. A poultice of these roots applied to indolent swellings, is very useful to discuss them. An ointment is also good to discuss indolent glandular tumours. Thatcher says, it will effectually cure the itch. A syrup made of the root, is excellent to eradicate scrofulous and other taints of the system.

*Employment.*

A decoction of the roots made and drunk. Also ten grains of the pulverized root may be given as a dose.

No 107.

RUMEX CRISPUS.



YELLOW DOCK.





No. 108.

RHEUM PALMATUM.



RHUBARB.

No. 108.

**RHUBARB.** *The Root.**Latin Name*—RHEUM PALMATUM.*English Name*—RHUBARB.*Botanical Character.*

Class IX.—ENNEANDRIA.

Order III.—TRIGYNIA.

*Genus*—RHEUM—Calyx 0; corol 6-cleft, permanent; seed 1, triangular.*Species*—PALMATUM—Leaves palmate, acute, roughish, with the cavity at the base dilated; petioles obsoletely grooved above and rounded at the edge; berries dull-red.*Description.*

Stem simple, straight, cylindrical, from two to four feet high, ramose at top; leaves very large, petiolate, the limb divided in seven acute lobes, irregularly cut on the sides; flowers small, yellowish, very numerous, in an elongate panicle at the top of the stem; calyx 5 or 6-divided; 9-stamina; 5-simple stigmas, almost sessile; fruit, a capsule with 3 prominent angles.

*Locality.*

A perennial plant, native of China and Tartary; cultivated in various parts of Europe, especially in France; and it is likewise produced in America.

*Qualities.*

We find in commerce three principal species of rhubarb, viz: The *Russian rhubarb*, the most valued of the three, is in pieces somewhat flattened, irregular, sometimes angular; smooth, with a hole in the middle, of a yellow colour externally; irregularly marked internally, with red and white veins; of a compact fracture; of a strong peculiar odour; of a bitter and astringent taste; gritty under the teeth; dying the saliva of a saffron-yellow colour; its powder is of a pure yellow.

The *Chinese rhubarb* is in round pieces, larger than those of the preceding, not so smooth, nor so well prepared; generally with small holes, of a dirty-yellow colour, and covered over with a yellowish powder. Their texture is compact, of a dull-red colour, and marked internally with white veins; of a dull and rough fracture; gritty under the teeth; having a taste and a smell similar to the preceding.

The *rhubarb* cultivated in France, and of late in England, is less esteemed than the others, and is not furnished by the *rheum palmatum* alone, but also by the *R. undulatum* and *compactum*. It is cultivated on a large scale at Rheumpole, in the department of Morbihan. This species is in pieces resembling very much the exotic rhubarbs in appearance and shape, but they are easily distinguished from them by their exterior, which is slightly red, and possessing a sweeter smell, being very slightly bitter, mucilaginous, and sweet, and principally for their not being gritty under the teeth.

The *Russian* and *Chinese rhubarbs* are very similar in their composition; they contain a peculiar principle, to which they are indebted for their smell, taste, and colour, which has been called *rhabarbarin*; a small quantity of fixed sweet oil, some super-malate of lime, gum, starch, oxalate of lime in the proportion of one third of its weight, some lignin, and salts of lime and potassa. The French rhubarb differs from the others, inasmuch as it contains only one tenth of oxalate of lime, a larger proportion of starch, and a more considerable quantity of colouring principle, of a reddish hue. Alcohol dissolves 2.7 in 10 parts of rhubarb, ether 1.5, and boiling water, almost one half. It is necessary to remark that this root loses part of its purgative properties by ebullition in water, and becomes more bitter and astringent.

#### Medical Properties.

The root of this plant is a valuable and singular cathartic, differing from all others of the materia medica. It operates first, by evacuating the intestinal canal, and then gently astringing or restoring the tone of it. Upon these singular properties combined, (purgative and astringent,) depend its utility in dysentery and diarrhœa. In *cholera* its medicinal properties are heightened by the addition of an alkali. And in other diseases depending upon a lax state of the muscular fibres of the intestines, together with the existence of an acrid state of the fluids, this preparation is exceedingly useful. Its operation in those disordered states of the bowels is by neutralizing the acid, by evacuating the contents of the bowels, and then by gently astringing the relaxed fibres. I have often been astonished that this valuable plant should be neglected by physicians, particularly in bowel complaints, and mercury substituted, when this mineral invariably injures, while the rhubarb proves a sovereign remedy.

#### Employment.

The dose of the pulverized root is from thirty to forty grains as a cathartic, or it may be given in the form of syrup or cordial, which renders it a very pleasant medicine. It forms the base of our neutralizing cordial and mixture.



No. 109.

RHUS TYPHINUM.



COMMON SUMACH.

No. 109.

**SUMACH. *Bark of the Roots, and Berries.****Latin Name*—RHUS TYPHINUM.*English Name*—COMMON SUMACH.*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order III.—TRYGYNIA.

*Genus*—RHUS—Calyx 5-parted, inferior; corol 5-petalled; berry 1-seeded.

*Species*—TYPHINUM—Branches and petioles very villose; leaves pinnate; leaflets lanceolate, pointed, sharply serrate; berries red, in close tufts at the end of the branches.

*Description.*

There are two kinds of the common upland sumach, one known as the narrow-leaved sumach, the other as the Pennsylvania sumach. The latter is smooth, and rises to the height of ten or fifteen feet; the leaves are feathered, sawed, lanced, naked on both sides, and change to a beautiful red in autumn; the seeds are in large bunches, arranged like the flowers, are red, and covered with a white powder, of an agreeable acid taste.

*Locality.*

It grows throughout the United States, in barren fields, by the sides of fences, generally in gravelly soils.

*Medical Properties.*

The two species above mentioned are considerably astringent. An infusion of the berries, sweetened with honey, is sometimes used as a gargle in sore throats, and for cleansing the mouth in putrid fevers.

The bark of the root is considered a very great antiseptic; in form of poultices for old ulcers, it is hardly equalled by any; in decoction, good for cutaneous eruptions and scrofula. It is said to be efficacious in the venereal, combined with the bark of slippery elm and white pine, in decoction, and taken freely.

*Employment.*

Sumach bark is used in the form of decoction, for prolapsus ani, falling of the bowél, also of the womb. A decoction of the berries makes an excellent gargle for the quinsy, and putrid sore-throat.

No. 110.

**BITTERSWEET.** *The Bark of the Root.**Latin Name*—SOLANUM DULCAMARA.*English Name*—BITTERSWEET.*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—SOLANUM—Corol monopetalous, wheel-form; anthers slightly adhering, opening by two pores at the top; berry superior, 2-celled.

*Species*—DULCAMARA—Stem unarmed, woody, climbing, flexuous; upper leaves halbert-shaped; lower ones cordate; clusters cymed; berries scarlet.

*Description.*

Stems sarmentose, lignous at their base, herbaceous in the rest of their length, several feet long; leaves alternate, tri-lobed; flowers violet, pedunculate, and in clusters; calyx persistent, very small; corolla with narrow lobes, marked at their base with two small green dots; stamina partly united in a cone; fruit, an ovoid, red berry.

*Locality.*

This is an under shrub, indigenous to Europe, and is now naturalized in this country. It flowers in June and July.

*Qualities.*

The woody part, cut in small pieces and split in two, is only employed. This plant possesses a strong and virous smell, which becomes weaker on dessication, and a bitter taste, leaving after it a sweetish taste.

Bittersweet contains an alkaloid substance, discovered by Desfosses, and called by him *solania*, combined with a peculiar acid, discovered and denominated *solanic acid*, by Peschier; and several salts with base of lime and potassa. Water dissolves its active principles.

*Medical Properties.*

Dulcamara, when given internally, produces irritation in the digestive canal, and when absorbed, it appears to act principally upon the cutaneous vessels. It does, in fact, cause a perspiration, and a pricking and itching sensation of the skin. It acts likewise upon the nervous system, as its employment is sometimes followed by some slight convulsions, and a degree of heaviness in the head. It is very beneficial when administered internally, in combination with yellow dock, in scrofulous and scirrhus diseases. It is also beneficial in liver complaints, and in all cutaneous diseases, and in ill-conditioned ulcers.

*Employment.*

Dose of the powder, from half to one drachm. Decoction and infusion, from half to one ounce to a quart of water.

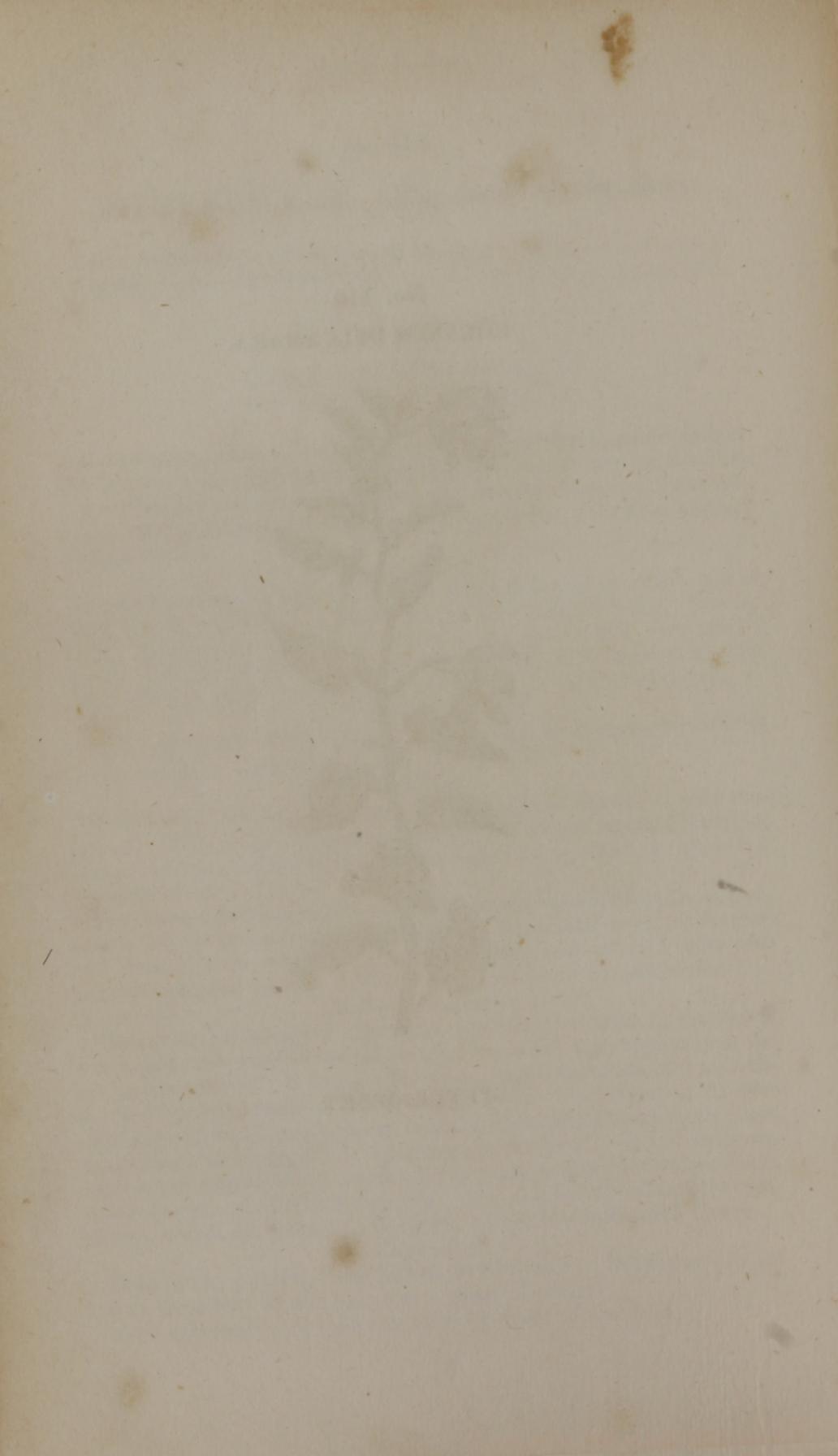
Used externally, an ointment must be made of the bark.

No. 110.

SOLANUM DULCAMARA.



BITTERSWEET.





No. 111.

SANGUINARIA CANADENSIS.



BLOOD ROOT.

No. 111.

**BLOOD-ROOT. *The Root.****Latin Name*—SANGUINARIA CANADENSIS.*English Name*—BLOOD-ROOT.*Botanical Character.*

Class XII.—POLYANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—SANGUINARIA—Calyx deciduous, 2-leaved; corol 8-petalled; stigma sessile; silique ovate, 1-celled, 2-valved, acute at each end.

*Species*—CANADENSIS—Scape simple, 1-flowered; leaves lobed; flower white; root tuberous, reddish, horizontal.

*Description.*

Scape uniflore, proceeding from one end of the root, rising perpendicularly to the height of six to eight inches; 1 solitary leaf, radical, reniform, and lobed, attaining its full growth only after the blossoming of the plant; calyx 2-leaved, deciduous; petals 8; stigma sessile, 2-grooved; capsule superior, oblong, 1-celled, 2-valved; apex attenuated; receptacles 2, filiform, marginal; seeds small, round, and black.

*Locality.*

This is an indigenous plant of this country, found growing in low grounds, among rocks, in meadows, or in woods near meadows.

*Qualities.*

Root tuberous, of the size of the finger, two or three inches long, with a curvature at each end; several roots connected together by numerous fasciculate fibres, originating from the main body; brown externally; when cut, a juice of a reddish-orange colour is abundantly discharged through numerous pores. The dried root is wrinkled, having considerably diminished in size; its fracture is resinous, and of a deep red colour. Its taste is bitter, acrid, and pungent, leaving an impression in the fauces for some time after it has been chewed.

According to Dr. Fitzgerald Bird's analysis, it appears to contain cinchona, extractive matter, a gum resin, a resin and gallic acid in a state of combination. The colouring principle of this root resides chiefly in its resinous parts, the alcoholic solution being always more than twice as highly coloured as the aqueous. Dr. Dana, of New-York, obtained from it a peculiar alkaline substance, which has been called *sanguinara*.

*Medical Properties.*

This root is emetic, cathartic, sudorific, and emmenagogue; detergent, expectorant, &c. "The medicinal properties of the *sanguinaria*," says Eberle, "have been variously represented, and its powers

do not appear to be, as yet, well understood. Dr. Bigelow considers this root as an acrid narcotic. Dr. Bird says, that its medicinal properties are in *every respect* similar to those which characterize the cinchona officinalis, (or Peruvian bark,) and the late Dr. Barton valued it chiefly for its emetic and expectorant powers. Its properties are certainly very peculiar, being capable of producing tonic, narcotic, stimulant, or emetic effects, according to the dose and form in which it is administered. Taken in a large dose, it produces nausea, heat in the stomach, faintness, and often vertigo and indistinct vision, and finally vomiting. These effects are produced by doses of from eight to twenty grains; in smaller doses, its effects on the pulse are analogous to those of digitalis. I have noticed this effect in several instances. Given in such doses as are not sufficient to produce nausea, it acts as a stimulant tonic. Applied in the form of powder to fungous flesh, it evinces pretty active escharotic properties.

“From the concurrent testimony of a number of eminent practitioners, the sanguinaria appears to be entitled to very considerable attention as an article of the materia medica. Professor Francis, of New-York, in a very interesting paper on the medical properties of this plant, states, that he had used it ‘with essential benefit in a long protracted and distressing affection of the chest. The patient had laboured under repeated attacks of pneumonia, and notwithstanding a very active treatment, had suffered by hæmorrhage from the lungs. The consequences were, much constitutional debility, and habitual returns of spasmodic dyspnœa, similar to those of whooping-cough. The tincture of the sanguinaria, to the amount of twenty drops, three times a day, has obviated the most formidable symptoms, and given strength and vigour to the constitution.’ Dr. Ives, of New-Haven, also speaks very favourably of its remedial powers in diseases of the lungs and liver. ‘In plethoric constitutions,’ he observes, ‘when respiration is very difficult, the cheeks and hands become livid, the pulse full, soft, vibrating, and easily compressed; the blood-root has done more to obviate the symptoms and remove the disease, than any remedy he has used.’ It should be given in large doses in cases of this kind, and repeated until it produces vomiting. He also recommends it as highly useful in influenza, whooping-cough, and croup. In this latter disease, it must be given so as to produce vomiting.

“Dr. Francis, in the paper which I have already quoted, states, that he has used this remedy with advantage in a formidable case of acute rheumatism occurring in a gouty habit, the patient having been previously prepared by cathartics and sudorifics. The patient took thirty drops of the saturated alcoholic solution three times a day. Dr. Macbride, of Charleston, S. C., in a letter to Dr. Bigelow, states, that he has found it useful in hydrothorax, ‘given in doses of sixty drops, three times a day, and increased until nausea followed each dose.’ I have administered the saturated tincture in doses of about twenty drops a day, with unequivocal benefit, in an asthmatic affection. In this instance, the pulse became reduced about ten strokes in a minute. In another case of weakness of the breast, and copious mucous expectoration, it produced a similar diminution of the action

of the pulse; but its good effects were not so conspicuous as in the former instance.

“As an external remedy, the powdered root has been found very beneficial in ill-conditioned ulcers with callous edges, and an ichorous discharge. Professor Smith, of Hanover, New-Hampshire, states, that he has cured several polypi of the soft kind, by using it as a snuff.

“Dr. Tully, who has written a very long communication on *sanguinaria canadensis*, thinks that, besides acting as an emetic, this root decidedly possesses deobstruent properties, without producing emesis or catharsis.”

This root is efficacious in bleeding of the lungs, croup, scarlet fever, jaundice, &c. We also use it in the form of snuff, for the cure of polypus, and likewise in combination with other articles in pulmonary diseases. We use it also in the form of extract, and the powdered root as an *escharotic*, in foul ulcers.

Dr. Woodruff, a botanical physician, of Orange county, in this state, informs me, that he has recently had considerable practice in the malignant scarlatina, which has prevailed as an epidemic in that section of the country, and that he has treated the disease with remarkable success, by the administration of mild vegetable *emetics*, purgatives, and sudorifics. But the most signal benefit, he states, was derived from the blood-root used in the following manner:

#### *For Malignant Scarlet Fever.*

Blood-root, (*sanguinaria canadensis*,) pulverized, from 20 to 30 grains, or a teaspoonful, in half a pint of boiling water. Strain off the infusion, and sweeten with honey. Dose, a teaspoonful, for a child of from two to four years of age. Repeat every hour through the day, if the child can bear it. If the surface gets broken, and becomes ulcerated, wash the parts with the same infusion.

Dr. W. states, that the virtue of this root is too little understood. He uses it in bilious, herpetic, and pulmonary affections, as an expectorant, deobstruent, tonic, and antiseptic, creating a healthy action in the biliary organs and stomach.

Dr. Wolcott states, that “the *sanguinaria*, two drachms of the root put to half a pint of boiling water, is highly beneficial in pneumonia, attended with expectoration of mucus, streaked with blood. It should be given after the action of a gentle emetic and mild laxative.

“Dose of the above infusion, a teaspoonful every two hours throughout the day.”

#### *Employment.*

Dose of the powdered root, as an emetic, from ten to fifteen grains, &c. Given also in the form of syrup, infusion, tincture, and extract.

No. 112.

**PINK.** *The Leaves, Stems, and Roots.**Latin Name*—SPIGELIA MARILANDICA.*English Name*—CAROLINA PINK.*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—SPIGELIA—Corol monopetalous, funnel-form; capsule double, 2-celled, many-seeded; stigma simple.

*Species*—MARILANDICA—Stem quadrangular, erect; leaves sessile, ovate, lanceolate, acuminate, entire; flowers large, spiked, swelling in the middle, deep red.

*Description.*

Stems numerous, from one to two feet high, 4-sided, smooth, and of a purplish colour; leaves few, sessile, opposite, ovate, and acuminate; flowers on a unilateral spike, leaning towards one side, and composed of from four to twelve flowers; calyx 5-parted; corolla funnel-shape, contracted at top, with five acute segments, of a beautiful carmine colour externally, except towards the base, where it is blended with white, of an orange colour inside; anthers convergent; capsule didymous, 2-celled, 4-valved, containing many seeds.

*Locality.*

This is a perennial herbaceous plant, indigenous to this country. Found growing in the southern states, from Maryland to Florida.

*Qualities.*

Root consisting of a great number of slender and blackish fibres, forming together a large bunch. They are sent from the south in bundles of twenty to twenty-five inches long, together with the stems, furnished with their leaves. Their taste is bland, and somewhat nauseous.

It contains a large quantity of mucilage, but it does not appear to contain resin.

*Medical Properties.*

This article is well known to possess surprising anthelmintic, or vermifuge properties, which act particularly upon the kind of worm called lumbrici, by destroying them. In this country, this medicine has superseded the use of almost all other worm medicines. In its recent state it is supposed to be more certain in its operation than when it becomes old. It is, however, a powerful medicine when given in large doses, producing all the effects of narcotic substances.

Dr. H. Thompson found it to produce acceleration of the pulse, flushed face, drowsiness, and a sensation of stiffness of the eyelids.

Dr. Eberle mentions a case where a strong decoction of the root, administered to a child of six years old, occasioned a complete mental

derangement, of the same nature as that which is sometimes produced by the seeds of stramonium. These symptoms went off in the course of twenty-four hours, and left him quite as well as he had been before he took the pink-root.

Dr. Chapman supposes that the virtues of this medicine, as an anthelmintic, depend upon its narcotic properties. It likewise possesses cathartic properties, in a slight degree. This medicine may be given in powder or decoction. Of the powder, the dose for a child is from five to ten grains, and of the decoction, half an ounce, or more, to be repeated occasionally. Whenever this article is given as a vermifuge, some brisk cathartic should be added, as senna, &c. In doing so, we increase the powers of the remedy, and prevent any unpleasant nervous symptoms.

#### *Employment.*

Dose of the powder, as above; decoction, from half to one ounce, in a pint of water, given by wineglassfuls every two or three hours; but it is generally combined with senna leaves, in order to procure the expulsion of worms as soon as they have been destroyed or weakened by the vermifuge. The following form is remarkably efficacious. Take equal parts of pink-root and leaves, senna and manna; make a strong tea or infusion; sweeten. To a child, four or five years old, give a gill, three or four times a day, until it acts upon the bowels. For particulars, see Pharmacy.

---

No. 113.

### COMFREY. *The Root.*

*Latin Name*—SYMPHITUM OFFICINALE.

*English Name*—COMFREY.

#### *Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—SYMPHITUM—Corol, with a tubular swelling border; the throat closed with subulate rays; calyx 5-parted.

*Species*—OFFICINALE—Leaves ovate, lanceolate, decurrent, rugose.

#### *Description.*

Stem herbaceous; leaves oval, lanceolate, acute; flowers white, or of a rose colour, in spikes at the extremity of the branches; corolla tubular, furnished with five lanceolate and acute processes.

#### *Locality.*

This plant is indigenous to Europe, but naturalized in this country, growing in gardens and meadows. Flowers in May and June.

#### *Qualities.*

The root of this plant, formerly frequently used, is large, elongated,

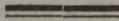
blackish on the outside, white inside ; at first of an insipid and mucilaginous taste, but becoming afterwards slightly astringent. It contains a good deal of mucilage, and seems to contain also a little gallic acid ; but in such small quantity that it cannot have any influence on its mode of action.

*Medical Properties.*

The roots of this plant are demulcent, pectoral, and astringent ; very useful in diarrhœas, dysentery, and in hæmoptisis ; likewise as a demulcent, in pulmonary irritations, arising from colds, coughs, &c. In phthisis pulmonalis, (consumption,) it is a valuable remedy. We make extensive use of it, in combination with other ingredients, and principally in the form of syrup.

*Employment.*

Decoction, from half to one ounce, in one quart of water. It enters into the pulmonary balsam, and restorative cordial, and is very useful in leucorrhœa, (whites,) debility, &c.



No. 114.

**DWARF ELDER.** *The Flowers, Berries, and inner Bark.*

*Latin Name*—SAMBUCUS EBULUS.

*English Name*—DWARF ELDER.

*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order III.—TRIGYNIA.

*Genus*—SAMBUCUS—Corol 5-cleft ; calyx 5-parted, superior ; berry 3-seeded.

*Species*—EBULUS—Cymes 3-parted ; stipules folioceous ; stem herbaceous.

*Description.*

It rises six feet in height, is herbaceous and erect ; leaves opposite, pinnate, composed of four or five pairs, with an odd one at the extremity ; pinæ lanceolate, unequal, and serrated ; flowers in terminal corimbi ; calyx cut into five teeth ; corolla monopetalous, wheel-shaped, cut into five large segments ; fruit, a round, black, single-celled berry, containing three irregular shaped seeds.

*Locality.*

This is a perennial plant, growing abundantly throughout the United States. Found along fences, and road sides. Flowers in July and August, and its berries are ripened in September.

No. 112.

SPIGELIA MARILANDICA.



CAROLINA PINK.





No 113,

SYMPHITUM OFFICINALE.



COMFREY.

*Medical Properties.*

A decoction of this bark has been found beneficial in dropsy. The extract of the inner bark of elder is very good in piles and dropsy. The juice of the inner bark, taken in the dose of a gill, vomits and purges powerfully.

*Employment.*

In the form of decoction, extract, &c.

---

No. 115.

**MUSTARD.** *The Seeds.*

*Latin Name*—SINAPIS ALBA.

*English Name*—WHITE MUSTARD.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XIV.—TETRADYNAMIA.

Order II.—SILICUOSA.

*Genus*—SINAPIS—Calyx spreading; claws of the corol straight; glands between the shorter stamens and the pistil, and between the longer stamens and the calyx; silique beaked; partition longer than the valves.

*Species*—ALBA—Siliques bristly, swollen at the seeds, shorter than the 2-edged beak; leaves pinnatifid.

*Description.*

Stem herbaceous, cylindrical, two or three feet high; leaves lyrate, large, sessile, smooth; flowers yellow, small, disposed in spikes; calyx spreading, petals straight; fruit, a slender tetragonal silique.

*Qualities.*

Mustard seed is spheroidal, externally of a brownish-red; internally of a lively yellow colour, of a sharp and slightly bitter taste; inodorous when not comminuted; it acquires a strong and very penetrating smell, when it is bruised in water; and gives rise to a peculiar volatile principle, which powerfully irritates the eyes.

According to Thibierge, it contains, 1st, a fixed oil of a greenish-yellow colour, soluble in alcohol; 2d, a volatile oil of a slight yellow, heavy, of an acrid and sharp taste, soluble in water, and containing sulphur; 3d, vegetable albumen; 4th, mucilage; 5th, sulphur; 6th, nitrogen; and 7th, calcareous salts. The active principle of mustard seems to reside in the volatile oil. The fixed oil contains, according to Garot and Henry, jr., a fat substance, analogous to cholesterine; a red colouring matter, and a crystallizable acid, which they have called *sulpho-sinapic*.

*Medical Properties.*

Mustard seeds are stimulant and rubefacient. Bruised, and mixed

with Indian meal and vinegar, to form a paste, or plaster, and, spread on cloth, is excellent to relieve inflammation, both superficial and deep-seated; and I have found it much preferable to the cantharides, or Spanish flies. The mustard cataplasm, or poultice, is also used to arouse the system in apoplectic and comatose affections, and in the last stages of low typhus fever. As a preventive to the return of convulsions in children and adults, this cataplasm should never be omitted. It is a remedy which may be used to attract and fix gout on the extremities, and likewise in bringing out eruptive diseases, that have left the surface. In those cases they should be applied to the extremities. In the latter stages of typhus fevers, the application of the mustard cataplasm is often succeeded by an erysipelatous inflammation. In the treatment of cholera, both spasmodic and common, large mustard poultices applied to the abdomen, very much assist in overcoming those diseases. They possess a stimulating property, and are therefore beneficial in intermittents, attended with a cold habit. In dyspepsia, and in obstinate costiveness, they are useful, by stimulating the intestines. Indeed, mustard is an excellent auxiliary in producing revulsion, or in equalizing the circulation.

In case of accidents by poisons, a teaspoonful of mustard-flour, promptly administered, is a very valuable remedy, expelling it from the stomach before a practitioner can be called.

*Employment.*

Dose of the seeds, in dyspepsia and costiveness, a teaspoonful three or four times a day; cataplasm as above. It is an excellent condiment with food, in dyspeptic cases. The black mustard is equally as beneficial as the white.

---

No. 116.

**GARDEN NIGHTSHADE.** *The whole Plant.*

*Latin Name*—SOLANUM NIGRUM.

*English Name*—GARDEN NIGHTSHADE.

*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—SOLANUM—Corol monopetalous, wheel-form; anthers slightly adhering, opening by 2 pores at the top; berry superior, 2-celled.

*Species*—NIGRUM—Stem unarmed, herbaceous; branches angled, dentate; leaves ovate, angular, toothed, and waved; racemes nodding; berries black.

*Description.*

Stalk upright, cylindrical, green, and hollow; it rises from one to two feet high; ramous leaves, green, ovate, dentated edges, serrate;

No. 114.

SAMBUCUS EBULUS.



DWARF ELDER.





No. 115.

SINAPIS ALBA.



WHITE MUSTARD.

flowers white, standing upon the tops of the stalk ; petals 5-pointed ; stamens 5, yellow, and set together ; fruit, a berry, black, of the size of a pea, containing whitish, rounded, flattened seed.

*Locality.*

An annual plant, native of Europe, and naturalized in this country ; found growing along old walls, fences, and in gardens.

*Qualities.*

The root is white, a little woody, when in the state of maturity. It contains, like the bitter-sweet, solania united with malic acid.

*Solania*.—An alkaloid proximate principle, discovered by Mr. Desfosses in the bitter-sweet, and several other plants of the genus *solanum*. Since, Mr. Peschier has ascertained, that this substance was in combination with a peculiar acid, which he has called *solanic acid*.

*Solania* is pulverulent, white, opaque, pearl-like, inodorous, of a nauseous and bitter taste.

It is unalterable in the air, insoluble in cold water, soluble in 8000 of this mentruum when boiling, and in a very small quantity in alcohol. Its alkaline properties are very weak ; it restores to their blue colour the solutions of litmus reddened by an acid. It combines easily with an acid, and forms with them perfectly neutral and uncrystallizable salts. Heated, it decomposes without melting or evaporating.

According to Mr. Magendie's experiments, *solanica* produces at first violent vomiting, then somnolency, and drowsiness ; which proves that it acts on the encephalon. It has not as yet been employed as a remedy. It might, perhaps, be administered in the state of an acetate, in the same cases in which bitter-sweet is indicated, in the dose of one eighth to one fourth of a grain in pills.

*Medical Properties.*

Narcotic and discutient. We use it only in the discutient ointment of our pharmacopœia.

*Employment.*

See discutient ointment.

No. 117.

**SARSAPARILLA. The Root.***Latin Name*—SMILAX SARSAPARILLA.*English Name*—SARSAPARILLA.*Botanical Character.*

Class XX.—DIOECIA.

Order VI.—HEXANDRIA.

*Genus*—SMILAX—Staminate flowers; calyx 6-leaved, inferior; corol 0; anthers adhering to the filaments; pistillate flowers; calyx 6-leaved, inferior, corol 0; styles minute, 3; berry 3-celled; 1 to 3-seeded.

*Species*—SARSAPARILLA—Prickly; leaves unarmed, lance-ovate, retuse, with a point sub-5-nerved.

*Description.*

Stem articulate, branchy, furnished with recurved thorns; leaves alternate, tough, cordiform, furnished with 2 tendrils at their base; flowers greenish, dioicous, in small simple umbels upon a common pedicle; calyx 6-divided; male flowers, 6 stamina; female flowers, one ovary with 3 monospermous cells; 3 stigmas; fruit, a round berry of a reddish colour, containing 3 seeds.

*Qualities.*

Root fibrous, several feet long, of the size of a quill; bark wrinkled, gray, reddish externally, white internally, and of a pink colour, inodorous, mucilaginous, bitter.

According to Pallota, this root contains some parillin, fecula, mucilage, and albumen. Boiling water and alcohol take up its active principles.

*Parillin*.—A peculiar proximate principle, discovered by Pallota. It is white, pulverulent, and heavier than distilled water.

*Locality.*

This plant is indigenous to South America, growing spontaneously in Peru, Mexico, and all over South America, and in the Spanish West Indies.

*Medical Properties.*

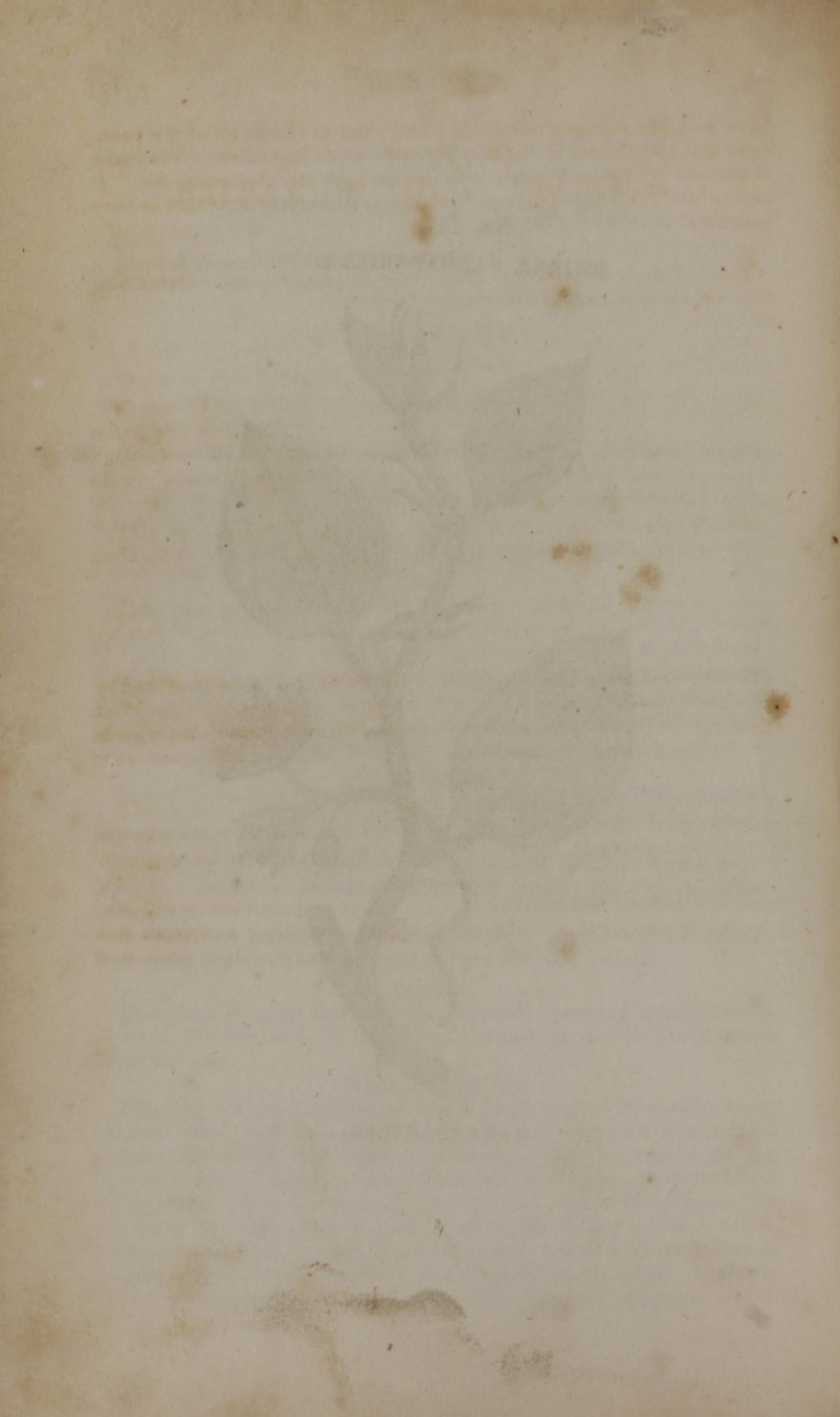
This root was first introduced into Europe by the Spaniards, about the year 1563, with the character of being a specific in venereal complaints, particularly *lues venerea*, a disease which had made its appearance in that country a little before that period; but, upon its being administered alone, it was found incompetent to cure this disease. It has since that time caused much speculation in the medical world. This root, however, is much used at present, united with sudorifics in chronic rheumatism, in syphilis, and diseases of the skin. It enters as one of the component parts of *Swaim's Panacea*, which is said to

No. 117.

SMILAX SARSAPARILLA.



SARSAPARILLA.



have wrought so many wonderful cures ; and in almost all of the panaceas and catholicons of the day it enters as an ingredient. We make much use of this article in our practice, as an alterative, &c. It enters into the alterative syrup of our pharmacopœia, which is very beneficial in many complaints.

*Employment.*

Dose of the powdered root, from half to one drachm. Decoction, from two to four ounces to a quart of water.

No. 118.

**SAGE.**

*Latin Name*—SALVIA OFFICINALIS.

*English Name*—GARDEN SAGE.

*Botanical Character.*

Class II.—DIANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—SALVIA—Corol irregular ; filaments transversely affixed to a pedicel ; seeds 4, naked.

*Species*—OFFICINALIS—Leaves lanceolate ovate, crenulate ; whorls few-flowered ; calyxes mucronate.

*Description.*

Too well known to need a description.

*Medical Properties.*

One author has such a high opinion of this plant, that he thus observes : “ Why dies the man whose garden sage affords ? ” It is a sudorific, producing perspiration ; and is a popular remedy for colds, coughs, fevers, &c. We use it principally as a gargle in aphthæ and quinsy.

No. 119.

**BALSAM OF TOLU.** *The Balsam.**Latin Name*—TOLUIFERA BALSAMUM.*English Name*—BALSAM OF TOLU.*Botanical Character.*

Class X.—DECANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—TOLUIFERA—Calyx companulate, 5-toothed; corol 5-petalled, the lowest very large and obcordate; styles 0.

*Species*—BALSAMUM—Tree branched; leaves alternate, elliptic, entire, pointed; racemes lateral; fruit a round berry.

*Description.*

This tree grows to a great height; the leaves are oval or ovate, and stand upon short foot-stalks. The fruit is a round berry.

*Locality.*

This tree grows in Spanish America. The balsam flows from incisions made in the bark during the hot seasons.

*Qualities.*

This substance is solid, of a soft and glutinous consistence, or dry and friable, according to its age; of a fallow or brown yellow colour; of a granulated or crystalline texture; smell resembles that of lemons; taste warm and sweetish. Volatile oil, resin, and benzoic acid.

*Medical Properties.*

This is the mildest of all balsams. It is useful in coughs, as an expectorant, and in *pyrosis* it is likewise beneficial. It enters into the composition of the cough drops of our pharmacopœia.

*Employment.*

Given in the form of syrup or tincture; the former made by boiling with sugar to a proper consistence; the other by dissolving in spirits; from forty to fifty drops of either is the dose.

No. 119.

TOLUIFERA BALSAMUM.



BALSAM OF TOLU.





No. 120.

TANACETUM VULGARE.



TANSY.

No. 124.

LIATRIS.



DEVIL'S BIT.

PLANTAE

191



No. 121.

EUPHORBIA IPECACUANHA.



SPURGE IPECACUANHA.

No. 120.

**TANSY.** *The Leaves.*

*Latin Name*—TANACETUM VULGARE.

*English Name*—TANSY.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XVII.—SYNGENESIA.

Order II.—POLYGAMIA SUPERFLUA.

*Genus*—TANACETUM—Florets of the ray obsolete, or 3-cleft, sometimes wanting; receptacle naked; seeds crowned with a slight margin; calyx imbricate, hemispherical; scales acuminate.

*Species*—VULGARE—Leaves doubly pinnatifid, deeply serrate.

*Description.*

This plant rises three feet in height; flowers yellow and small, resembling a flat hemisphere; florets of the disc bisexual, of the ray female.

*Locality.*

Native of Europe, growing in moist pastures, borders of cornfields; flowers in July and August.

*Medical Properties.*

When fresh, sudorific, emmenagogue, vermifuge, carminative, deobstruent, tonic, and stomachic. Very useful as a tea in fevers, agues, cachexy, hysterics, dropsy, &c.

*Employment.*

Given in the form of tea.

No. 121.

**EUPHORBIA IPECACUANHA.**

*Latin Name*—EUPHORBIA IPECACUANHÆ.

*English Name*—AMERICAN IPECACUANHA.

*Vulgar Names*—AMERICAN IPECAC, SPURGE, &c.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XI.—DODECANDRIA.

Order III.—TRIGYNIA.

*Genus*—EUPHORBIA—Calyciform involucre with 4 or 5 segments like petals; and the same number of interior segments like nectaries; *stamens* 12 or more; filaments articulated, fertile; flower solitary, stipulate, naked; styles three, bifid; capsule 3-seeded.

*Species*—IPECACUANHÆ—Procumbent with opposite, obovate, oblong or linear leaves; peduncles axillary, one flowered, elongated.

*Description.*

This is a low, tufted plant. Root irregular and fleshy, very large in proportion to the plant it bears, running deep in the ground. The stems arise from one root, numerous, erect, or procumbent, forming large bunches on the ground; they are smooth, regularly dichotomous, and jointed at the forks. Leaves inserted at the joints, opposite, sessile, smooth, having most frequently an oblong shape; differing however from circular to linear; their size and colour are likewise variable; flowers solitary, on long peduncles, from the forks of the stem; calyx spreading, divided into five obtuse segments. Stamens numerous, in five parcels, appearing at different times, two or three together, with double anthers. The fertile flowers have large, roundish, drooping, pedicelled germ, crowned with six revolute stigmas; capsule 3-celled.

*Locality.*

This plant is a native of America, growing in shady woods, bogs, and sandy soils, in the middle and southern states.

*Qualities.*

The dried root is of a grayish colour outside, and white within. It is light and brittle, and has about the hardness of cork; taste sweetish, and not very unpleasant. Dr. Bigelow, from his experiments on this root, supposes it to be possessed of caoutchouc, resin, mucus, and probably fecula.

*Medical Properties.*

*Emetic, cathartic, and tonic.* This article is possessed of very valuable medicinal properties. As an emetic, it has nearly superseded the officinal ipecac.; and it has been thought by some physicians to be very little inferior to that article.

It seems to possess a tonic power, and has, accordingly, been thought very beneficial in intermittent fever. Dr. Eberle says, that he found it particularly serviceable as a sudorific in dysenteric affections; and that, from what he had observed of its effects in other cases, it appears to him that the opinion entertained by the late Dr. Barton, of its possessing tonic properties, is not without foundation.

Euphorbia possesses very powerful properties. It is an excellent hydragogue, evacuating the water when all other agents prove abortive or useless. A physician lately consulted me in a case of obstinate dropsy, which had resisted every means made use of to remove it. I advised him to give fifteen grains of the *euphorbia ipecacuanha*, which he did two or three times throughout the week; and the effect of it was a complete evacuation of all the water, followed by a permanent cure. It also has a tendency to promote the menstrual evacuation. A person informed me that it is an infallible cure for the bilious colic. It first produces nausea or vomiting, then purges freely. Dr. Bone, of New-Jersey, a celebrated botanic physician, prescribes this medicine, with great success, in a great variety of diseases.

*Employment.*

The powdered root may be given in doses of from twelve to fifteen grains, in molasses or tea.



No. 122.

ULMUS FULVA.



SLIPPERY ELM.

No. 122.

**SLIPPERY ELM. *The Bark.****Latin Name*—ULMUS FULVA.*English Name*—SLIPPERY ELM.*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order II.—DIGYNIA.

*Genus*—ULMUS—Calyx, campanulate, deciduous, 5-cleft; corolla wanting; seed 1, enclosed in a winged receptacle.

*Species*—FULVA—Leaves ovate, oblong, acuminate, nearly equal at the base, unequally serrate, pubescent; buds tomentose; flowers conglomerate, sessile, ciliate.

*Description.*

Stem seldom above thirty feet high, trunk slender dividing in numerous branches, furnished with a rough and light-coloured bark; leaves oval-oblong, acuminate, serrate, pubescent on both sides, almost equal at the base; buds tomentose, of a tawny colour; flowers red, sessile, succeeded by membranous seed-vessels of a compressed and oval shape, containing one oval seed.

*Locality.*

A native tree of North America.

*Qualities.*

The inner bark is fulvous, rather brittle, and very mucilaginous. It contains fecula, ulmine, and gum.

*Medical Properties.*

*Demulcent, diuretic, pectoral, deobstruent, emollient, and refrigerant.* Useful in all urinary and bowel complaints, strangury, sore-throat, catarrh, pneumonia, pleurisy, or inflammation of the lungs, and stomach and bowels, scurvy, scorbutic affections, herpes, inveterate eruptions, &c. As an external application, in the form of poultice, it is an admirable remedy, far exceeding any other known production in the world, for ulcers, tumours, swellings, gun-shot wounds, chilblains, burns, cutaneous diseases, erysipelas, felons, old, obstinate ulcers, scabs; sore mouth, or thrush, used as a wash.

It quickly and powerfully allays inflammation, promotes resolution, also suppuration, and heals speedily. The tea is much used by the Indian women, to procure easy labour, and is drank for two or three months previous to their being confined in childbed. We make extensive use of the flour of the bark, in the form of poultice, for every variety of inflammation, wounds, ulcers, &c.

In point of utility it is of far more value, than its weight of gold.

*Employment.*

Internally as a tea, externally as a poultice.

No. 123.

**RASPBERRY. *The Leaves.****Latin Name*—RUBUS STRIGOSUS.*English Name*—RED RASPBERRY.*Botanical Character.*

Class XI.—ICOSANDRIA.

Order XIII.—POLYGNIA.

*Genus*—RUBUS—Calyx 5-cleft; corol 5-petalled; berry superior, composed of several single-seeded granulations.

*Species*—STRIGOSUS—Unarmed, rigidly trispid; leaflets 3, or pinnate, quinnate; base oval, acuminate, white-downy beneath, terminal one frequently sub-cordate.

*Description.*

The stem of this plant is defended with spines, and rises three or four feet in height. The leaves are rough, veined, serrated, downy beneath, composed of three or five oval pinnæ.

*Locality.*

Native of Britain, and cultivated in our gardens; found in woods and among rocks; flowers in May and June; fruit ripe in August.

*Medical Properties.*

“The leaves of this plant are astringent, and therefore good in diarrhœa and dysentery. The leaves, dried, and made into a strong tea, are good to remove canker from the mouth, throat, stomach, bowels, and other parts of the body. In the dysentery it is very useful. In the first stages of that disease, I have frequently relieved people by giving them a strong tea made of the leaves.

When a poultice to remove canker, or what is called proud flesh, is needed, this tea is good to make it with. In such a case, or for a burn, make a strong tea of the leaves, and thicken it with pounded crackers, or white bread, and apply it, renewing it as often as is needed, till the canker is removed.

Children who have sore mouths, ought to wash with it often. If they are troubled with canker or humours in the skin, the sores should be washed with this tea. If they have canker in the throat, stomach, or bowels, or are troubled with a relax, the tea, drank frequently, will generally remove the complaint. It may be sweetened, with a little milk added, when needed to make it more palatable.”—(*Smith.*)

*Employment.*

The leaves given in decoction.

No. 123.

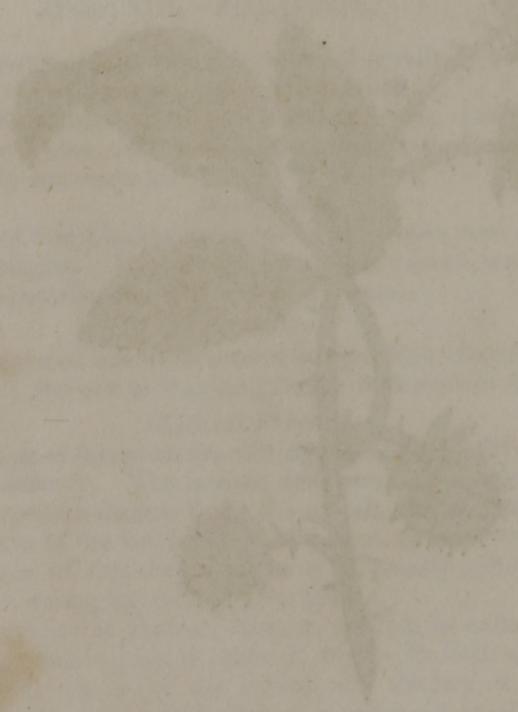
RUBUS STRIGOSUS.



RED RASPBERRY.

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO

PHOTOGRAPHY



BY THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO



No. 125.

IRIS VERSICOLOR.



BLUE FLAG.

No. 124.

**DEVIL'S BIT. LIATRIS.**

*Description.*

Root tuberous, acrid, and bitterish, pungent, spicy, smelling like turpentine or juniper, holding a peculiar balsamic resin, but no oil; properties, partly soluble in a watery decoction, wholly in alcohol. A powerful diuretic, acting mildly; may be used *ad libitum*; also discutient, tonic, diaphoretic, and deobstruent. Useful in dropsy, sore-throat, scrofula, gravel, pains in the breast, after pains in women, and bite of snakes.

*Employment.*

It is used both externally and internally. It may be administered in the form of powder, tea, or syrup.

=====  
No. 125.

**BLUE FLAG. *The Root.***

*Latin Name*—IRIS VERSICOLOR.

*English Name*—BLUE FLAG.

*Botanical Character.*

Class III.—TRIANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—IRIS—Corolla parted into 6 segments, or petals, of which 3 are reflexed, and 3 are erect; stigmas resemble petals.

*Species*—VERSICOLOR—Leaves ensiform; stem acute on one side; capsules oblong, 3-sided, with acute angles.

*Description.*

Root fleshy, horizontal, sending down a multitude of fibres; stem two or three feet high, round on one side, acute on the other; leaves sword-shaped; peduncles of various length, flattened on the inside; germ 3, covered with flat sides, and obtuse angles; outer petals of the flower spatulate, beardless, the border purple, the claw variegated with green, yellow, and white, and veined with purple; inner petals erect, paler than the outer; style short, concealed; stigmas 3, petal-form, purple or violet, resting on the outer petals; stamens concealed under the stigmas, with oblong, linear anthers; capsule 3-celled, 3-valved; seeds numerous, flat.

*Locality.*

Found throughout the United States, in the borders of swamps, and in wet meadows; flowering in June.

*Qualities.*

The root has a nauseous taste, and, when held in the mouth, imparts a powerful sense of heat and acrimony to the fauces. "The most active constituent," says Bigelow, "appears to be a resin, which precipitates in the form of a white powder, when water is added to the alcoholic solution."

*Medical Properties.*

Cathartic, stimulant, diuretic, antivenereal. The root of this plant, when dried and recent, is a very certain and active cathartic. It is apt to occasion nausea, with prostration of strength sometimes. From the stimulating properties of this root, it is capable of exciting many of the secretions, as likewise the excretions. We are informed by Dr. Bigelow, that Dr. Macbride, of Carolina, found great benefits resulting from the use of this article, in combination with *eryngium yuccifolium*, in dropsy. "In consequence of his recommendation," says Dr. Bigelow, "I administered the tincture of the iris, in small doses, to several persons affected with anasarca and hydrothorax. It was evidently of service to a majority of those who took it, for a certain time."

Dr. Woodruff informs me, that this root is very valuable in several diseases. Given in doses of six or eight grains, night and morning, it proves gently laxative, and eradicates the most inveterate taint of the system. It is excellent in venereal and herpetic affections, fluor albus, &c. It forms the basis of Smith's antimercurial syrup, which is given and recommended for syphilitic, and many other complaints. We copy the following from Dr. Elisha Smith's *Botanic Physician*:

"This root possesses great medicinal power; and from a long experience of its use, I am convinced that it is equally as efficacious as mercury, in all the diseases in which, in the common practice, it is supposed mercury is indicated. It serves as an alterative, and sialagogue, in small continued doses; as a powerful drastic purge, a stimulant, a vermifuge, a diuretic, errhine, &c. It is a complete substitute for that mineral, for any of its purposes; and, being a vegetable, I consider it far preferable, because, after having its operation and effect, it passes off and leaves the system free; whereas mercury fastens upon the bones and solids, and remains, like a corroding and eating canker, rendering vast numbers feeble and debilitated for life. Such is the difference between these two articles of medicine; and it would be a happy event for mankind if physicians would, for once, divest themselves of their blind prejudices in favour of the mineral, and consent, at least, to make a trial of this vegetable substitute. Their humanity should be a sufficient inducement for this. The plea that the vegetable kingdom contains no equivalent to mercury, is no longer tenable; then why should not physicians discard the use of it at once, when it is universally acknowledged, and felt, that in the aggregate it has proved a curse, a destroyer to the human race. The disuse of it

it is true, would lessen the employment of the medical profession ; but the satisfaction they must feel at the proportionate decrease of suffering among their fellow beings, will, no doubt, richly compensate them for their pecuniary sacrifice."

*Employment.*

Given in powder, as a cathartic, the dose is about twenty grains.

---

No. 126.

**NUTMEG.** *The Fruit.*

*Latin Name*—MYRISTICA MOSCHATA.

*English Name*--NUTMEG TREE.

*Botanical Character.*

*Genus*—MYRISTICA—Male flower ; calyx 3-cleft ; corolla none ; anthers adhering about the upper part of the filament ; female flower ; calyx 3-cleft ; corolla none ; style short ; stigma bifid ; capsule drupaceous.

*Species*—MOSCHATA—Leaves lanceolate ; fruit smooth.

*Description.*

This tree grows to the height of thirty-feet ; leaves elliptical, pointed, undulated, nerved, alternate, on long foot-stalks, above of a bright green, beneath paler ; flowers small ; fruit round, or oval ; a drupe, splitting into two valves, which discovers the mace, which has a reticulated appearance, and divides into three portions, which closely invest a slender shell, containing the seed, or nutmeg.

*Locality.*

The tree which furnishes this elegant spice, is a native of the Malacca islands. It is not cultivated in any of them but Banda, from which we have been supplied with mace and nutmeg.

*Qualities.*

Nutmegs are oval, or round, flat at both ends, furrowed on the outside, of a yellowish colour inside, variegated with brown, undulating lines ; solid, hard, unctuous to the feel ; balsamic smell, and agreeable aromatic taste. By distillation, they yield an essential oil, of a whitish yellow colour, lighter than water, and possessing the aromatic taste and smell of the nutmeg in an eminent degree.

*Medical Properties.*

Nutmegs are carminative, stimulant, and stomachic. It is useful to relieve nausea, or vomiting, or to check diarrhœa. It is also employed to conceal the taste and flavour of unpleasant medicines, and

to obviate the nausea which they might excite. The oil of nutmegs is a powerful carminative and stomachic, given in doses of a few drops.

*Employment.*

Given in the form of powder, from ten to fifteen grains.

No. 127.

**VIRGINIA SPEEDWELL.** (*Veronica Virginica.*)

The following account of this plant has been communicated to me by Mr. Prince, the venerable proprietor of the Linnæan Botanic Garden, at Flushing, L. I.

He states, that a relative of his was so far reduced with the dropsy, that she was abandoned by her physician as incurable. In this condition, her friends concluded to apply to some "root," or "Indian doctor," in hopes that something might yet be done. After arriving at the house, it was found so small that she was unable to remain there, as was intended, and therefore some medicine was given her, and she returned home. The directions for taking it were, to add a suitable quantity of water to three handfuls of the herb or plant, and boil down to half a pint; then drink the whole. The physician assured her that it would effect a cure; and, according to his assertion, it had the effect. In a few weeks it carried off the water, and it never again returned. The husband then went and procured the green plant, and raised it in his garden; and Mr. Prince informs me that he cultivated it in his garden at Flushing. He found considerable difficulty in dissecting it; but such confidence had he in its properties, that he persevered until he discovered the genuine botanical name of it, which is the *Veronica*, or *Virginia Speedwell*.

Mr. Prince further informs me, that he communicated this information to several physicians, but so prejudiced were they to the use of any thing different from the established practice, that all refused to administer it, except a Dr. Ogden, who used it with the greatest success. Mr. Prince further states, that it is equally efficacious in purifying the blood, for the leprosy, &c., in which, to his knowledge, it was given with success.

On one occasion, intelligence came to a domestic of his, that she must go immediately home, as her father, Mr. Combs, was nearly gone with the leprosy. He was in the most deplorable state. He went into his garden, and procured some of the speedwell, and requested her to use it internally, and wash the ulcers with Castile soap and water. After this, he heard no more of the case for some months, when a person called and asked him for some of the plant which cured Mr. Combs of his leprosy. He said that some one had it much worse than the other man, who was cured. He had none, but took particular pains to procure it. It was given according to the directions, and effected a permanent cure.

No. 127.

VERONICA VIRGINICA.



VIRGINIA SPEEDWELL.

No. 130.

ZANTHOXYLUM FRAXINEUM.



PRICKLY ASH.





No. 128.

PHELLANDRIUM AQUATICUM.



WATER FENNEL.



No. 126.

MYRISTICA MOSCHATA.



NUTMEG.

No. 128.

## WATER FENNEL. PHELLANDRIUM AQUATICUM.

*In mucous consumption ; genuine pulmonary consumption ; in humeral asthma ; in chronic ulcers of the legs ; in chronic catarrh ; and in cases of hæmoptisis.*

BY J. F. DANIEL LOBSTEIN, M.D.

Gentlemen, Members of the Associate Medical Society of Botanic Physicians and Surgeons of New-York,

I take the liberty to communicate to you several observations of different diseases, in which I was very successful, by employing the seeds of semen phellandrium. I do not pretend to be the first physician who has introduced this remedy into practice, but I have employed it in several cases, and under a union with other medicines, in which it was never employed before.

I take the liberty to present to you, gentlemen, Members of the Associate Medical Society of Botanic Physicians and Surgeons of New-York, a half-pound of the seeds of the phellandrium, so that if different members of the society would make a trial with that, they can do it ; and if *your* results should be as successful as *my* results, it would be very flattering to me.

The *phellandrium aquaticum* is a biennial umbelliferous plant, indigenous to Germany and other parts of Europe, growing in ditches and in low marshy situations. The seeds are of a yellowish-green colour, elliptical, slightly curved, flat on one side, and gibbous on the other ; they are streaked, and terminate in small 5-toothed heads. They have an aromatic odour, resembling *angelica*, and a strong, spicy, and acrid taste. This active property appears to reside partly in an ethereal oil, which they contain in considerable abundance, and perhaps in part, also, in more fixed elementary principles. This plant is sometimes confounded with other umbelliferous plants, growing in swampy places, particularly with the *sium latifolium*, and *angustifolium*, and *cicuta virosa*. The seeds of the *sium angustifolium* are more oval, pointed above, and terminated with a small style. The seeds of the *sium latifolium*, are smaller, more curved, stronger, and more regularly ribbed. The seeds of the *cicuta virosa* are roundish, gibbous, compressed, greenish, and crowned with a small calyx.

The seeds of this plant are a mild narcotic stimulant, occasioning, when given in large doses, vertigo, intoxication, and dull pains in the head. The action of this remedy appears to be particularly directed upon the pulmonary organs ; it promotes expectoration, lessens cough, and improves the morbid secretions of the bronchia. *Hufeland* speaks in very high terms of the effects of this remedy in *phthisis*

*pituitosa*, or mucous consumption, in which he gave it in doses of 20 grains, three times a day. It is also much commended for its power in phthisis, by *Jahn*, *Stern*, and *Nebel*.\* *Burdach*, in his excellent work on the materia medica, speaking of the medicinal powers of this article, says, "so long as the substance of the lungs has as yet not suffered any material disorganization from ulceration, or in what has been called *phthisis pituitosa*, the phellandrium aquaticum is one of our most valuable remedies." This medicine is also highly recommended in chronic bronchitis; in weakness of the lungs; and in chronic catarrhal affections, arising from pneumonia; as well as in phthisis, depending on suppressed cutaneous eruptions, or rheumatic affections of the breast. It has been also employed with much benefit in humoral asthma, and in chronic ulcers of the legs. Some physicians advise it to be given in union with the extract of *cicuta*; but in my own practice, I have found it to answer best when exhibited in combination with pulv. gum arabic and *saccharum lactis*. Having stated, in a general way, the diseases in which this article has been found particularly useful, I will now relate the facts which have occurred in my own practice, in relation to its remedial powers.

I have employed this remedy in *four* cases of *mucous consumption*, in *two* of humoral asthma; in *one* of chronic ulcers of the legs; in *three* of phthisis ulcerosa, or genuine pulmonary consumption; in *three* of chronic catarrh, and in *two* cases of hæmoptisis.

*Case 1.* The first case of mucous consumption in which I prescribed this remedy, occurred in Strasburg, in France. The patient was a middle-aged woman; she had taken various remedies for her complaint, before I saw her, and was, at the time I first prescribed for her, exceedingly reduced. Her cough was, at times, very violent, attended, occasionally, with a copious and tenacious expectoration. She was much emaciated, and affected with symptoms of dyspepsia; a slight paroxysm of fever supervened every afternoon, and the night-sweats were sometimes very profuse. On being first called to her, I ordered such remedies as I thought calculated to mitigate the cough, from which she derived temporary benefit. After having continued for a few weeks, with the use of the ordinary demulcents and expectorants, in cases of this kind, I prescribed the *semen phellandrium*, in union with *saccharum lactis* and gum arabic, in the dose of ten grains of the former, and twenty of each of the other two articles, three times a day. After having used this medicine about fourteen days, she was evidently better; the fever had almost entirely disappeared, and the cough was much less violent, and accompanied by a much easier and better expectoration. Under the continued use of the medicine, she gradually recovered more and more strength; her appetite became good, and in about six weeks she was so well as not to require any further attendance.

*Case 2.* This, also, was a case of mucous consumption, in a young woman of Strasburg. She contracted her disease from an imprudent exposure to a cold atmosphere, immediately after having over-heated herself by dancing. She was at first affected by a dry cough, which

\* *Nebel* de phellandro aquatica ejusque in phthisis purulenta virtutibus.

she neglected, until, becoming weak, and troubled with night-sweats, with increased coughing, she requested my attendance. I, at first, prescribed a mixture, composed of Kermes' mineral, gum arabic, and sugar, by which the cough and expectoration were considerably improved. The expectoration, however, soon became exceedingly copious, and emaciation, with great debility, ensued. I now prescribed the *semen phellandrium*, and had the satisfaction of seeing my patient gradually recover under its use.

I have since prescribed this remedy in two other cases of this variety of pulmonary disease, and with the happiest effects.

*Case 3.* The first case of *phthisis pulmonalis ulcerosa*, in which I employed this article, was in a woman, at Strasburg. She had been labouring under the disease for several years, and had undergone various treatments for her disease. She was about thirty-two years of age, and mother of three children. I found her very emaciated, with frequent and troublesome cough, attended with a copious purulent expectoration; she had regular exacerbations of fever; a small, tense, and frequent pulse, and experienced debilitating night-sweats. Scarcely any hopes of recovery were entertained by her friends, or indeed by myself.

Being requested, however, to prescribe for her, I put her upon the use of the *phellandrium aquaticum*, and in the course of about four months she was almost entirely restored to her original health. When I left Strasburg, in 1818, four years had already elapsed, during which she was free from her disease.

Two similar cases, I treated with the same success; two gentlemen in Philadelphia.

*Case 4.* This was also a case of *phthisis pulmonalis*, exhibiting the most unequivocal symptoms of the disease. The expectoration was purulent, the night-sweats exhausting, the cough very troublesome, and debility and emaciation were rapidly progressing. She gradually and completely recovered under the employment of the *semen phellandrium*. I treated another consumptive patient, a weaver, whose disease yielded effectually to the powers of this remedy.

*Case 5.* This was a case of humoral asthma, in a widow, about sixty-four years old. She had suffered much from the frequent attacks of the disease, and had consulted many eminent physicians. After prescribing various remedies, without any particular advantage, I determined to give her the *semen phellandrium*. She soon found herself relieved by this remedy, and was finally entirely freed from her complaint by its use.

*Case 6.* This case of asthma occurred in a young woman, at Reading, Pennsylvania. She had already suffered much from the disease, and undergone various treatments for its removal, without any advantage. In this case the *semen phellandrium* was signally serviceable. She was speedily and effectually cured by it.

Of the efficacy of this remedy in chronic catarrh, I have had repeated evidence. I treated a woman under this affection, who had been a very great while affected with the disease. She was completely cured by this remedy, although I had previously given her a great variety of medicines, without the least benefit. I attended

another patient suffering from this disease, in whom the usefulness of this medicine was unequivocally demonstrated.

I have also used the *semen phellandrium*, with very good effects, in chronic and ill-conditioned ulcers of the lower extremities; and in several cases of spitting of blood, I have known it to produce very salutary effects.

From my own experience with this remedy, therefore, I am persuaded that it is capable of very important remedial applications, and deserving of much more general notice than it seems hitherto to have received, out of Germany.

In *phthisis ulcerosa* and *pituitosa*, I have given the *semen phellandrium*, as follows:

Take pulvis seminis phellandrii aquatici, gr. v.;

Saccharum lactis,

Pulv. gum arabici *ãã* gr. x;

Dent. tal. dos. no. xxiv.; three powders a day.

N. B. Each powder will contain gr. v. of pulv. sem. phellandr. aquat.; and each powder gr. x. of sacchar. lactis, and gr. x. of pulv. gum arabic.

---

No. 129.

## BITTER ROOT. *The Root, Flowers, and Leaves.*

*Latin Name*—APOCYNUM ANDROSEAMIFOLIUM.

*English Name*—BITTER ROOT.

*Vulgar Names*—DOGSBANE, FLY-TRAP, HONEY BLOOM, &c.

### *Botanical Character.*

Class XVIII.—GYNANDRIA.

Order V.—PENTANDRIA.

*Genus*—APOCYNUM—Calyx 5-cleft; corolla bell-shaped, 5-cleft; five corpuscles surrounding the germ; five anthers alternating with them, connivent, and adhering, by the middle, to the stegyne or cover of the pistils, which are 2, small and concealed; succeeded by two follicles, with numerous downy seeds.

*Species*—ANDROSEAMIFOLIUM—Smooth, stem erect, dicotome; leaves petiolate, opposite, entire, acute; cymes nodding, lateral, and terminal, beyond the leaves; follicles linear.

### *Description.*

Stem erect, herbaceous, from three to five feet high, cylindrical, smooth, often rose-coloured, forked several times; leaves opposite, petiolate, pale beneath, acute, entire, two or three inches long, with a large nerve; flowers corymbose, or paniculate, axillary or terminal; calyx short, 5-cleft; corolla white, tinged with red; anthers connivent, sagittate; style obsolete; stigma thick, acute; fruit, a pair of follicles, long and linear; seeds numerous, comose.

*Locality.*

A perennial American plant; found from Canada to Carolina. It grows in woods, hills, dry, or sandy soils, along fences, and over old fields. Blossoms from June to July.

*Qualities.*

The whole plant is lactescent; the root is intensely bitter and nauseous.

It is considered as containing a bitter extractive principle, soluble in water and alcohol, a colouring principle, soluble in water only, a very large quantity of caoutchouc, and a volatile oil.

*Medical Properties.*

This plant is tonic, alterative, and emetic. It is a very active plant, highly valued by our southern Indians. The root is the most powerful part, and is much employed by our country physicians instead of ipecacuanha. Thirty grains of the recently powdered root evacuate the stomach as effectually as two thirds of this quantity of ipecacuanha, by which name it is known in various parts of the eastern states. Its power is diminished by keeping, and destroyed by age. Professor Bigelow remarks, that we have very few indigenous vegetables which exceed this apocynum in bitterness, and thinks the sensible and chemical properties of the root promise a good effect, when given in small doses, as a tonic medicine.

In small doses it is a tonic, useful in dyspepsia and fevers. The Choctaw and Chickasaw nations of Indians employ it in syphilis, and consider it a specific; they use the fresh root, chewed, swallowing the juice only.

*Employment.*

In the form of powder, of the root, the dose is from 20 to 30 grains, for an emetic; for a tonic, from six to eight.

=====  
No. 130.

**PRICKLY ASH.** *The Bark, and Berries.*

*Latin Name*—ZANTHOXYLUM FRAXINEUM.

*English Name*—PRICKLY ASH.

*Vulgar Names*—TOOTHACHE-BARK, TOOTHACHE-TREE.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XX.—DIOECIA.

Order V.—PENTANDRIA.

*Genus*—ZANTHOXYLUM—Calyx 5-parted; corol 0; female flowers, pistils 5; capsules 5, 1-seeded.

*Species*—FRAXINEUM—Prickly; leaves pinnate; leaflets lance-oval, sub-entire, sessile; umbels axillary.

*Description.*

Stem straight, furnished with numerous prickles, from ten to fifteen

feet high ; leaves pinnate ; folioles oval-lanceolate, sessile, serrulate, and almost entire ; common petiole unarmed ; umbels axillary ; flowers, perianthe, 5-parted ; stamina, three, five, and six ; pistils three to five, containing each one seed. When rubbed with the fingers, they impart an odour similar to that of lemon oil.

*Locality.*

This is a tall shrub, indigenous to the southern states ; and found plentifully in the middle states, in meadows, and low, moist ground.

*Qualities.*

Bark thin, gray externally, yellowish-white internally ; taste pungent, aromatic, and exciting a copious discharge of saliva.

Dr. Staples has obtained from this bark a crystalline substance analogous to piperin, united with an oil possessing all the aroma, acidity, and warmth of the bark.

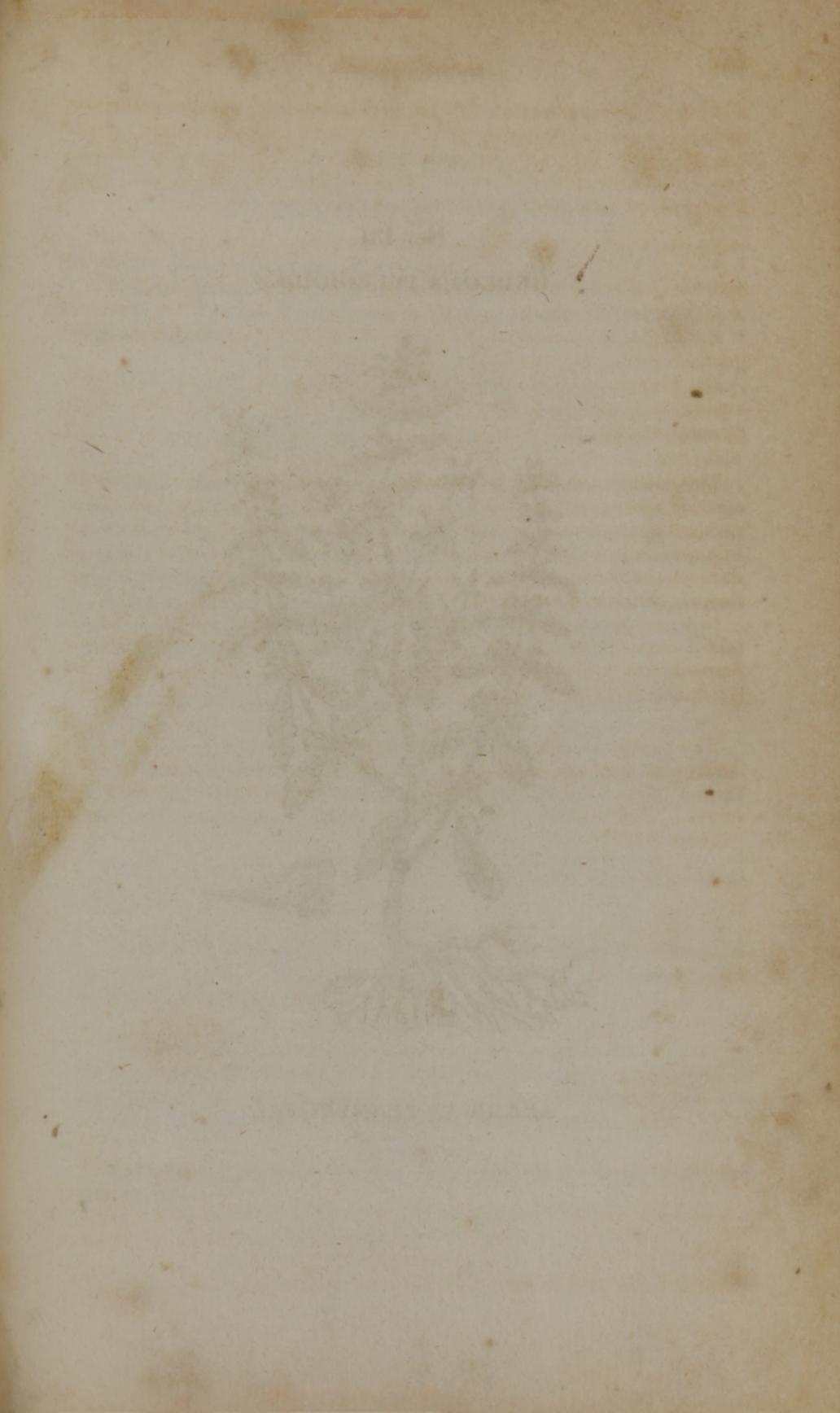
*Medical Properties.*

This bark possesses very energetic stimulant and diaphoretic properties, analogous to those of mezereon bark. It is a popular medicine, often exhibited in practice, as a remedy in chronic rheumatism. It is said that, by an internal and protracted use, it has, in several instances, produced salivation. We also make use of the bark, or berries, in chronic rheumatism.

It is recommended in malignant ulcers, both as an internal and external remedy, and several cases, in testimony of its efficacy in this respect, are related in the Medical and Physical Journal, and in the Transactions of the London Medical Society.

*Employment.*

The *powder* is given in doses of ten, twenty, and even thirty grains. *Decoction*, (one ounce of bark to a quart of water, boiled down one third,) taken in doses of two or three ounces, every two or three hours. The tincture of the bark and capsules, is a popular drink in chronic rheumatism.



No. 131.

HEDEOMA PULEGIoidES.



AMERICAN PENNYROYAL.

No. 131.

**PENNYROYAL.** *The Plant.**Latin Name*—HEDEOMA PULEGIOIDES.*English Name*—AMERICAN PENNYROYAL.*Vulgar Names*—PENNYROYAL, THICK-WEED, STINKING-BALM, SQUAW-MINT.*Botanical Character.*

Class II.—DIANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—HEDEOMA—Calyx bilabiate, 10-striated; base gibbous, upper lip trifold, lower with 2-subulate teeth, and ciliated bristles; corolla bilabiate, upper lip nearly entire, lower trilobed, middle lobe obcordate; two fertile stamina, as long as the corolla; two sterile, and short; 1-style, 4 seeds.

*Species*—PULEGIOIDES—Annual leaves, sub-petiolate, oblong, acute, sub-serrate, a little rough; flowers axillary, verticillate, by six, on short pedicels, with two small bracteoles.

*Description.*

Root annual, small, yellowish, branched; stem upright, about one foot high, with slender, erect branches; leaves opposite, small, oblong, lanceolate, or sub-oval; flowers all along the branches, in axillary whorls of six; calyx, as above, pubescent; corolla very small; stamina and style filiform; anthers oblong; stigma, lateral, acute; fruit, four small oblong seeds.

*Locality.*

Found all over the United States, and in Canada, in dry woods, plains, &c.

*Qualities.*

The smell is strong, and hardly aromatic, but pleasant; taste, pungent, and warm. The medical principle resides in an essential oil, possessing the same smell and taste as the herb.

*Medical Properties.*

Carminative, stimulant, diaphoretic, emmenagogue, &c. It is a popular remedy in the country for suppressed menses; an infusion, or tea, given freely, assists nature to restore this evacuation, particularly where it has arisen from a sudden check of perspiration.

*Employment.*

A strong tea, made of the plant, should be taken warm, freely, and frequently.

No. 132.

**ELDER.** *The Flowers, Leaves, Bark, &c.**Latin Name*—SAMBUCUS NIGER.*English Name*—COMMON ELDER.*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order III.—TRIGYNIA.

*Genus*—SAMBUCUS — Calyx 5-parted; corolla 5-cleft; berry 3-seeded.*Species*—NIGER—Cyme 5-parted; leaves pinnate; stem arboreous.*Description.*

It sometimes rises to the height of a small tree; it is much branched toward the top; the young shoots are full of pith, the old ones have none; leaves pinnated, consisting of two or three pairs of pinæ, with an odd one at the end; flowers white, growing in an umbelliferous manner; fruit, a round, blackish berry, containing three seeds.

*Locality.*

This shrub is found growing all over the United States, in hedges, &c. Flowers in June; fruit ripens in September.

*Qualities.*

The berries contain malic acid, and have a sweetish, not unpleasant, taste; but if eaten in too great a quantity, will produce nausea.

*Medical Properties.*

Every part of this plant possesses considerable medical properties. It is laxative, diuretic, alterative, anti-herpetic, refrigerant, vulnerary, deobstruent, &c. The bark is useful in dropsy. The flowers are excellent to purify the blood; from the leaves is made an excellent ointment, very useful in eruptions of the skin, and they also form an excellent poultice for inflammations. A syrup, made of the berries, is highly esteemed by many, in bowel complaints.

A tea made of the flowers, is very good to remove the herpetic affections of children, and to obviate costiveness.

*Employment.*

We make a very extensive use of the elder. The flowers enter into the alterative syrup, and the bark, simmered with wine, forms the hydragogue tincture, which is given in dropsical complaints.

No. 132.

SAMBUCUS NIGER.



COMMON ELDER.





No. 133.

ROSA.



COMMON ROSE.

No. 133.

**ROSE. *The Flowers.****Latin Name*—ROSA GALLICA.*English Name*—RED ROSE.*Botanical Character.*

Class XII.—ICOSANDRIA.

Order V.—POLYGYNIA.

*Genus*—ROSA—Petals 5; calyx unceolate, 5-cleft, fleshy, narrow at the neck; seeds many, hispid, affixed to the interior sides of the calyx.

*Species*—GALLICA—Germs ovate, hispid; stems and petioles hispid-aculeate.

*Description.*

Stems straight, ramose, furnished with numerous reddish prickles; leaves alternate, petiolate, composed of from 3 to 7 oval and sessile folioles; flowers, of a fine crimson-red; calyx urceolate, persistent, globular; fruit contained in the tube of the calyx.

*Locality.*

Native of the south of Europe, but now very common in our gardens. Flowers in June and July.

*Qualities.*

Petals of a deep red colour, of a faint smell, but pleasant; of a bitter and styptic taste.

According to Cartier, they contain tannin, gallic acid, a colouring matter, an essential oil, a fatty matter, albumen, some soluble salts with base of potassa, insoluble salts with base of lime, some silica, and oxide of iron. Water, alcohol, and vinegar, dissolve their active principles.

*Medical Properties.*

Astringent, tonic, &c. Exhibited with advantage in passive hæmorrhage, mucous discharges, colliquative diarrhœa, and other similar affections. We use occasionally this article externally, in the form of an eye-water, by adding rose-water to the pith of sassafras, which constitutes a mucilaginous liquid, and is very serviceable in ophthalmia, or inflammation of the eyes.

*Employment.*

Infusion, by adding two pinches of the petals to a pint of boiling water. Syrup of roses is made by adding one part of roses to nine of boiling water, and ten of sugar.

No. 134.

**HENBANE.** *The whole Plant.**Latin Name*—HYOSCYAMUS NIGER.*English Name*—BLACK HENBANE.*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—PENTANDRIA.

Order I.—MONOGYNIA.

*Genus*—HYOSCYAMUS—Corolla funnel-shaped, obtuse; stamina inclined; capsule operculate, belocular.

*Species*—NIGER—Leaves embracing the stem, waving; flowers sessile.

*Description.*

This plant rises from one to two feet; the leaves are large, cut into irregular lobes, or pointed segments, of a glaucous colour, undulated, woolly, and embrace the stem; flowers are funnel-shaped, the tube short, the border expanded, and cut into five obtuse segments; the colour is dingy yellow, with bright purple streaks, which is the livery of poisonous herbs, purple with yellow being the characteristic; the calyx is also divided into five short-pointed downy segments.

*Locality.*

This is an annual plant, native of Europe, but grows plentifully with us, along road-sides and among rubbish. Flowers in July.

*Qualities.*

The colour of this plant, when fresh, is of a dull green; its odour is fetid and nauseous, and its taste sweetish, and afterwards slightly acid.

Henbane contains resin, mucilage, extractive, malic acid, and some salts. Mr. Brande, in his analysis of the seeds, has discovered an alkaloid proximate principle, combined with malic acid, which has been called *hysociama*, and is considered to be the active principle of this plant.

Hyosciama is white, crystallizes in long prisms, unalterable at a high temperature, insoluble in water, and forming soluble salts with sulphuric and nitric acids. It has not as yet been employed in practice, but ought to be carefully studied, says a writer, as deserving a very particular attention.

*Medical Properties.*

This article is very poisonous, and often proves fatal to many, when taken by mistake. The symptoms produced by an over-dose of this medicine, are great thirst, giddiness of the head, dimness of sight, ravings, convulsions, risus sardonius, coma, &c. The antidotes to counteract this medicine, consist in first giving a teaspoonful of the flour of mustard, to produce vomiting; if this does not succeed, ad-

No. 134.

HYOSCYAMUS NIGER.

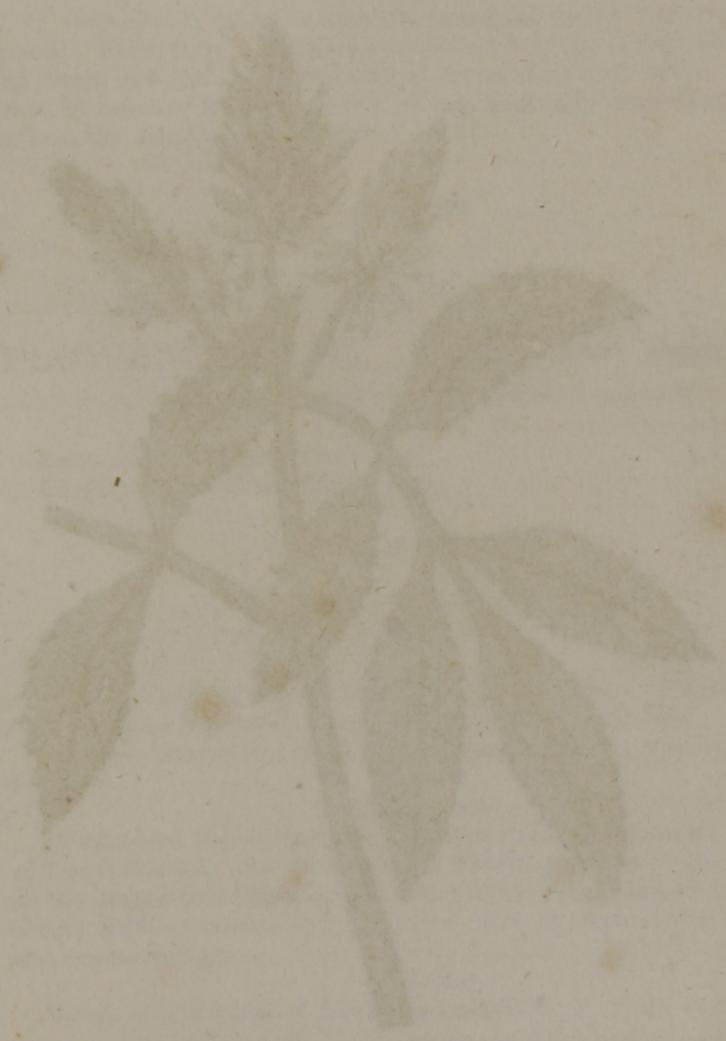


BLACK HENBANE.



PLATE

PLANT SPECIES



PLANT SPECIES

No. 135.

FRAXINUS ORNUS.



FLOWERING ASH.

minister large quantities of diluent drinks, with a small quantity of vinegar and water, and follow this up by giving a dose of sweet oil.

This plant is a powerful narcotic, and in general better for external than internal use. Applied externally, in the form of poultice and fomentation, it is useful in all cases of painful and obstinate inflammations, such as fistulas, boils, and swellings of the breast.

Given in the form of tincture, it will sometimes allay irritation where opium cannot be administered.

It may be given in tic douloureux, tetanus, and other painful nervous affections; also in epilepsy, &c.

*Employment.*

In very severe pains, a small teaspoonful of the tincture may be given. Externally, a poultice may be made of the leaves, by simmering them in water, and then adding the slippery-elm bark. The extract, in doses of from one to two grains, gradually increasing; of the leaves, the same as the extract.

---

No. 135.

**FLOWERING ASH.** *The Concrete Juice of the Tree—(Manna.)*

*Latin Name*—FRAXINUS ORNUS.

*English Name*—FLOWERING ASH.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XXIII.—POLYGAMIA.

Order II.—DIOECIA.

*Genus*—FRAXINUS—Bisexual flower; calyx none, or 4-parted; corolla none, or 4-petalled; stamina 2; pistil 1; lanceolate.

*Species*—ORNUS—Leaves ovate-oblong, serrated, petioled; corolla 4-parted.

*Description.*

Trunk about twenty-five feet high; leaves imparipinnate, composed of 7 or 9 folioles; flowers white, in ramose panicles at the extremity of the branches; calyx very small, 4-divided; corolla, 4 linear divisions; fruit, a narrow and elongated capsule, terminated by a plain and obtuse wedge.

*Locality.*

Native of the south of Europe, particularly of Sicily and Calabria.

*Qualities.*

Three different kinds of manna are found in commerce, viz.: the manna in tear, or flake manna, *manna lacrymata*, which is in round, solid, and light pieces, of a white colour, of a saccharine, and having

scarcely any nauseous taste; the manna in sorts, *manna communis*, is in masses, formed of yellowish flakes, united together by a brownish juice, of a less saccharine taste than the former, but insipid and nauseous; the fat manna, *manna inferior*, is in soft, viscous masses, of a brown colour, of a disagreeable taste, and mixed with a great many impurities.

According to Thénard, this substance is composed of a peculiar principle, which he has called *mannite*, and which is found to exist in manna in variable proportions; of crystallizable sugar, of an uncrystallizable mucous matter having a nauseous taste, and to which manna appears to be indebted for its purgative properties.

Mannite is white, crystallized in silky flakes, composed of small semi-transparent needles, of a saccharine taste, soluble in water and alcohol, principally when warm, and incapable of producing the vinous fermentation, and, consequently, of furnishing alcohol.

#### Medical Properties.

Manna is a very mild purgative; it appears even that, when it is recently collected, it has no action on the intestinal canal; since, in the country where it is gathered, it is employed for the same purposes as sugar. By the alterations produced by age, it acquires its laxative properties. Indeed, the older it is, the more powerful are its effects.

According to Mr. Vassal, *mannite* produces no purgative effect, which renders the flake manna generally preferable.

#### Employment.

Dose, one drachm to three ounces, in milk. This enters in the composition of our worm powders.

---

No. 136.

## BALM.

*Latin Name*—MELISSA OFFICINALIS.

*English Name*—COMMON BALM.

#### Botanical Character.

Class XIV.—DIDYNAMIA.

Order I.—GYMNOSPERMIA.

*Genus*—MELISSA—Calyx angular, scarose, with the upper lip ascending, bifid.

*Species*—OFFICINALIS—Racemes axillary, verticillate; pedicles simple.

#### Description.

This plant rises two feet high; leaves egg-shaped, spreading, rough, ribbed, veined, deeply serrated, of a bright green colour, placed upon long petioles; flowers, white, ringent, proceeding from the alae of the wings.

No. 136.

MELISSA OFFICINALIS.



COMMON BALM.

No. 138

VERBASCUM THAPSUS.



COMMON MULLEN.





being united with liverwort, is said to have permanently cured a lady in South Carolina of the consumption in its last stage. A strong decoction of this plant, when given to children, will purge, and expel also worms. This root has also been used, in combination with purgatives, to expel the tænia or tape worm; and it is said with success.

*Employment.*

Given in the form of syrup or decoction.

---

No. 138.

**MULLEN.** *The Leaves and Blossoms.*

*Latin Name*—*VERBASCUM THAPSUS.*

*English Name*—*COMMON MULLEN.*

*Botanical Character.*

Class V.—*PENTANDRIA.*

Order I.—*MONOGYNIA.*

*Genus*—*VERBASCUM*—Corolla rotate, somewhat unequal; capsule 3-celled, 2-valved.

*Species*—*THAPSUS*—Leaves decurrent, on each side, tomentose; stem simple.

*Description.*

This stem rises two or three feet in height; leaves large, without foot-stalks, at the base decurrent, oblong, pointed, indented at the margin, and covered on both sides with a fine down or hair; flowers yellow, and clothe the extremity of the stalk, and are produced in succession, from the bottom to the top. Calyx cut into five acute segments, and covered with down; corolla also divided into five segments, which are blunt and somewhat unequal.

*Locality.*

This plant is a native of Great Britain, and grows plentifully with us, along the road-sides and in old fields.

*Qualities.*

The leaves of this plant possess a bitterish subastringent taste, and a mucilaginous quality. The flowers contain saccharine, chlorophylle, yellow resin, volatile oil, malic and phosphoric acid.

*Medical Properties.*

The blossoms of this plant are anodyne, antispasmodic, pectoral, &c. They make a very pleasant tea, which is useful in coughs, hæmoptysis, hæmorrhage, &c. The leaves are very useful in dysentery, and in piles. A decoction of the leaves may be drunk in dysentery; and in piles, they make a valuable fomentation to discuss the tumours.

In the form of a poultice, the leaves and pith of the stalk are useful in white swellings.

*Employment.*

As above directed.



No. 139.

SCUTELLARIA LATERIFLORA.



OFFICIAL SCULLCAP.

No. 139.

## SCULLCAP.

*Latin Name*—SCUTELLARIA LATERIFLORA.*English Name*—OFFICINAL SCULLCAP.*Vulgar Names*—MAD-WEED, HOOD-WORT, BLUE PIMPORNELL.*Botanical Character.*

Class XIV.—DIDYNAMIA.

Order I.—GYMNOSPERMIA.

*Genus*—SCUTELLARIA—Calyx bilabiate, persistent, upper lip with a lid covering the seeds; corolla bilabiate; upper lip concave, entire; lower trilobe; stamens cliclynamous; seeds 4, in the closed calyx.

*Species*—LATERIFLORA—Branched and smooth; leaves petiolate and thin, ovate dentate, the lower ones subcordate; racemes axillary, leafy.

*Description.*

Root perennial, fibrous, yellow; stem erect, from one to three feet high, branched, diffuse, smooth, quadrangular; branches opposite; leaves on long petioles, thin, nearly membranous, opposite, subcordate on the stem, ovate on the branches, dentate, acute, somewhat rugose; flowers pale blue, on long lateral axillary racemes, bracteated by bracts, ovate, acute, entire, subsessile; each flower axillary to one bract, and pedunculated; bracts distichal; flower unilateral; calyx scutellate; seed oval, verrucose.

*Locality.*

This plant is found all over the United States, in meadows, woods, near water, &c.; blossoming in the summer.

*Qualities.*

This plant has very little smell, and the taste is a passive bitterish. The juice of the plant is a little coloured with red.

*Medical Properties.*

Tonic, nervine, and antispasmodic. It is remarkably efficacious in chorea, or St. Vitus' dance; with the infusion I have cured a great number of cases of this disease. It has of late become quite famous as a cure for the bite of mad dogs. Its property as a medicine in this case was first discovered by Dr. Vanderesveer, towards 1772. He used it with the utmost success, and is said to have, till 1815, at which period he died, preserved 400 persons and 1000 cattle from becoming affected with the disease, after they were bitten by rabid animals. It is likewise stated that his son prevented, relieved, or cured, 40 persons in three years, in the states of New-York and New-Jersey, by the use of this article. It is also very useful in convulsions, tetanus, and tremours.

Rafinesque says, "that the dried plant gave one fourth of soluble

water, and a very active extract. The substances found in it by Cadet, were, 1. A yellow-green oil, fixed, and soluble in ether; 2. A bitter principle, soluble in water, alcohol, and ether; 3. Chlorophylle; 4. A peculiar volatile matter, smelling and tasting like the principle of antiscorbutic plants; 5. An essential oil; 6. Albumen; 7. A sweet mucous substance; 7. A peculiar astringent principle; 9. Leguine. When burnt, the ashes afford the chlorure of soda, and even other salts." "It is therefore preposterous," says he, "to deem such a plant inert." "The facts already known, prove that it is tonic, astringent, antispasmodic, and antihydrophobic."

*Employment.*

Given in the form of infusion, to be drank freely through the day.

---

No. 140.

**BETH-ROOT.** *The whole Plant.*

*Latin Name*—TRILLIUM LATIFOLIUM.

*English Name*—BROAD-LEAF BETH-ROOT.

*Vulgar Names*—BETH-ROOT, RATTLESNAKE-ROOT, WAKE ROBIN, COUGH-ROOT, INDIAN BALM, GROUND LILY, &c.

*Botanical Character.*

Class VI.—HEXANDRIA.

Order III.—TRIGYNIA.

*Genus*—TRILLIUM—Perigone double, marcescent, each 3-parted, exterior calciform, interior corolliform; 6 stamina inserted at the base of the segments, nearly equal; anthers linear; pistils oval; 3 linear stigmas; style seldom; berry 3-celled, polysperm.

*Species*—LATIFOLIUM—Leaves subsessile, very broad, dilate wider than long, subromboidal, undulate, both ends shortly acuminate; many-nerved, and reticulate; calyx and petals subequal, oval, acuminate, reflexed, revolute; stamens shorter than the pistils.

*Description.*

Root perennial; stem terete, smooth, erect, with 3 verticillate leaves, and 1 terminal flower.

*Locality.*

This plant is a native of North America.

*Qualities.*

The roots are oblong, or terete, tuberous, brown outside, white inside, from one to five inches long, with a few branching fibres; they have a faint smell, resembling cedar, and an aromatic taste, like co-paiba.

*Medical Properties.*

The root of this plant is astringent, pectoral, tonic, antiseptic, alter-

No. 140.

TRILLIUM LATIFOLIUM.



BETH-ROOT.

No. 141.

ARTEMISIA ABSINTHIUM.



WORMWOOD.



ative, &c. The root is employed internally, in hæmaturia, or bleeding from the kidneys, bladder, or urethra; in uterine hæmorrhage, immoderate menstrual evacuations, spitting of blood, hectic fever, asthma, cough, &c.; in doses of a teaspoonful of the powdered root, or in infusion. In fluor albus of females, I have employed an infusion of this root with much success. "Externally, this root is very useful in the form of a poultice, in tumours, indolent and putrid ulcers, carbuncles, and mortifications, by itself, or, what is still better, in combination with blood-root," says Rafinesque. As a tonic, this article, in combination with blood-root, is said to be, by the same writer, "a certain cure for inflamed carbuncles and ulcers, after a purge has been administered." It is also said, that this root restrains gangrene. In female complaints, this is a good astringent, given in menorrhagia, lúcorrhœa, and, after parturition, to astringe the uterine organs.

*Employment.*

The powdered root may be given in teaspoonful doses. Externally, in the form of poultice. The infusion is made by adding a pint of boiling water to a tablespoonful of the powder; drink freely.

---

No. 141.

## WORMWOOD. *The whole Plant.*

*Latin Name*—ARTEMISIA ABSINTHIUM.

*English Name*—COMMON WORMWOOD.

*Botanical Character.*

Class XIX.—SYNGENESIA.

Order I.—POLYGAMIA SUPERFLUA.

*Genus*—ARTEMISIA—Receptacle naked; seeds crowned with a slight margin; calyx imbricated, hemispherical; florets of the ray obsolete, or 3-cleft, sometimes wanting.

*Species*—ABSINTHIUM—Leaves compound, multifid; flowers subglobular, pendent; receptacle villous.

*Description.*

Stem herbaceous, covered with a whitish down; leaves tripinnatifid, whitish on both sides; flowers flosculous, small, yellowish, forming a long and pyramidal panicle; the florets of the centre hermaphrodite, fertile, 5-dentate; those of the circumference, female, bidentate, without pappus.

*Locality.*

This is a perennial plant, native of Europe, but raised in our gardens; it is found growing in stony and uncultivated places in Europe and America. Flowers in July and August.

*Qualities.*

This plant has a strong and aromatic smell, and a very bitter and aromatic taste.

According to Mr. Braconnot, it is composed of a very bitter matter, containing nitrogen, soluble in cold water, but very little so in alcohol, 18; a matter containing nitrogen, and almost insipid, 8; a resiniform substance, extremely bitter, soluble in alcohol and boiling water, from which it precipitates on cooling, 1.4; a green volatile oil, 0.9; chlorophyllin, 3; albumen, 7.5; fecula, 1; salts of potassa, 7.5; lignous fibre and water, 552. Cold water and alcohol dissolve its active principles.

*Medical Properties.*

Wormwood is possessed of very valuable stimulant and tonic properties. If administered in too large doses, it is apt to create heat in the epigastric region, thirst, and all the other symptoms of irritation of the stomach. When given in moderate doses, it promotes appetite and digestion, quickens the circulation, and imparts to the whole system a strengthening influence. It is given in all cases requiring the administration of tonics; in dyspepsia, and other atonic states of the intestinal canal, in certain cases of amenorrhœa, chronic leucorrhœa, and in obstinate diarrhœa, depending upon debility of the membranes of the intestines. It is often administered in intermittent fevers with complete success. It is likewise given as an anthelmintic. The herb is very useful in fomentations for bruises, and inflammations in general. The oil enters into the green, or rheumatic oil, which is a valuable application in rheumatism.

*Employment.*

Dose, of the powder, from one scruple to one drachm; infusion, from half to one ounce, one pint of cold water. Externally, as a fomentation.

The following articles are occasionally used, and highly extolled by many, but not all yet fully introduced into our materia medica.

**AMERICAN COLUMBO**—(*Trasera Verticellata*.)—Root bitter and nauseous; vomits and purges; *tonic* given in weakness of the stomach, attended with costiveness.

**MOTHER-WORT**—(*Leonurus Cardica*.)—Is nervine, antispasmodic, and emmenagogue; useful in hysteria, and to promote the menses. Given in the form of tea.

**LAUREL**—(*Kalmia Latifolia*.)—The powdered leaves are employed successfully in *tinea capitis*, and in certain forms of fever.

**LUNG-WORT**.—Found growing on maple trees; is good in coughs and defluxions of the lungs.

**MAIDEN HAIR**.—This plant is mucilaginous and subastringent; good in coughs, asthma, pleurisy, jaundice, &c.

**WATER MELON**.—The fruit is a good diuretic, and very cooling in hot bilious constitutions. The seeds, infused in Holland gin, make an excellent medicine in dropsy and suppression of urine.

**NETTLE, STINKING**.—A powerful styptic.

**JERUSALEM OAK**—(*Chenopodium Anthelminticum*.)—It is emmenagogue, deobstruent, and anthelmintic; the oil is much used as a vermifuge.

**WILD MARJORAM**—(*Origanum Vulgare*.)—Fragrant, pungent, acrid, bitterish, stomachic, corroborant, detergent, stimulant, menagogue, diaphoretic; useful in tea, for cough, asthma, chlorosis, œdema. The distilled oil has all the properties; it is acrid and caustic, burns the skin, relieves toothache, &c.

**BROOMRAPE**—(*Orobanche Americana*.)—Astringent, antiseptic, and antisiphilitic; considered in the West as a specific for gonorrhœa and syphilis; useful in obstinate ulcers, aphthous and herpetic sores, diarrhœa, and dysentery.

**PARTRIDGE BERRY**—(*Gaultheria Procumbens*.)—Mild diuretic and emmenagogue; used in New-England to cure dropsy; given in tea. Berries mild, astringent. A popular remedy for diarrhœa in the North, and for disury in Carolina. Said to facilitate parturition.

**RED MULBERRY**—(*Morus Rubra*.)—Fruit refrigerant and corroborant; useful in sore-throat, angina, putrid fevers; syrup chiefly used. Bark is said to expel the tœnia. Fruit contains tartaric acid.

**BEECH DROPS**—(*Septamnium Virginianum*.) Called also cancer root. Root and stem astringent, bitterish, nauseous, useful in cancers;

base of Martin's powder; (with white arsenic, sulphur, and ranunculus;) a painful remedy for curing cancers by application, but injurious in scrofula and scrofulous cancers.

**ST. JOHN'S-WORT**—(*Hypericum Perforatum.*)—Is vulnerary, pectoral, pellant, nervine; blossoms chiefly used; although yellow, they dye oils red; infused in bear's oil, sweet oil, &c. they make a fine balsamic ointment for wounds, sores, swellings, ulcers, tumours, rough skins, &c. The tea of the leaves gives relief in diseases of the breast and lungs. Used by empirics in diarrhœa, menorrhœa, hysterics, hypochondria, mania, low spirits. A syrup made with sage is a specific for coughs. Dose, a tablespoonful for a child twelve months old; half if six months old. An ointment composed of this article, with bitter-sweet, elder bark, and stramonium, is said to be a specific in hard indolent tumours of the breast.

**CORSICAN WORM-WEED**—(*Fucus Helminthochorotos.*)—This plant grows on the coast of the Mediterranean, and especially of the island of Corsica. This plant (the whole of which may be used) is possessed of very powerful vermifuge properties, which act very powerfully upon the intestinal worms. It is principally administered to children, for the expulsion of the lumbricoid worms. The dose of the powder is from ten grains to two drachms, mixed with honey, &c.

**COWHAGE**—(*Dolichos Pruriens.*)—The operation of this article seems to be merely mechanical. It has been found particularly useful in expelling the round worm, *lumbricus teres*; the spiculæ irritating and aiding its expulsion, by wounding it, without affecting the intestines. It is prepared by dipping the pods in syrup or molasses, and then, with a knife, scraping off the hairs along with the syrup, until it forms a mixture of the thickness of honey, which is given in doses of a teaspoonful to a tablespoonful in the morning, then followed by a brisk cathartic. However, it is advised before exhibiting it, to prepare the patient by a gentle purgative, as its efficacy is generally much increased by this practice, probably by exposing the worms more to the action of this substance.

**WATER HEMLOCK**—(*Cicuta Maculata.*)—This plant acts in the same manner as the narcotic poisons. It has been used of late by several practitioners, as a substitute for the *conium maculatum*. Its effects were very analogous to those of the true hemlock, but rather more powerful. A primary symptom which attended a larger dose, was nausea and vomiting.

**STRONG-SCENTED LETTUCE**—(*Lactuca Virosa.*)—This plant acts upon the nervous system in a manner similar to the hyosciamus and the other solaneæ; this is the reason why it may be substituted in many cases for opium. In sufficiently large doses, it produces nausea, alvine evacuations, and often, especially in cases of œdema or dropsy, a remarkable increase in the secretion of urine. It has been exhibited with success in ascites, engorgements of the abdominal viscera,

jaundice, &c., and as a substitute for opium, in nervous cases. Extract, the dose from two grains to one scruple.

**VERVINE**—(*Verbena Hastata*.)—The roots of this plant, when boiled down to a strong decoction, and that decoction drank, are very beneficial as a tonic in intermittents and scrofula; they open obstructions of the viscera, promote the menses, and are good in gravelly complaints, coughs, wheezing, and expel worms. They should be prepared in strong decoction, and drank daily.

**YARROW**—(*Millefolium*.)—This plant possesses considerable medicinal property, as a detergent, purifies the blood, opens the pores, removes obstructions, &c. It stops the spitting of blood, and cures the bleeding piles. It is also very beneficial in dysentery. It may be given in the form of decoction, sweetened with honey.

**WINTER GREEN**—(*Gautiera Repens*.)—Winter green is stimulant, anodyne, astringent, emmenagogue, antispasmodic, diaphoretic, milky, and cordial; and a popular remedy in many parts of the country. It is generally used as a tea; but the essence and oil possess eminently all the properties, and are kept in the shops. The tea is used as a palliative in asthma, to restore strength, promote menstruation, also in cases of debility, in the secondary stage of diarrhoea, and to promote the secretion of milk in the breast; it is a very agreeable and refreshing beverage. The oil relieves the toothache, or allays the pain of carious teeth. The Indians make great use of this plant as a stimulant, restorative cordial, &c. It is injurious in fever. The oil is used as a disguise to many of the popular panaceas.

**ICELAND MOSS**—(*Lichen Icelandicus*.)—The Iceland moss, on account of its bitterness, acts as a tonic; the great quantity of fecula which it contains renders it also very nourishing. Deprived of its bitter principle, by repeated washings, or rather by macerating it in a weak alkaline lie, as Berzelius recommends, it is used as an aliment by the inhabitants of Iceland, and of some other parts of the north of Europe. It then acts as gum arabic and other mucilaginous substances; and it is very frequently administered in pulmonary catarrhs, in diarrhoea, and other affections requiring the exhibition of remedies of this kind. When the bitter principle is not separated from it, it succeeds in chronic diseases of the lungs, in obstinate and inflammatory diarrhoea, dyspepsia, and generally in all cases where it is necessary to stimulate, in a slight degree, the digestive organs, and to promote, at the same time, the strength of the patient, by tolerably abundant alimentation, without fatiguing the stomach.

**ICE PLANT**—(*Crystallinum*.)—The root of this plant has by some been thought almost an infallible remedy for fits in children. The juice, diluted in cold water, is useful in sore eyes. The roots should be pulverized, and kept in bottles. Children troubled with fits may take from half to one teaspoonful of the powder, in a cup of peony-root tea, &c.

**GROUND IVY**—(*Glechoma Hederacea*.)—The leaves of this plant, made in a decoction, are a good purifier of the blood, a pectoral, &c. This decoction is good in consumption, obstructions, laxity, and debility of the viscera; for cleansing and healing ulcers in the lungs, kidneys, and other internal parts; and is likewise a good remedy in jaundice, and asthmatic coughs.

**GOLDEN ROD**—(*Solidago Virgaurea*.)—The flowers are aperient and corroborant, and the leaves are gently astringent. The flowers have been found beneficial in removing obstructions of the urinary organs, in gravelly complaints, ulcerations of the bladder; is good in vitiation of the humours, and in the first stages of dropsies. The leaves are good in debility, and laxity of the viscera or bowels, and all disorders proceeding from that cause. They may be taken in infusion, or decoction.

**GOLDEN THREAD**—(*Coptis Trifolia*.)—It is a pure, intense bitter, without smell or astringency; is tonic, stomachic, promoting digestion; useful in dyspepsia, debility after fevers, and whenever a pure bitter is required. A tincture made with an ounce of the roots, in a pound of diluted alcohol, is recommended in doses of a teaspoonful thrice a day; or ten or twenty grains of the powder; both agree with the stomach.

**FIVE FINGER**—(*Polentilla Reptans*.)—The root is a gentle astringent, and has been found by experience to be very beneficial in fevers, and particularly when there is great debility, lassitude, and night sweats, which last it seldom fails to check; it also helps the appetite. It is taken in decoction, or it may be boiled with milk. It is serviceable in allaying fluxes, immoderate flow of the menses, &c.

**FEVERFEW**—(*Matricaria Vulgaris*.)—*Leaves and flowers*.—Both the wild and garden feverfew have the same virtues. They are warm, aperient, carminative, bitter, and strengthen the stomach, expel wind, promote the menses, destroy worms, and are beneficial in hysterical complaints and lowness of spirits. For a decoction, pour two quarts of boiling water on two handfuls of the leaves, of which a teacupful may be taken three or four times a day, in order to promote the menses; the same may be taken in colds and fevers. In hysterical complaints, a teaspoonful of the compound spirit of lavender may be added to the above decoction.

**CLEAVERS**—(*Gallium Aparine*.)—We copy the following from Dr. Smith's Botanic Physician:

“Cleavers is one of the most valuable diuretics that our country produces. I have found it an excellent and speedy medicine in all suppressions of the urine and gravelly complaints, and is a powerful discutient.

“It has also been found beneficial in the cure of the scurvy, and spitting of blood. The expressed juice of this plant, mixed with oatmeal to the consistence of a poultice, and applied cold over an indo-

lent tumour, three times a day, keeping the bowels open in the mean time by castor oil, and taking a tablespoonful of the juice every morning, will often disperse it in a few days.

“Infusions of this herb should always be made in *cold water*, heat destroying its virtues. Three or four ounces of the dried herb to a quart of water, is sufficient; this should be drank for common daily drink. It is an admirable remedy in gravelly disorders, often curing them entirely, alone. It seems to possess a solvent power over the stone, or gravel, crumbling it into a sandy substance, so that it is discharged without difficulty. When urinary obstructions proceed from a collection of cold, slimy, or muddy substance in the kidneys or bladder, this effectually clears it out, in all cases. In inflammatory affections of the kidneys or bladder, the cleavers infusion is peculiarly applicable, from its cooling as well as diuretic quality. It gives great relief in the scalding of the clap.

“The cold nature of cleavers, however, renders its employment in dropsies, and other diseases of cold and debility, improper.”

---

CENTAURY—(*Centaurium Minor.*)—*Leaves and flowers.*—Centaury is justly esteemed one of the most efficacious bitters indigenous to the United States, and is a good substitute for the English gentian, which it resembles in taste. It is a good stomachic, emmenagogue, febrifuge, and vermifuge.

Two ounces of the leaves and flowers of centaury, and one ounce of orange-peel, may be infused in two quarts of brandy for two weeks. One tablespoonful of this tincture taken before breakfast and dinner, will create an appetite; and children having worms, may take two teaspoonfuls or more, every morning, which will effectually destroy them. In the cure, and to prevent intermittent fevers, a wineglassful, with twenty drops of elixir vitriol in it, is recommended twice a day, on an empty stomach. In fevers, a tea made of two ounces of the flowery tops of centaury, and a handful of balm, in two quarts of rain water, may be drank five or six times a day. In order to restore the menses, pour two quarts of water on two ounces of tops, and steep for half an hour; then strain, and add a pint of rum. Dose, a teacupful four times a day, together with fomentations, &c.

---

CARAWAY—(*Carum Carui.*)—*The seeds.*—This plant is cultivated in our gardens, both for medicinal and culinary purposes. On account of their aromatic smell, and warm, pungent taste, the seeds of caraway may be classed among the finest stomachics and carminatives of our climate. To persons afflicted with flatulency, and liable to colics, if administered in proper quantities, they generally afford considerable relief, and may sometimes be used with advantage in agues. They give an agreeable flavour to more powerful tonics and stimulants, and may therefore be combined with them advantageously.

---

STRIPED BLOOD-WORT—(*Laphathum Sanguineum Rubrum.*)—The properties of this plant are, antiseptic, voluntary, astringent, and pectoral. A decoction of it drank will immediately stop immoderate flowing of the menses, and other hæmorrhages. The powder of

blood-wort, mixed with an equal quantity of blood-root, and a little alum, and used as a snuff for polypus in the nose, frequently destroys it in the course of a week. The decoction of this root, made into a syrup, has been found very beneficial in consumptions, accompanied with spitting of blood. The juice of the green leaves of blood-wort, boneset, and rattlesnake plantain, equal parts, and a gill drank at a dose, is said to be an infallible cure for the bite of a rattlesnake, or any other poisonous reptile. The bruised leaves should also be applied to the wound, and changed often.

**WHORTLEBERRY**—(*Vaccinium*.)—This plant is vulgarly called "huckleberry," and is familiar to most persons. The fruit is much used and esteemed.

The berries contain very considerable medicinal properties. They are, with the root, strongly *diuretic*, and they seldom fail of relieving or curing gravelly and dropsical affections. They may be bruised, put in gin, and drank as the stomach will bear.

**HORSEMINT**—(*Mornardus Punctana*.)—This species of mint is aromatic, stimulant, sudorific, and diuretic. A strong decoction or tea of it affords immediate relief in suppression of urine from the gravel. The oil, applied externally, is excellent to remove painful affections.

## MINERALS, MINERAL ACIDS, SALTS, ANIMAL AND EARTHY SUBSTANCES, &c.

### OIL OF VITRIOL, SULPHURIC ACID—(*Acidum Sulphuricum.*)

#### *Description and History.*

This acid is liquid, colourless or brownish, inodorous, and of a very acid taste. It exists in nature in great abundance, combined with certain salifiable bases, such as lime, alumen, soda, &c. It may be prepared by burning, in a leaden chamber, a mixture of eight parts of sulphur with one of nitre. The floor, being covered with water, absorbs the gas, and diluted sulphuric acid is the result.

#### *General Properties and Employment.*

It is extremely caustic, destroying the clothes, as well as the texture of the body, wherever it is applied. It is the principal article in the *elixir of vitriol*, and much in use as a remedy in *night sweats* in consumption. It is used by some as an astringent to check the flow of blood in hæmoptysis and other kinds of bleeding. It is never administered in a concentrated state.

---

### SULPHURIC ETHER—(*Æther Sulphuricus.*)

#### *Description.*

Sulphuric ether is a colourless, limpid liquid, extremely volatile, of a strong peculiar smell. It is formed from sulphuric acid and alcohol.

#### *Properties and Employment.*

It is a good antispasmodic and stimulant. Its dose is from twenty to thirty drops, given in some kind of tea. It is exhibited with advantage in most of the nervous affections, such as a spasmodic vomiting, nervous colics, hysteria, and asthma. It is also useful in typhoid fevers, in calming the convulsive motions, hiccough, &c. Externally it is used as a refrigerant.

---

### LIME—(*Calx.*)

This article is so familiar to all, that it needs no description.

#### *Properties and Employment.*

Lime water is prepared by pouring hot water upon unslaked lime, is antiacid and antiseptic. By adding a small portion of the muriate of mercury, it forms the *yellow wash*.

COPPERAS, GREEN VITRIOL, SULPHATE OF IRON—(*Sulphas Ferri.*)*Description and History.*

Copperas is a salt composed of iron and sulphuric acid. It is found native, and also combined with other substances.

*Medical Properties.*

We use it only as an external application. By submitting copperas to the action of a red heat, a red powder is formed, which acts as a very powerful astringent. It is applied in cases of hæmorrhage, piles, &c. It is also serviceable, combined with lard, in cutaneous eruptions.

SAL AMMONIAC, MURIATE OF AMMONIA—(*Murias Ammoniac.*)*Description and History.*

This article is found in nature, principally in the vicinity of volcanoes. Mount Ætna furnishes it in considerable quantities. It comes to us in masses, concave on one side, and convex on the other, or in conical pieces, crystalline, white, inodorous, of a bitter and acrid taste. It is compressible and difficult to pulverize.

*Medical Properties.*

This is a cooling application for inflammation, and especially for erysipelas and inflammatory rheumatism.

Muriate of ammonia, in combination with a decoction of wormwood, makes an excellent application for inflammations, the result of sprains or contusions. It should be applied warm. In inflammation of the brain, a wash made of sal ammoniac, vinegar, and water, is very useful in relieving the heat of the head.

MURIATE OF MERCURY, CORROSIVE SUBLIMATE—(*Murias Hydrargyri, Hydrargyri Oxymurias.*)*Description and History.*

This compound is found in the shops in the form of circular pieces, white, semitransparent on the edges; convex, smooth, and shining on one side; extremely acrid, caustic, and metallic taste. It is prepared by mixing in a close vessel four parts of common salt, one part of peroxide of manganese, and five parts of sulphate of mercury. This mixture is submitted to heat, and the muriate of mercury volatilizes and condenses on the superior sides of the vase.

*Medical Properties.*

We use it only as a caustic, and as an external application. With borax or lime water it also forms the *yellow wash*.

SPANISH FLIES, CANTHARIDES—(*Meloe Vesicatoria*.)*Description and History.*

These are insects very common in Spain, Italy, and France, where they are found in large families on the fraxinus, lilac, viburnum, &c. They have a body from six to ten lines long; they are of a shining, golden, green appearance; they have a strong, penetrating, unpleasant, and peculiar odour; their taste extremely acrid; their powder is of a brownish gray, intermixed with shining particles, of a metallic green odour.

*Medical Properties.*

Applied externally, the action of Spanish flies is confined principally to the skin; however, their active principles may be absorbed, and cause strangury, hæmaturia, priapism, &c. Taken internally, they act as the most energetic, acrid poisons; and seem to have a determination to the urinary organs, which they stimulate violently. However, they are often used by many as a stimulating diuretic, in the treatment of incontinence of urine, gleet, impotence, &c. We, however, seldom use them either internally or externally.

SALTPETRE, NITRATE OF POTASH—(*Nitras Potassæ*.)*Description and History.*

This salt is found in large quantities in nature, principally in the East Indies, in Spain, in the kingdom of Naples, and in old walls, on the surface of which it effloresces. It is also extracted, by chemical process, from the earth; found under old houses, barns, &c. It is white, transparent, unalterable in the air, inodorous, of a cool and sharp taste, followed by a slightly bitter after taste.

*Medical Properties.*

This article is refrigerant and diuretic; it enters into the urinary decoction.

RED OXIDE OF LEAD—RED LEAD—(*Plumbi Oxidum Rubrum*.)*Description and History.*

Red lead is found in the form of a powder, of a very bright orange red colour, insipid, inodorous, and of a specific gravity of 8.95. It is composed of lead and oxygen; formed by submitting common lead to a great degree of heat, in a large oven prepared for that purpose, which produces a scum upon the surface. This forms an oxide of lead. The white lead is prepared by submitting common lead to the action of acetic acid.

*Medical Properties.*

The properties of red and white lead depend not upon the lead itself, but upon the oxygen with which they are combined. These preparations form the basis of some plasters which, by reason of the large quantity of oxygen they contain, are very serviceable.

SUGAR OF LEAD, SACCHARUM SATURNI, SUPER ACETATE OF LEAD—  
(*Plumbi Superacetas.*)

*Description and History.*

In common, it is found in masses, composed of slender prismatic crystals, aggregated, of a yellowish colour, slightly efflorescent. It has a very sweet and styptic taste, is abundantly soluble in water, but scarcely forms a transparent solution even with distilled water, owing to a slight decomposition.

*Medical Properties.*

As an external application, sugar of lead is often employed to obtain its astringent effect. A solution of it, of the strength of three grains to an ounce of water, is used as an injection in gonorrhœa, and, producing no irritation, is not liable to be attended with the injurious consequences which sometimes arise from preparations more active. A solution rather weaker, is used as a collyrium, or eye-water, in ophthalmia, and is applied even in a state of active inflammation. A stronger solution is a common application in superficial inflammation.

CAUSTIC POTASSÆ—(*Potassæ Fusa, Lapis Causticus.*)

*Description and History.*

This article is found in a state of round sticks, like the nitrate of silver, of a grayish white, sometimes reddish, with a smell like slaking lime, and a corrosive action on the mouth; exposed to the air, it attacks quickly the carbonic acid, and moisture of the atmosphere, and is thus converted into a very deliquescent subcarbonate.

*Medical Properties.*

Caustic potash is a powerful escharotic. It quickly decomposes the parts with which it is put in contact. It is principally used to remove tumours, and to form issues; which are most conveniently made by placing on the skin a piece of linen, spread with adhesive plaster, and perforated with a hole of the size of the proposed issue. The caustic, being held in a paper, is then applied to all the skin which is left bare by the perforation. This skin immediately becomes moist, and turns a dark colour, a burning sensation taking place in the part. If the caustic be good, the vitality of the skin will be destroyed in ten or fifteen minutes. It may then be washed with vinegar, to neutralize what caustic remains. The yest poultice must now be used. The dead skin commonly sloughs off in about a week or two. Caustic potash differs from all other caustics, in exciting no pain or inflammation, except when first applied, and then only for a few moments.

CREAM OF TARTAR, CRYSTALS OF TARTAR, SUPERTARTRATE OF  
POTASH—(*Potassa Supertartras.*)

*Description and History.*

This salt exists in small, irregular crystals, generally run together in small masses, white, semitransparent, and gritty, with an acid taste.

The casks in which some kinds of wine are kept, become gradually incrustated with a hard, saline substance, tinged with the colouring matter of the wine, which has long been known by the former name of *tartar*. When this saline substance is purified by solution, filtration, and crystallization, it constitutes the common cream of tartar.

*Medical Properties.*

Cream of tartar is refrigerant, laxative, and diuretic. Small doses, in solution, form a cooling drink in febrile diseases, and excite the urinary secretion; large doses, in substance, occasion copious watery discharges from the bowels; hence, it is very useful in dropsical cases, whether it operates by the kidneys or alimentary canal. When added to the resinous purgatives, it renders them better suited to inflammatory cases, as in the compound powder of jalap and mandrake. Combined with sulphur, it is a popular internal remedy in various diseases of the skin. Its dose, when its laxative effects are required, is from two to six drachms. Combined with sulphur, it is excellent in the piles.

SAL ÆRATUS—(*Potassæ Bicarbonas*—*Bicarbonate of Potash*.)

*Description and History.*

This is a white alkaline salt, prepared by exposing pearl ash in wooden boxes, perforated with holes, to the carbonic acid of a distiller's or brewer's fermented vat, for several months, until the alkali is nearly or quite neutralized.

*Medical Properties.*

Sal æratus is a very valuable remedy. Its comparatively agreeable taste renders it one of the most pleasant and efficacious alkaline remedies, both as an antiacid, diuretic, or antilithic. It is preferable to the carbonate as an ingredient in the effervescing draught, and requires a quarter less of lemon juice for its saturation. It enters into our neutralizing cordial, or mixture, which we find so remarkably successful in every species of bowel complaints.

CASTILE SOAP—(*Sapo Venetiensis*.)

*Description and History.*

Castile soap is made from olive oil and soda; its marble appearance being given by the sulphate and red oxide of iron which are mixed in at different stages of the process by which it is made. Good soap should have little odour, and a disagreeable alkaline taste. With water it forms an opaque milky solution; and with alcohol a nearly transparent one.

*Medical Properties.*

Applied externally, it is detergent and cleansing. In pharmacy it is used for the formation of pills. It enters into our antidyspeptic pills.

BORAX, SUB-BORATE OF SODA—(*Sodæ Sub-boras.*)*Description and History.*

It is found in large quantities in several lakes of Thibet and China, and in some of the mines of Peru. It is purified by melting it over the fire, then dissolving it while in powder, and permitting it to crystallize. It is white, semitransparent, and of a styptic and urinous taste.

*Medical Properties.*

It is used only externally as an astringent and gargle, in aphthæ, excessive salivation, attended with ulcerations of the tongue, and of the internal surface of the cheeks. It is remarkably antiphlogistic, or cooling, in its nature, and very readily allays heat and irritation. A solution of it forms the *cooling wash*, which is useful in ophthalmia and other inflammations.

SULPHATE OF QUININE—(*Sulphas Quiniæ.*)*Description and History.*

This is a neutral, saline substance, resulting from the action of sulphuric acid upon quinia. It is found in commerce in very minute needles, of a pearly white, flexible, resembling fibrous and silky asbestos, united in radiated flakes, and of an excessively bitter taste. It is obtained by repeatedly boiling the yellow Peruvian bark in water, acidulated with sulphuric acid.

*Medical Properties.*

The sulphate of quinine possesses the tonic, and principally the febrifuge properties of the bark from which it is obtained, and is exhibited in the same cases. Where, from irritability of the stomach, the bark cannot be retained, the sulphate of quinine may be usefully employed. Much of this article is adulterated; some of it mixed with arsenic, and serious effects have followed its use.

FLOWERS OF SULPHUR, SUBLIMED SULPHUR—(*Sulphur Sublimatum.*)*Description and History.*

This is a preparation of sulphur, obtained by subliming common brimstone, in a large cast iron vessel communicating with a chamber, which is used as a receiver. For medicinal use, it is then washed, in order to remove a small quantity of sulphuric acid, which is formed during the operation. It is insoluble in alcohol and in water, but it dissolves in fatty and essential oils. It combines with almost all the simple metallic substances, and others, and forms, with them, sulphurets.

*Medical Properties.*

Administered internally, in large doses, sulphur acts as a purgative; but taken in less quantity it increases animal heat, and acceleration of the pulse; it promotes the secretion of the bronchia, of the skin, and kidneys; in a word, it acts as a stimulant. Its exhibition for a length of time is capable of producing very serious consequences: such as

hæmorrhage, agitation, fever, &c. It is administered internally, and applied externally in the treatment of piles, itch, and some other cutaneous diseases. It enters into our preparation for the intermittent fever.

SALTS OF HARTSHORN, (SAL CORNU CERVI, SUB-CARBONATE OF AMMONIA.)—(*Ammonia Carbonas.*)

*Description.*

Sub-carbonate of ammonia is an elegant salt, prepared in the following manner: take of the muriate of ammonia, (*murias ammoniæ*,) one pound; of prepared chalk, dried, a pound and a half; reduce them separately to a powder, and sublime in a heat moderately raised, till the retort becomes red. In this preparation a double decomposition takes place, the carbonic acid of the chalk uniting with the ammoniac, and forming sub-carbonate of ammonia, which is volatilized, while muriate of lime remains in the vessel.

*Medical Properties.*

It is nervine and stimulating; of importance as a gentle stimulus in the advanced stages of typhus fever. The stimulus raised by carbonate of ammonia more resembles healthy action than any other article generally made use of. The following is an excellent prescription:

Take carbonate of ammonia, three scruples, (ʒij.)

Gum Arabic and loaf sugar, two drachms, (ʒii.)

Mint water, distilled, eight ounces, (ʒviii.) mix:

Take a tablespoonful, or two, every hour, according to circumstances.

Dr. Fitch, of North-Guilford, Connecticut, prescribes the carbonate in the form of bolus, as follows:

Carbonate of ammonia, finely pulverized, fifty grains;

Pure honey, four tablespoonfuls; mix:

Thoroughly beat up together, until some effervescence takes place. Dose, a teaspoonful once in three or four hours, or oftener, according to circumstances. This prescription I have proved to be very superior in low excitement. Not long before his death, the late Dr. Khun, says a writer, who was one of the most sagacious and discriminating practitioners of this country, told me with some emphasis, that, after an experience of nearly half a century, if he was called upon to say, with what remedy he had done the most good, he should, without hesitation, name the carbonate of ammonia, aided by wine-whey.

WHITE VITRIOL—(*Sulphate of Zinc.*)

White vitriol is found in water, but in an impure state, and in small quantities. It is made by the application of diluted sulphuric acid upon zinc; then suffering the solution to crystallize.

*Medical Properties.*

It is used as an escharotic, in the form of powder, or combined with other articles. Added to water, it makes a cooling wash, and is employed in inflammation of the eyes, and occasionally in the form of injection.

NATIVE SULPHUR—(*Sulphur Vivum.*)

This article is common sulphur as found in its native state. It is a dark brown powder, without much resembling sulphur, as regards appearance, or smell.

*Properties.*

I have found sulphur vivum to be a specific for the itch. It soon cures it, without producing any disagreeable symptoms, or smell, or without the necessity of even changing the clothes.

It should be pulverized, and mixed with fresh butter, or hog's lard; and the part affected bathed, or rubbed with it, as often as there is any itching. This powder appears to be the basis of some of those itch ointments, which are said to cure the disease in a few hours.

This ointment is also useful in salt rheum, herpetic affections, &c.

PART VII.

PHARMACY AND DISPENSATORY.

---

---

PART VIII.

PHARMACY AND DISPENSATORY.

---

---

PART III

PHARMACY AND DISPENSARY

---

## PART VIII.

### PHARMACY AND DISPENSATORY.

---

PHARMACY may be defined that branch of medical science which teaches the art of preparing and combining remedies for the treatment of diseases.

It is the object and province of *materia medica*, to provide or furnish articles or ingredients for the prevention and cure of diseases, and to treat of their properties and virtues. But it is the province of pharmacy to show how these articles are prepared and compounded for administration. It is the design of therapeutics to show the *modus operandi*, or their effects on the human body, and their application to the cure of diseases. At any rate, this is the order which I propose to pursue, although it may differ from some writers.

We wish every one to be deeply impressed with this sacred maxim in physic, that the virtue of a medicine consists wholly in the skill of its application; and that the best and most salutary medicine, if injudiciously administered, may prove injurious.

---

#### *Table of Doses.*

As a general rule, the following table of doses will be quite sufficient; but much must always be left to the judgment of the prescriber, who alone can judge of the constitution, and state of the case:—

A person from fourteen to twenty years of age, may take two thirds of a dose intended for an adult.

From nine to fourteen, one half.

From six to nine, one third.

From four to six, one fourth.

From two to four, one sixth.

From one to two, one tenth.

Below one year, a twelfth.

A woman, generally, should take a little less than a man.

#### *Apothecaries' Weight.*

A pound contains twelve ounces.

An ounce—eight drachms.

A drachm—three scruples.

A scruple—twenty grains.

*Measure for Liquids.*

A pint contains sixteen ounces.

An ounce—eight drachms.

A tablespoonful is about half an ounce.

A teaspoonful is one fourth of a tablespoonful.

Sixty drops make one teaspoonful.

The following are the characters used to express the given quantities of different articles or substances :—

℔ . . . . . pound.

℥ . . . . . ounce.

ʒ . . . . . drachm.

ʒ . . . . . scruple.

gr. . . . . grain.

Some substances are administered in their natural state ; others previously undergo various preparations.

Every article used in medicine should be collected in the right season, and be free as possible from impurities.

The articles of the *materia medica*, in their raw or natural state, are generally unfit for medicinal use, and their remedial powers are often increased by combining two or more of them together ; hence the necessity of preparation and composition, by which we are enabled to form many powerful, as well as elegant, prescriptions.

The medicinal properties of vegetable substances frequently reside in peculiar proximate principles, which, from their relation to certain solvents, can be separated from each other ; and thus, in many cases, the principle on which the medicinal activity of the substance depends, can be obtained in a pure, and, if necessary, in a concentrated state. Resins, for example, are dissolved by alcohol ; gums by water ; extractive matter by either of these liquids, or by a mixture of both ; and by this separation important advantages may be obtained : the medicine is rendered more certain in its operation ; it is more easily preserved, or more conveniently administered. On this are founded the various pharmaceutic preparations of infusions, decoctions, tinctures, medicated wines, and extracts ; forms under which medicines are often employed in preference to their natural state.

Some preliminary operations are frequently had recourse to, of a mechanical nature, to diminish the cohesion of bodies, or enlarge their surface ; such as pulverization, trituration, levigation, granulation, &c.

Pulverization is the term employed when solid bodies are reduced to powder by beating.

Trituration, that where the same effect is produced by continued rubbing.

Levigation denotes the operation when the powder is triturated to a great degree of fineness, the trituration being facilitated by the interposition of a fluid, in which the solid is not soluble. As by any of these operations the powder must consist of particles of unequal size,

the finer are separated from the courser by sifting or washing. *Sifting* is passing the powder over a sieve, the interstices of which are so minute as to allow only the finer particles to pass. *Washing* is an operation performed on substances which are not soluble in water. The powder is diffused through a quantity of that fluid, and the mixture is allowed to remain at rest. The coarser particles quickly subside, and the finer remain suspended. The fluid is then decanted off, the powder is allowed to subside, and it is then dried.

Our different medicinal preparations are arranged under the following heads :—

- |                  |                                |
|------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. Balsams.      | 16. Powders.                   |
| 2. Bitters.      | 17. Poultices.                 |
| 3. Cordials.     | 18. Liquids.                   |
| 4. Caustics.     | 19. Salves.                    |
| 5. Drops.        | 20. Syrups.                    |
| 6. Extracts.     | 21. Ointments.                 |
| 7. Eye Waters.   | 22. Sinapisms.                 |
| 8. Gargles.      | 23. Tinctures.                 |
| 9. Fomentations. | 24. Spirits.                   |
| 10. Injections.  | 25. Decoctions.                |
| 11. Liniments.   | 26. Washes.                    |
| 12. Mucilages.   | 27. Infusions.                 |
| 13. Oils.        | 28. Troches, or Suppositories. |
| 14. Pills.       | 29. Mixtures.                  |
| 15. Plasters.    | 30. Essences.                  |

## CHAPTER I.

## BALSAMS.

By balsams, is generally understood the concrete, or inspissated juice of vegetables: such as balsam of fir, copaiba, &c. But we make use of the term here to designate certain artificial preparations, which, as regard qualities, or consistence, resemble balsams.

*Pulmonary Balsam.*

Take of Spikenard root, ( <i>nardus Americanus</i> ,)	-	-	1½℔
Hoarhound tops, ( <i>marrubium vulgare</i> ,)	-	-	do
Elecampane root, ( <i>inula helenium</i> ,)	-	-	do
Comfrey root, ( <i>symphytum officinale</i> ,)	-	-	do

Add a suitable quantity of water.

Boil, and pour off the infusion repeatedly, until the strength is all extracted; then strain, and reduce the whole of the liquid down to about 12 porter bottles; then add of white sugar 12 pounds, and good honey 6 pounds; clarify it with the whites of eggs. Let it stand 24 hours, in order that it may settle; add 1 quart of spirits, and finally bottle it for use.

*Dose.*—A wineglassful, three or four times a day.

*Use.*—This preparation is highly useful in the treatment of *pulmonary affections*, and *coughs* of long standing. It is admirably calculated to relieve that constricted state of the lungs which is often met with in *phthisis pulmonalis*, (consumption,) and to assist expectoration. It does not appear to increase the circulation, and is, therefore, a safe remedy in any stage of consumption.

*Balsam of Honey.*

Take of Balsam tolu, ( <i>balsamum toltanum</i> ,)	-	-	23
Balsam of fir, ( <i>balsamum canadense</i> ,)	-	-	do
Opium, ( <i>papaver somniferum</i> ,)	-	-	23

Dissolve all these in one quart of alcohol.

*Dose.*—A teaspoonful, occasionally.

*Use.*—This preparation is also useful in pulmonary diseases.

## CHAPTER II.

## BITTERS.

By this class of medicines is understood certain liquids, as wine, or spirits, impregnated with those vegetables which contain the greatest quantity of the bitter principle: such as gentian, centaury, aloes, &c. They are used to impart tone to the stomach.

## WINE BITTERS.

Take of Golden seal, ( <i>hydrastis canadensis</i> ),	-	-	13
White wood bark, ( <i>liriodendron tulipifera</i> ),	-	-	13
Bitter nut, ( <i>apocynum androseamifolium</i> ),	-	-	13
Cayenne pepper, ( <i>capsicum annum</i> ),	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ 3

Bruise all, and add two quarts of wine.

*Dose.*—From a tablespoonful to a wineglassful, three times a day.

*Use.*—This forms a useful tonic, and pleasant bitter. It is administered in dyspepsia and other complaints, where tonics are indicated.

## Compound Bitters.

Take of Tamarach bark, ( <i>pinus pendula</i> ),	-	-	6℥
Prickly-ash bark, ( <i>zanthoxylum frax</i> ),	-	-	4℥
Wild-cherry bark, ( <i>prunus virginiana</i> ),	-	-	3℥
Seneca snake-root, ( <i>polygala senega</i> ),	-	-	3℥
Tansy, ( <i>tanacetum vulgare</i> ),	-	-	1℥
Socotorine aloes, ( <i>aloe socotorina</i> ),	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥

Let these articles be pulverized and mixed; then take of the mixture one quarter of a pound, add three pints of boiling water, two quarts of Holland gin, and one pint of molasses. Let it stand a week.

*Dose.*—Half a wineglassful morning, noon, and evening.

*Use.*—This forms an excellent tonic for dyspepsia, obstruction of the menses, and other diseases, where tonics are required.

## CHAPTER III.

## CORDIALS.

By this class of medicines we understand those vegetables containing the virtues of various vegetables, prepared similar to common cordials, mostly with a view to render pleasant their exhibition. After a decoction of the articles which compose the cordial are sufficiently concentrated, sugar and spirits are added, to render it agreeable to the taste.

*Restorative Cordial.*

Take of Comfrey root, ( <i>symphytum officinale</i> ),	-	-	1℥
Solomon's seal, ( <i>convolvularia polygonatum</i> ),	-	-	1℥
Spikenard root, ( <i>nardus Americanus</i> ),	-	-	1℥
Colombo root, ( <i>cocculus palmatus</i> ),	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Gentian root, ( <i>gentiana lutea</i> ),	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Chamomile flowers, ( <i>flores anthemis</i> ),	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥

Bruise altogether, cover with boiling water, and then add two quarts of wine or metheglin.

*Dose.*—Half a wineglassful three or four times a day.

*Use.*—This is a very useful tonic, in all cases of debility. It is pectoral and corroborant, particularly that peculiar to females. It is valuable in fluor albus and incipient consumption. Seldom or never given without benefit.

*Neutralizing Cordial, or Mixture.*

Take of green peppermint, ( <i>mentha piperita</i> ),	-	-	2℥
Simmer it in one gallon of water; and take of			
Turkey rhubarb, ( <i>rheum palmatum</i> ),	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥

Simmer in one gallon of water till the strength is all extracted; then strain; add these two liquids together, and add four ounces of sal æratus, and seven pounds of loaf sugar; then boil it a few minutes, and add half a pint of brandy.

*Dose.*—For a child a year old, two teaspoonfuls every two hours.

*Use.*—This is an invaluable remedy in cholera morbus, dysentery, and diarrhœa. It is administered in every stage of these diseases with the best effects. It is antiacid, antidysenteric, &c.

*Antidysenteric Cordial.*

Take of Birch bark ( <i>betula lenta</i> ),	-	-	2℥
Bayberry bark, ( <i>myrica cerifera</i> ),	-	-	1½℥
Cherry tree bark, ( <i>prunus Virginiana</i> ),	-	-	1℥
Bitter almonds,	-	-	1℥
Water,	-	-	2 galls.

Boil to one gallon and a half, to which add half a gallon of good brandy, and loaf sugar sufficient to made it palatable.

*Dose.*—A wineglassful three or four times a day.

*Use.*—This forms an excellent tonic and astringent, for dysenteries and diarrhœas of long standing.

## CHAPTER IV.

## CAUSTICS OR ESCHAROTICS.

CAUSTICS and escharotics are those substances, which, when applied to fungus flesh or the skin, disorganize the same. Their operation, however, differs very much, according to the agents employed; some acting very mildly, others very severely. They are derived both from the mineral and vegetable kingdom. The latter are always to be preferred, when they answer the indication required.

*Mineral Caustic.*

Take of Borax, ( <i>borate of soda</i> ),	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Muriate of mercury,	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Vermillion,	-	-	-	20 grs.

Rub in a glass mortar to an impalpable powder; and bottle it in glass bottles.

*Use.*—This forms a very useful caustic in syphilitic ulcers, fistulas, and, in fact, in every species of ulcers where an active caustic is needed.

*Mild Mineral Caustic.*

Take of Calomel,	-	-	-	1 ℥
Vermillion,	-	-	-	1 ℥

Rub it, and preserve it in glass vessels.

*Use.*—It is useful in the treatment of chancres and buboes, in a state of ulceration. It soon produces a healthy action in them, without giving any pain.

*Vegetable Caustic.*

Make a strong ley of hickory or oak ashes; put it into an iron kettle and evaporate till dry; pulverize, and preserve it in closed vessels.

*Use.*—This caustic is highly useful in the treatment of fistulas; also in indolent ulcers of every character. It removes fungous flesh, without exciting any inflammation, and acts but little except on spongy or soft flesh. It is useful in cancers, and in every case where a caustic is required.

*Extract of Blood-Root.*

This article, applied on lint to some species of ulcers, proves very beneficial.

*White Vitriol.*

White vitriol, pulverized, makes an excellent caustic, particularly to remove fungous, or "proud flesh." A few grains to be occasionally applied.

## CHAPTER V.

## DROPS.

DROPS include medicines which, from their strength or active properties, require to be given in very minute doses; the dose being usually graduated by the number to be administered.

Great care or caution is necessary in giving this class of medicine, as mistakes are more liable to be made, than in some other forms.

Phials, containing drops, should always be kept corked, that the strength may not be increased by evaporation, or the virtues of them lost.

*Diuretic Drops.*

Take of Sweet spirits of nitre, ( <i>sp. ætheris nitrosi</i> ),	-	2℥
Balsam of copaiba, ( <i>balsami copaibæ</i> ),	-	1℥
Oil of almonds, ( <i>oleum amygdalia</i> ),	-	2℥
Spirits of turpentine, ( <i>oleum terebinthinae</i> ),	-	1℥

Mix these together, and add one scruple of camphor.

*Dose.*—A small teaspoonful, given in mucilage of gum arabic, three or four times a day.

*Use.*—The drops are successfully administered in cases of scalding of urine, whether arising from syphilitic or other complaints. In inflammation of the kidneys, they give prompt relief.

*Black Drop.*

The black drop was originally prepared, upwards of one hundred years ago, by Edward Toustall, a practitioner, of the Society of Friends, in England; the receipt passed into the hands of a relative, and was finally published.

Take of Opium, ( <i>papaver somniferum</i> ),	-	-	-	½℔
Vinegar, ( <i>aceti</i> ),	-	-	-	3 pints
Nutmeg, ( <i>myristichæ nux</i> ),	-	-	-	1½℥
Saffron, ( <i>croci officinalis</i> ),	-	-	-	½℥

Boil a while, and then add a quarter of a pound of loaf sugar, and two tablespoonfuls of yeast; set the whole in a warm place, for four or five weeks; decant and bottle for use.

*Dose.*—From 15 to 50 drops.

*Use.*—This, perhaps, is the best form in which opium can be administered, as an anodyne. It is given in all cases when an anodyne is indicated.

## Cough Drops.

Take Oil of anise, ( <i>oleum aneseum</i> ,)	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Oil of almonds, ( <i>oleum amygdalia</i> ,)	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Balsam of fir, ( <i>balsami Canadensi</i> ,)	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Tinc. of balsam tolu, ( <i>balsami tolutanium</i> ,)	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Wine	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥

Mix.

*Dose.*—Fifteen or twenty drops, three or four times a day.

*Use.*—These drops should be given in a little mucilage or tea. They assist expectoration in tickling coughs, and afford great relief.

## Tar Drops.

Take of best oil of tar, (*oleum pix liquida*.)

*Dose.*—Give from four to ten drops, in a little milk, three or four times a day.

*Use.*—Good for pain in the breast.

## Whitwith's Drops.

Take of Camphor, ( <i>laurus camphora</i> ,)	-	-	-	1℥
Oil of organum, ( <i>oleum origani</i> ,)	-	-	-	6℥
Spirits of turpentine, ( <i>oleum terebin.</i> ,)	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Alcohol,	-	-	-	1 pint.
Alkanet root,	-	-	-	2℥

Mix ; and let it stand one week.

*Dose.*—Administered internally, 25 drops, mixed in wine or sweetened water.

*Use.*—This preparation is useful as a stimulant ; may be applied externally in chronic rheumatism, and other painful affections.

## Carminative Drops.

Take Angelica,	-	-	-	-	4℥
Wild valerian	-	-	-	-	2℥
Calamus,	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Anise, dill, and fennel seed, (each)	-	-	-	-	1℥
Catnip, blows or leaves, and mother-wort, each a large handful ;	-	-	-	-	
Pleurisy root,	-	-	-	-	4℥

Infuse the whole in two quarts of brandy, or good common spirits ; and digest in a moderate heat for twenty-four hours ; then press out and strain the liquid, and add to it half a pound of loaf sugar. When settled, bottle it for use.

*Dose.*—For children, from 10 to 60 drops, according to the age ; for adults, from one to four teaspoonfuls, in a cup of warm tea. It may be repeated once in four or six hours.

*Use.*—It eases pain, creates a moderate perspiration, and produces refreshing sleep ; is good for restless children, removes flatulency, and wind colic ; and is useful in hysteric and nervous affections, female debility, &c.

## Toothache Drops.

Take of Oil of sassafras	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ʒ
Oil of cloves,	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ʒ
Mix ; dip a piece of lint, or cotton, in the drops, and put on the tooth.					

## CHAPTER VI.

## DECOCTIONS.

DECOCTIONS are certain preparations of medicines, and drinks, made by boiling substances in water for a considerable time. Where we wish to administer the virtues of any plant in a small volume in the form of drink, decoctions are very useful. Some ingredients, however, lose a part of their efficacy by long boiling, and are given best in some other form.

Vegetables designed for decoction, should be cut into slices, or bruised into a coarse powder, that their strength may be more easily extracted.

## Diuretic Decoction.

Take of Queen of the meadow, ( <i>spiræ ulmaria</i> ,)	-	-	-	2ʒ
Milk weed, ( <i>aselepias syriaca</i> ,)	-	-	-	2ʒ
Juniper berries, ( <i>juniperus com.</i> )	-	-	-	2ʒ
Dwarf elder, ( <i>sambucus ebulus</i> ,)	-	-	-	2ʒ
Spearmint, ( <i>mentha sativæ</i> ,)	-	-	-	2ʒ
Wild carrot seed, ( <i>daucus syl.</i> ,)	-	-	-	2ʒ

Put all into a mortar, and bruise. Make a strong decoction.

*Dose.*—Half a pint, to be taken often through the day.

*Use.*—This decoction is very useful in *gravel, dropsy, &c.* It is strongly diuretic.

## Rheumatic Decoction.

Take of Virginia snake-root, ( <i>serp. Virginiana</i> ,)	-	-	-	1ʒ
White pine bark, ( <i>pinus strobus</i> ,)	-	-	-	2ʒ
Burdock seed, ( <i>arctium lappa</i> ,)	-	-	-	2ʒ
Prickly ash bark, ( <i>sanihoæ fraxin.</i> ,)	-	-	-	2ʒ

Pulverize all together, and add half a gallon of water ; boil to three pints.

*Dose.*—Half a pint, two or three times a day.

*Use.*—This forms an excellent decoction in chronic rheumatism.

## Urinary Decoction.

Take of Marshmallows, ( <i>althæa officinalis</i> ,)	-	-	-	3ʒ
Queen of the meadow, ( <i>spiræ ulmaria</i> ,)	-	-	-	3ʒ

Add four quarts of water, and boil it to one; then add two ounces of gum arabic, and half an ounce of pulverized nitre.

*Dose.*—A teacupful four or five times a day.

*Use.*—This is an excellent remedy in nephritis, or inflammation of the kidneys. It is also useful in the treatment of inflammation of the bladder; in hæmaturia, or bloody urine, and other urinary diseases. It is a demulcent diuretic.

---

*Diaphoretic Decoction.*

Take of pleurisy root, (*asclepias tuberosa*), - - - 2℥

Boil it a few minutes in a quart of water; strain.

*Dose.*—A teacupful.

*Use.*—This decoction is highly useful in the treatment of pleurisy, and other forms of pneumonia, or inflammation of the lungs.

---

*Decoction of Cohush.*

Take of Black cohush, (*macrotis racemosa*), - - - 2℥

Water, - - - - - 2 qts.

Boil to three pints.

*Dose.*—One gill.

*Use.*—Useful in uterine hæmorrhage, coughs, and rheumatism.

---

*For the Gravel.*

Take of the root of Jacob's ladder, - - - - - 2℥

Make into a decoction; to be taken as a common drink. Said to be infallible for the gravel.

## CHAPTER VII.

## EXTRACTS.

EXTRACTS are the products of vegetables, produced by boiling or evaporation to a proper consistence. There are two kinds: spiritous and watery. In the former, spirits are used to extract the strength of the article of which the extract is made; in the latter, water is made use of. In preparing them, it is necessary often to add fresh water, if water be used, until all the strength is extracted; then strain, and slowly evaporate until the liquid is brought to the consistence of thin molasses; after which, let it be placed in earthen jars, and tightly covered with a bladder or skin, to prevent moulding.

This is an excellent form to administer many kinds of medicinal plants, as the quantity to be given is very small.

*Extract of Blood-root.*

Take of blood-root, any quantity.

Boil in water till the strength is obtained; then strain, and boil to a proper consistence.

*Use.*—This extract forms a useful and mild caustic. It is applied to some species of indolent ulcers, with excellent effect; also to fistulas.

*Extract of Gentian.*

Prepared in the same manner as the above.

*Use.*—This article is tonic, but seldom administered alone. It enters into the *antidyspeptic pill*.

*Extract of Jalap*

Is prepared in the same manner, and it makes an excellent antibilious pill.

*Dose.*—From two to four grains.

*Dr. Bone's Extract of Poke.*

Take of Expressed juice of poke, - - - -	$\frac{1}{2}$ gal.
Gunpowder, - - - -	1 gill.
Lard, - - - -	$\frac{1}{2}$ pint.

Simmer to the consistence of honey or molasses.

*Use.*—This forms a very efficacious extract or plaster, for scrofulous, cancerous, and all indurated tumours. It may be rubbed upon the parts affected, or a plaster of it applied.

## CHAPTER VIII.

## COLLYRIUMS, OR EYE-WATERS.

EYE-WATERS, or collyriums, are prepared either from mineral or vegetable substances, and which are usually added to spirits or water, and applied to the eyes in the form of wash. They should first be applied very weak, and the strength gradually increased.

*Stimulating Eye-water.*

Take of White vitriol, ( <i>sulphas zinci</i> ),	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Sugar of lead, ( <i>superacetas plumbi</i> ),	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Gum myrrh, ( <i>gummi myrrha</i> ),	-	-	-	℥
Hot water,	-	-	-	2 qts.

Let it stand two weeks, and filter.

*Use.*—This forms an excellent remedy in chronic inflammation of the eyes. Sometimes it will be found more efficacious if applied warm. When first used, let it be a little diluted. It should be applied three or four times a day.

*Spiritous Eye-water.*

Take of Fourth-proof brandy,	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ pint.
Rain water,	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ pint.
Camphor,	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥

Mix.

*Use.*—This eye-water is used in chronic ophthalmia, or inflammation of the eyes.

*Mucilaginous, or Laurus Eye-water.*

Take of pith of sassafras, ( <i>laurus sas.</i> )	-	-	-	℥
---	---	---	---	---

Add it to a suitable quantity of rose water, which makes an excellent mucilaginous and cooling wash.

*Use.*—It will be found beneficial in the treatment of ophthalmia, or inflammation of the eyes, during the acute stages.

*Dr. Lobstein's Eye-water.*

Take of White vitriol,	-	-	-	-	℥
Common table salt, fine,	-	-	-	-	℥
Common water,	-	-	-	-	℥

Boil the water for a quarter of an hour; then put the two salts in a new earthen pot, and pour the boiling water over it; let it simmer for fifteen minutes; let it get cold, and strain it through filtering paper.

*Use.*—For inflammations of the eye.

*Mineral Eye-water.*

Take Muriate of mercury,	-	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ʒ
Jamaica spirits,	-	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ pint.
Mix ; and dissolve.						

*Use.*—This eye water is used for the purpose of removing films from the eyes. It should be applied with caution, as it is liable to produce too much inflammation, if used too freely. It may be applied with a camel's-hair pencil.

---



---

 CHAPTER IX.

## FOMENTATIONS.

FOMENTATIONS are usually composed of several kinds of bitter herbs, and are very useful to relieve pain and inflammation, by taking off tension and spasm ; or to brace and restore the tone and vigour of those parts to which they are applied.

The first of these intentions may generally be answered by warm fomentations ; and, the second, by those that are cold. They should often be renewed. This class of medicine is very valuable in a great many complaints.

*Hop Fomentations.*

Take two handfuls of hops, and one gill of vinegar. Heat the vinegar, and pour it on the hops till they are moist.

In cases of sore-throat, hoarseness, or soreness of the breast, severe pain in the abdomen, colic, dysentery, &c., this fomentation will give ease and allay irritation. It may be applied at bed-time, and kept on all night, or any time in the day, if necessary. But it is usually best to apply warm, and often renew.

*Common Fomentation.*

Take Hops, ( <i>humulus lupulus</i> ),	-	-	-	-	3ʒ
Tansy, ( <i>tanacetum vulgare</i> ),	-	-	-	-	3ʒ
Wormwood, ( <i>artemesia vulgare</i> ),	-	-	-	-	3ʒ
Hoarhound, ( <i>marrubium vulgare</i> ),	-	-	-	-	3ʒ
Catnip, ( <i>nepeta cataria</i> ),	-	-	-	-	3ʒ

Or a handful of each.

Make of these articles a strong decoction, by boiling in equal parts of vinegar and water.

*Use.*—This will be found very efficacious in relieving pain, and reducing inflammation, resulting from contusions, sprains, dislocations, and other causes.

It may also be usefully employed in inflammation of the bowels, of the stomach ; in short, in almost every species of inflammation, it will be found very useful.

---

*Stimulating Fomentation.*

Take Red pepper, ( <i>capsicum annuum</i> ,)	-	-	-	2℥
Bruised mustard seed,	-	-	-	2℥
Alcohol, or spirits,	.	-	-	2 quarts

Simmer a few minutes.

*Use.*—This is used as an external application, in paralysis, or palsy.

---

*Poppy Fomentation.*

Take of white poppy heads, (*papavars capsulæ*,) or the flowers, a suitable quantity ; add equal quantities of vinegar and water ; simmer a few minutes.

*Use.*—This is an excellent anodyne fomentation, used in painful affections.

---

*Ophthalmic Fomentation.*

Take of white poppy heads ; simmer them in water.

*Use.*—In severe acute ophthalmia, or inflammation of the eyes, this fomentation is sometimes used with good effect.

---

*Mint Fomentation.*

Take of fresh spearmint, (*menthæ sativa*,) a proper quantity ; let it be bruised, and add spirits, and simmer.

*Use.*—In cases of great irritability of the stomach, attended with frequent vomiting, this fomentation, applied to the pit of it, will often relieve when other means fail.

## CHAPTER X.

## GARGLES.

GARGLES, in many complaints, are very useful, particularly in the aphthæ, quinsy, fevers, &c. By this class of medicines we understand certain infusions, decoctions, or liquids, suitable or designed for washing the mouth and throat, which, by their stimulating or detergent properties, become efficacious.

Adults can generally gargle their mouth or throat with little difficulty; but infants and children require an assistant to apply them, which is best done by tying a little piece of linen to a probe or stick, dipping it in the liquid, and often applying it. They should never be made very stimulating, except in severe cases.

---

*Stimulating Gargle.*

Take of sumac berries and golden seal, a sufficient quantity; make a strong decoction, strain, and add one drachm of pulverized alum to every pint of the decoction.

*Use.*—This gargle is used frequently in ulcerated sore-throat of long standing.

---

*Astringent Gargle.*

Take of cohush, (*macrotis racemosa*), a proper quantity, and make a strong decoction.

*Use.*—This gargle is used in quinsy.

---

*Antiphlogistic Gargle.*

Take of Sage, (*salvia officinalis*), - - - 1℥

Hyssop, (*hyssopus officinalis*), - - - 1℥

Pour on one quart of boiling water, let it stand half an hour, then strain; and add one drachm of fine borax, (*sub-boras sodæ*.)

*Use.*—This gargle is usefully employed in aphthæ, and in quinsy, or sore-throat, particularly where there is acute inflammation.

## CHAPTER XI.

## INFUSIONS.

INFUSIONS, or, as they are usually called, teas, is a very common and good method of administering the virtues of various medicinal agents. It probably is the most natural, if not ancient method of preparing medicine. A two-fold benefit is derived from infusions: 1st, the medicinal properties of the article made use of; 2dly, the heat and diluent properties of the water.

An excellent method to make teas, or infusions, is to put the plant or root into a teapot, and pour on boiling water, and let it stand a short time by the side of the fire. In this way the infusion is readily made very clear.

*Infusion of Digitalis, or Foxglove.*

Take of Foxglove, ( <i>digitalis purpurea</i> ), dried,	-	-	13
Boiling water,	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ pint.

Infuse the foxglove, for four hours, in a covered vessel; strain.

*Use.*—This is the form under which digitalis was administered by Dr. Withering, who introduced it in the treatment of dropsy.

*Infusion of Linseed.*

Take of Flaxseed, ( <i>lini asitatissimi</i> ), in meal,	-	-	13
Boiling water,	-	-	2 pints.

Macerate for four hours, near the fire, in a vessel lightly closed; and strain.

*Use.*—This forms a demulcent, which is often used with advantage in gonorrhœa, dysuria, and sometimes in catarrh, or cough.

*Infusion of Boneset.*

Take of Boneset, ( <i>eupatorium perfoliatum</i> ),	-	-	13
Boiling water,	-	-	1 pint.

Infuse two hours in a covered vessel, and strain.

*Use.*—It is useful in colds, fevers, coughs, &c. To be drank freely.

*Balm Tea.*

Take of Balm leaves,	-	-	-	13
Sugar,	-	-	-	1 spoonful.
Boiling water,	-	-	-	1 pint.
Lemon juice,	-	-	-	13

Infuse fifteen minutes, closely covered, and strain.

This is a good drink, when cold, for a fever.

*Infusion of Elder.*

Take of White elder flowers, - - -	13
Hot water - - - - -	$\frac{1}{2}$ pint.
Honey, - - - - -	1 tablespoonful.

*Use.*—This will prove a gentle purgative for young children.

*Dose.*—One tablespoonful—every half hour, till it operates.

Take of Elder berries, dried, - - -	2 tablespoonfuls.
Hot water, - - - - -	2 gills.
Molasses or sugar, - - - - -	1 tablespoonful.

This will operate similar to the above, in the same doses. It is useful in cases of erysipelas, if drank freely for some time.

*Elecampane Tea.*

Take of the root of elecampane, cut fine, - - -	13
Boiling water, - - - - -	1 pint.
Honey, - - - - -	2 tablespoonfuls.

Infuse twenty minutes, and strain.

*Use.*—This tea is somewhat glutinous, and of an aromatic bitter. It is used as a stomachic and pectoral, in cases of coughs and asthmas, catarrhs, &c.

*Dose.*—One teacupful every two hours, for adults.

*Sweet Fennel-seed Tea.*

Take of the seeds of sweet fennel, pounded, - - -	13
Boiling water, - - - - -	1 pint.
Sugar, - - - - -	1 tablespoonful.

Infuse for twenty-five minutes, closely covered, and strain.

*Use.*—This tea has an agreeable flavour, and a moderately pungent and aromatic taste. It is a carminative, resolvent, and diuretic. It has been used to much advantage in cases of colics, malignant fevers, headaches, indigestion, &c.

*Sweet Flag-root Tea.*

Take of Sweet flag-root, dried and powdered, - - -	23
Hot water, - - - - -	1 pint.
Honey, - - - - -	1 tablespoonful.

Infuse for twenty-five minutes, and strain.

*Use.*—This tea is said to be an antiseptic, and has been used to prevent contagion. A little alkali will add much to its medicinal virtues. It is useful in colic, pain in the breast, and flatulence.

*Hyssop Tea.*

Take of Hyssop,	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Hot water,	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ pint.
Honey,	-	-	-	-	1 tablespoonful.

Infuse for thirty minutes, closely covered.

*Use.*—This tea has an aromatic and pungent taste, and is particularly recommended in cases of asthma and other disorders of the breast and lungs. It is used to promote expectoration.

*Dose.*—The dose may be, for adults, one teacupful, as often as occasion may require; children in proportion.

*Catnip Tea.*

Take of Catnip leaves and flowers,	-	-	-	-	℥ 3
Boiling water,	-	-	-	-	1 pint.
Loaf sugar,	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Milk,	-	-	-	-	1 tablespoonful.

Infuse twenty five minutes, and strain.

*Use.*—This is an excellent tea for infants. It removes irritation and griping pains, which frequently occur with small children.

*Dose.*—The dose for a child, one year old, may be one tablespoonful, when occasion may require. A little gin is sometimes added.

*Spearmint Tea.*

Take of Spearmint,	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Hot water,	-	-	-	-	1 pint.

Infuse fifteen minutes, and strain.

*Use.*—This tea is said to be one of the most powerful vermifuges in the vegetable kingdom. It is also a warm stomachic, useful in relieving nausea and retching to vomit. Those who have children that are subject to an excess of worms in the alimentary canal, will find the importance of the use of this tea, with other anthelmintic medicines. It is also strongly diuretic, and diminishes fever and inflammation, by promoting a discharge of urine.

*Dose.*—The dose may be one tablespoonful every two hours, for a child about one year old.

*Tansy Tea.*

Take of Tansy leaves,	-	-	-	-	1 handful,
Hot water,	-	-	-	-	1 pint,
Sugar,	-	-	-	-	1 tablespoonful.

Infuse for twenty five minutes, and strain.

*Use.*—This is a warm deobstruent bitter; useful for children, to destroy worms in the bowels. It may be used similar to spearmint tea. It promotes the menses.

*Pennyroyal Tea.*

Take of Pennyroyal leaves, dried, - - - 1 handful,  
Hot water, - - - - - 1 pint.

Infuse for twenty-five minutes in a covered vessel.

*Use.*—This is a warm, pungent, aromatic, tea, similar to mint, more acrid, and less agreeable. It is an aperient, and used in hysteric cases. Also in suppression of the menses.

*Dose.*—One teacupful for an adult.

*Sassafras Tea.*

Take of the Bark of the sassafras root, pounded, or  
scraped fine, - - - - - 1 ℥  
Hot water, - - - - - 1 pint.

Infuse for thirty minutes, and strain.

*Use.*—This is a warm aperient and corroborant. It is frequently employed with good success for purifying the blood, rheumatism, &c.

Sassafras oil is a sudorific and diuretic remedy. It is stimulating and heating, consequently should be given in small doses.

*Dose.*—The tea as above prepared may be taken in doses of from one to three tablespoonfuls, every two or three hours, with a little sugar, to make it more agreeable.

*Infusion of Virginia Snake Root.*

Take of Virginia snake root, (*serpent. Virgin.*) - - - 1 ℥  
Boiling water, - - - - - 1 pint.

Infuse for two hours in a covered vessel, and strain.

*Use.*—This forms an excellent tonic for convalescent patients. It is also very useful in febrile diseases, particularly when there is little or no remission.

*Infusion of Slippery Elm.*

Take of Slippery elm, sliced, (*ulmas fulva*), - - - 1 ℥  
Boiling water, - - - - - 1 quart.

Infuse for an hour in a covered vessel, and strain.

*Use.*—It is useful in gastro-enteritis, inflammation of the intestines, dysentery, diarrhœa, bowel complaint, inflammation of the eyes, stomach, and other organs. It may be drank freely.

*Anthelmintic Infusion, or Worm Powder.*

Take of Carolina pink, (*spigelia Marylan.*) - - -  $\frac{1}{2}$  ℥  
Senna, (*Alexandria senna*), - - - - -  $\frac{1}{2}$  ℥  
Manna, (*fraxinus ornus*), - - - - -  $\frac{1}{2}$  ℥

Add to these one quart of boiling water; let it stand six hours; strain, and add 2℔ of loaf sugar, or honey, and a little milk.

*Dose.*—A small teacupful, three or four times a day, for a child six years old.

*Use.*—It is an excellent medicine to expel worms.

*Compound Infusion of Senna.*

Take of Senna, . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Manna, . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Cream of tartar, . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Fennel seed, bruised, . . . . .	1 teaspoonful.

Add one pint of boiling water to the senna and manna, and simmer to half a pint; strain; add the cream of tartar, and sweeten.

*Dose.*—A wineglassful every hour, till it purges.

*Use.*—A cleansing and cooling purgative; useful in fevers and inflammatory diseases.

---



---

## CHAPTER XII.

### INJECTIONS, OR CLYSTERS.

INJECTIONS, or clysters, are certain liquids, thrown into the rectum by mechanical means. Their operation or effect depends upon the ingredients used. Some are emollient, others are stimulant, anodyne, purgative, antispasmodic, &c. Those generally used by practitioners, are composed of starch; and so inefficiently are they used, or directed to be used, that little or no benefit is derived from them.

A bladder and pipe is generally employed to administer injections; but the liquid cannot be effectually introduced by this instrument. A large syringe should always be used for adults, and a small one for infants and children. This enables the practitioner, or nurse, one of whom should always perform this simple, but valuable operation, to throw up the injection to such an extent, or distance, as will be exceedingly efficacious. To prove effectual, a large quantity should always be given. Few are aware of the great benefit and efficacy of injections or clysters. They often prove a sovereign remedy for diseases which nothing else will relieve. Hence, every family should possess a syringe, and a knowledge of its use.

Sometimes the stomach is in such a state, that medicine cannot be given to act upon the bowels. In this case, the syringe is very useful, also in strangulated or incarcerated hernia, or rupture; in bilious colic, dysentery, cholera morbus, and bowel complaints generally.

## Common Injection.

Take of Sweet milk,	-	-	-	-	1 pint,
Mucilage of slippery elm,	-	-	-	-	1 pint,
Olive oil,	-	-	-	-	1 gill,
Molasses,	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ pint,
Sal æratus,	-	-	-	-	13 Mix.

*Use.*—This forms an injection of much value; and may be used in almost every case where one is indicated. It is often used with admirable effects in dysentery and diarrhœa. Sometimes, when there is great pain in the lower intestines, it will do better if a drachm of laudanum is added to each injection, and it will not fail of relieving the griping pain occasioned by the disease. It should be used with a large sized French syringe.

## Soapsuds Injection.

Take of soapsuds, strong, a sufficient quantity. Inject it about blood warm.

*Use.*—This is an injection which may always be conveniently procured. It is mild, and may be administered when a more stimulating injection would be hurtful. It is very useful in habitual costiveness, when purgatives are ineffectual.

## Stimulating Injection.

Take of Lobelia, ( <i>lobelia inflata</i> ),	-	-	-	-	13
Inner bark of large hemlock, ( <i>pinus Canadensis</i> ),	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ 3
Red pepper, ( <i>capsicum annuum</i> ),	-	-	-	-	13

Make a tea, or infusion, sweeten, and introduce half a pint to a pint.

*Use.*—This injection is occasionally used in very obstinate cases of costiveness, bilious and painters' colic; strangulated or incarcerated hernia.

## Tobacco Injection.

Take of Tobacco, ( <i>nicotiana tabacum</i> ),	-	-	-	-	13
Tepid water,	-	-	-	-	1 pint.

Infuse for twenty or thirty minutes.

*Use.*—This injection is sometimes used in the treatment of incarcerated hernia, with a view to its relaxing properties. It should be employed with caution, as it has sometimes produced alarming symptoms. It is also used to destroy worms from the rectum.

## CHAPTER XIII.

## LINIMENTS.

LINIMENTS are preparations employed in frictions or embrocations on the skin. They are usually composed of oily, spiritous, and gummy, or saponaceous substances; as some of the essential oils, alcohol, soap, camphor, &c. They are used externally for rheumatism, quinsy, and other painful affections. The benefit is derived from their counter-irritant effects.

*Common Liniment.*

Take of Castile soap,	-	-	-	-	1℥
Oil of sassafras, ( <i>oleum z. sassa.</i> )	-	-	-	-	1℥
Camphor, ( <i>laurus camphora,</i> )	-	-	-	-	1℥
Spirits of hartshorn,	-	-	-	-	1℥
Alcohol,	-	-	-	-	1℥ Mix.

*Use.*—This forms an excellent liniment, in diseases of the throat and tonsils.

*Opium and Camphor Liniment.*

Take of Opium, powdered,	-	-	-	-	1℥
Gum camphor, ditto	-	-	-	-	1℥
Castile soap, scraped fine,	-	-	-	-	1℥
Alcohol,	-	-	-	-	1℥

Rub them all together in a mortar, till the camphor, soap, and opium is dissolved, and they all form a liniment.

*Use.*—This is a preparation used externally, as a stimulant and rubefacient. It is an efficacious remedy for inflammatory sore throats, and stiff necks. It should be applied with a flannel, and rubbed in every two hours. In some cases it is necessary to dry it in by applying, over the flannel cloth, a hot iron or brick.

*Rheumatic Liniment.*

Take of Alcohol,	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ gallon.
Spanish soap, cut fine,	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ lb.
Sassafras oil,	-	-	-	-	1℥
Spearmint oil,	-	-	-	-	1℥
Oil organum,	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Oil amber,	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥

Put all into a jug; keep warm for five or six days, frequently shaking it till dissolved.

*Use.*—This liniment is excellent for rheumatism, sprains, and other painful affections. The parts affected should be often bathed with it.

## CHAPTER XIV.

## LIQUIDS.

LIQUIDS include such medicines as are made from various menstruums, or solvents, such as spirits, wine, water, &c. They are usually compound preparations.

*Rheumatic Liquid.*

Take of White turpentine, ( <i>terrebin. alb.</i> )	-	-	4℥
Inspissated juice of poke-berries,	-	-	4℥
Malaga wine, or metheglin,	-	-	3 gal.

Let these articles be mixed, and stand one week; then filter, and bottle.

*Dose.*—Half a wineglassful, two or three times a day.

*Use.*—This is an excellent preparation for chronic rheumatism.

*Anti-pyrosis Liquid.*

Take of Elixir salutis, ( <i>comp. tinct. senna.</i> )	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Tinc. of balsam tolu,	-	-	1℥ Mix.

*Dose.*—A tablespoonful every morning or evening.

*Use.*—This liquid will be found efficacious in removing the troublesome symptoms of water-brash, or pyrosis. It may be taken, mixed in water, every night, at the time of going to bed.

*Mint, or Spirits of Mint, Liquid.*

Take of spearmint, (*menthæ sativa.*) green, bruised, add a sufficient quantity to saturate a quart of alcohol.

*Use.*—This preparation of mint will be found exceedingly useful in the treatment of *strangury*, and *retention of urine*, arising from strictures in the urethra, and diseases of the prostate gland. It has proved successful when other means failed.

*Dose.*—The dose must be regulated according to the patient's habits. Some will require half, others a gill, at a time, and repeated every thirty minutes. The patient should take it till it produces relief. This liquid has also been used with the best effects, in the treatment of hæmorrhoids, particularly in a state of inflammation; to be applied on a little cotton. In cases where the green mint cannot be procured, the dried may be used, though, perhaps, it is not so good. This liquid may also be used, both externally and internally, in cases of severe vomiting.

*Stimulating Liquid.*

Take of Red pepper, ( <i>capsicum annuum</i> ),	-	-	2℥
Common spirits, or alcohol,	-	-	2 quarts.

Let it stand a few days, or, if wanted immediately, simmer a few minutes.

*Use.*—This liquid is used externally, in rheumatism, paralysis, “soreness of the flesh;” ague in the face and breast, pain of the breast; and indeed of any, and every, other organ. It is exceedingly valuable, seldom or never disappointing the practitioner in relieving pain.

*Tincture of Ipecacuanha, or Wine of Ipecacuanha.*

Take of the Root of ipecacuanha, in powder,	-	-	1℥
White wine,	-	-	16℥

Macerate for seven days, and filtrate.

*Use.*—This makes a valuable emetic for children.

*Dose.*—The dose is one ounce for adults; children, two years of age, one teaspoonful every ten or fifteen minutes, till it pukes them.

## CHAPTER XV.

## MUCILAGES.

MUCILAGES are soft, bland substances, made by dissolving different kinds of gum, or the roots, leaves, or other parts, which abound with mucilage. Mucilaginous drinks are useful in diseases of the bowels, urinary organs, &c. Also to cover any acrid matter, so as to prevent its irritating the parts over which it passes.

*Mucilage of Gum Arabic.*

Take of Gum Arabic, ( <i>gummi Arabici</i> ),	-	-	4℥
Boiling water,	-	-	8℥

Rub the gum with the water gradually, until it forms a mucilage; then strain.

*Use.*—Mucilage of gum Arabic is used in pharmacy, to suspend in water substances insoluble in that liquid, to diffuse oils in water, and for similar purposes. It is sometimes employed in the formation of pills. It is very useful in heat and scalding of the water.

*Dose.*—Half a wineglassful, three or four times a day.

*Mucilage of Slippery-Elm.*

Take of Slippery-elm bark, ( <i>ulmas fulva</i> ),	-	-	13
Boiling water,	-	-	1 quart.

Let it stand an hour. It is employed in gastro-enteritis, or inflammation of the stomach, and other diseases. It is useful in bowel complaints generally.

---



---

 CHAPTER XVI.

## OILS.

OILS are of various kinds, and used either singly or combined. They are used, generally, when applied externally, for rheumatism and other painful affections.

---

*Rheumatic Oil.*

Take of Oil of wormwood, ( <i>oleum artemesia vul.</i> ),	-	-	13
Oil of sassafras, ( <i>oleum laurus sassafras</i> ),	-	-	13
Oil of cedar, ( <i>oleum juniperus virgin.</i> ),	-	-	13
Oil of hemlock,	-	-	13
Oil of turpentine, ( <i>oleum terrebin.</i> ),	-	-	13
Oil of olives, ( <i>oleum olivarium</i> ),	-	-	13
Camphor, ( <i>laurus camphora</i> ),	-	-	13

Mix all together.

*Use.*—This oil is exceedingly efficacious in relieving pain in chronic rheumatism. It is also a good remedy in sprains, contusions, and in painful affections of almost every description. It may be applied warm to the affected parts three or four times a day. The parts to be well rubbed with it.

---

*Oil of Red Pepper—(Oleum Capsicum.)*

This oil may be obtained by adding the pepper, pulverized, to ether, and let it evaporate. The oil only remains.

*Use.*—This oil is very efficacious in white swellings, lumbago, sciatica, rickets, ague in the face and breast, quinsy, pain in the side and breast, pleurisy, and for painful affections generally. It is powerful, and should be applied very sparingly. The essence of it is excellent for pain and cramp in the breast and stomach.

## CHAPTER XVII.

## OINTMENTS.

OINTMENTS are a class of medicines which contain the properties of certain vegetables, designed for external use. Their consistence is softer than that of salves or plasters, but the heat of the body is sufficient to melt them. Lard and butter, or oil and wax, are principally used to make them.

According to the direction given in common dispensaries, the properties of vegetables are not communicated to either of these substances, (through the medium of water alone,) particularly if they are dry; but by simmering them in spirits, the desired union is obtained.

*Stramonium Ointment.*

Take of stramonium leaves, (*datura stramonium*), a proper quantity, while green; bruise them to a pulp, and put them into an earthen vessel; then cover with spirits and lard; then simmer the leaves until they become crisped; strain, and add of Venice turpentine, half a pound to every ten pounds of the ointment.

*Use.*—This forms an excellent application for *scalds*, *burns*, and cutaneous *eruptions*, attended with inflammation. It may be applied occasionally, with the finger, or with a piece of linen.

*Venice Turpentine Ointment.*

Take of Venice turpentine, ( <i>ter. Veneta</i> ),	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Lard,	-	-	1℥

Simmer until they are united.

*Use.*—This ointment is used in the treatment of *tinea capitis*, (scald head.) After the parts have been washed with soap and water, let this ointment be applied three times a day.

*White Ointment.*

Take of Lard,	-	-	6℥
Venice turpentine, ( <i>ter. Veneta</i> ),	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥

Melt; and, when nearly cold, add two drachms of corrosive sublimate, and two ounces of fine borax. Stir; and mix till cold.

*Use.*—This ointment has cured numerous persons of cutaneous diseases, piles, &c. But a vegetable preparation should always be substituted, when practicable.

*Green Ointment.*

Take of Tansy, (*tanacetum vulgare* ;)  
 Wormwood, (*artemesia absinthium* ;)  
 Hoarhound, (*marrubiam vulgare* ;)  
 Catnip, (*nepeta cataria* ;)  
 Hops, (*humulus lupulus* ;)

Of each an equal quantity. Bruise them, and put them into a kettle, cover over with spirits and lard, and let it stand two weeks ; then simmer awhile, and strain. Add one pound of common turpentine to every ten pounds of the ointment.

*Use.*—This ointment is very cooling, resolvent, relaxing, and emollient. It is very useful in sprains, contusions, swellings, dislocations, contracted sinews, &c.

---

*Yellow Ointment.*

Take of White ointment,	-	-	-	-	1℥
Flour of sulphur,	-	-	-	-	4ʒ

Mix together, cold.

*Use.*—This ointment is used in the treatment of the hæmorrhoids, or piles, and is also useful in the *tetter*, or *salt rheum*, (herpes.)

---

*Discutient Ointment.*

Take of Bark of the root of bitter-sweet, ( <i>solanum dulcamara</i> ),	-	-	-	-	2ʒ
Stramonium leaves, ( <i>datura stramonium</i> ),	-	-	-	-	2ʒ
Cicuta leaves, ( <i>sicuta</i> ),	-	-	-	-	2ʒ
Deadly nightshade, ( <i>solanum nigrum</i> ),	-	-	-	-	2ʒ
Yellow dock-root, ( <i>rumex crispus</i> ),	-	-	-	-	2ʒ
Lard,	-	-	-	-	1℥

Bruise, and simmer the roots and leaves in spirits ; then add the lard, and simmer till the ingredients are crisped.

*Use.*—This ointment is exceedingly valuable in discussing scrofulous, indolent, and glandular tumours and swellings.

It should be rubbed on the parts, about 30 minutes each time that it is applied ; after which, let a piece of cotton be applied, and secured by a proper bandage.

*Vegetable, or Tetter Ointment.*

Take of White turpentine, ( <i>terebinthina</i> ),	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℔
Fresh butter,	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℔
Olive oil, ( <i>oleum olivarium</i> ),	-	-	℔
Beeswax,	-	-	2℥
Indian turnip, ( <i>arum triphylum</i> ),	-	-	℔
Leaves of white lily,	-	-	℔
Common plantain leaves,	-	-	℔

Bruise the leaves and roots, and simmer them in an earthen vessel, over a slow fire, and closely covered; strain, and, when nearly cold, add two drachms of yellow ochre.

*Use.*—This ointment has cured many inveterate cases of tetter, (salt rheum,) and herpetic affections.

*Judkin's Specific Ointment.*

Take of Boiled linseed oil,	-	-	1 gallon
Red lead,	-	-	2℔
Gray oxide of mercury,	-	-	1' teaspoonful
Mutton tallow,	-	-	℔
Resin,	-	-	2℥
Buds of balm of Gilead,	-	-	1 handful
Oil of turpentine,	-	-	2℥

Put the oil into an iron kettle, and raise it to a boiling heat; then put in the lead by small quantities; add the oil of turpentine and gray oxide; take it from the fire, and add the suet, resin, and buds of balm of Gilead.

*Use.*—This ointment has been celebrated as a cure in chronic rheumatism. We have never used it.

*Itch Ointment.*

Take of Sulphur vivum, fine,	-	-	℔
Venice turpentine,	-	-	℔
Lard	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℔

Melt the lard and turpentine; then add the sulphur, and stir till it is cold. Let it be applied two or three times a day.

*Use.*—It soon cures the complaint, without the necessity of changing the clothes.

*Celandine Ointment.*

Take the herb or plant, bruise, and cover with any kind of spirits; simmer awhile; then add fresh butter; and let it remain over the fire until the leaves are *crisped*. Strain.

*Use.*—This ointment is useful in the piles, and cutaneous eruptions.

*Ophthalmic Ointment, or Eye-Salve, called also Eye-Balsam.*

Take of Fresh butter,	-	-	-	-	33
White wax,	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ 3
Red precipitate,	-	-	-	-	$2\frac{1}{2}$ 3
Prepared tutty,	-	-	-	-	13
Camphor, dissolved in olive oil,	-	-	-	-	13

Mix, for ointment.—*Communicated by Dr. Lobstein.*

*For the Salt-Rheum.*

Take of narrow dock-roots, scabious, and swamp-sassafras, equal parts; boil down, strong; add 1℔ of lard. Simmer down to an ointment. Rub the parts affected, three or four times a day.

*Marshmallow Ointment.*

Take marshmallow tops and roots; add spirits; bruise and simmer; then cover the plant with fresh butter; simmer till the strength is extracted.

*Use.*—This forms a very cooling ointment; and is efficacious in all kinds of eruptions, attended with inflammation, such as erysipelas, (*St. Anthony's fire*,) sore nipples, cutaneous affections, particularly in children, in the face, and around the ears.

## CHAPTER XVIII.

## PLASTERS.

PLASTERS, like ointments, have generally for their base an oily or fatty substance ; but they are more solid and tough, and they adhere to the parts without melting.

Some are composed of wax, resin, and oils ; others are the product of a chemical combination, betwixt oleaginous substances and the metallic oxides with which they are combined. Some are spread upon leather, others upon linen.

---

*Ferris' Black Plaster.*

Take of white oak bark a proper quantity ; bruise ; add urine sufficient to cover it. Let it stand two or three days, and then boil it, till it becomes of the consistence of honey ; add to every 5℥, 1℥ of honey and 1℥ of strained turpentine gum. Add ʒ3 of white vitriol, pulverized, to every ounce, when it is intended to act as an escharotic.

*Use.*—This forms a very valuable plaster for *cancers*, ulcers, or white swelling in a state of ulceration, and for the removal of spongy or fungous flesh. It excites but little pain or inflammation. It should be spread on linen, or a soft piece of leather.

---

*Cicuta Plaster.*

Take of common turpentine ; strain it after melting ; and, when nearly cold, add of pulverized cicuta leaves a sufficient quantity to form a plaster.

*Use.*—It is useful in glandular swellings of the breast, and other parts.

---

*Strengthening Plaster.*

Take of hemlock gum ; dissolve and strain it.

*Use.*—This forms an excellent strengthening and stimulating plaster. It is employed in chronic rheumatism, weakness in the back, &c.

*Tobacco Plaster.*

Take of Tobacco, (*nicotiana tabacum*), - - - 1℔  
 Urine, - - - - - 1 gal.

Boil down one half; strain it, and add sufficient pitch. Boil to the consistence of a plaster.

*Use.*—This plaster is said to have cured the rheumatism. We have never used it.

*Blistering Plaster.*

Take of Mutton suet,  
 Beeswax,  
 White resin,

Of each an equal part. Melt these articles together, and add one proportion of Spanish flies, pulverized.

*Astringent Plaster.*

Take of white oak bark, (*quercus alba*), a sufficient quantity; macerate it in cold water one day; then put it into a boiler, and evaporate till an extract is obtained.

*Use.*—It is useful in hernia, or rupture. To be spread on a soft piece of leather, and applied over the rupture; after which a *truss* must be worn.

*Adhesive and Strengthening Plaster.*

Take of White resin, - - - - - 3℔  
 Beeswax, - - - - - 4℥  
 Burgundy pitch, - - - - - 4℥  
 Mutton tallow, - - - - - 4℥

Melt these together, and then add

Sweet oil, - - - - -  $\frac{1}{2}$ ℥  
 Camphor, - - - - -  $\frac{1}{2}$ ℥  
 West India rum, - - - - - 1 gill.  
 Sassafras oil, - - - - -  $\frac{1}{2}$ ℥

When the latter articles have been incorporated with the former, let the whole be poured into a vessel of water, and work it in the hands till cold. In some seasons, and climates, a little more resin, or a little more sweet oil, is required to make it of the right consistence.

*Use.*—This is used as a sticking plaster; and is used also in rheumatism. It is likewise useful in cuts, ulcers, &c. This makes an elegant plaster.

*Common Strengthening Plaster, called "Sear Cloth Plaster."*

Take of Resin, (usually termed <i>rosin</i> ),	-	-	-	1℥
Beeswax,	-	-	-	4℥
Capsicum,	-	-	-	4℥
Spirits,	-	-	-	1 quart.

Simmer the pepper (enclosed in a linen bag) in the spirits, and strain. Melt the other articles together, and add the tincture; and simmer till the spirits is nearly all evaporated. Take it from the fire, and, when nearly cold, add ʒ of fine camphor, and ʒ of oil of sassafras.

*Use.*—This is used whenever a strengthening plaster is wanted. It seldom or never fails to afford relief.

*Bone's Sear Cloth Plaster.*

Take of common turpentine, melt and strain it; then add a small quantity of resin, mutton tallow, and vinegar. Melt again, and pour it into a pail of water. Form it into rolls, or plasters.

*Use.*—To be used as the preceding.

## CHAPTER XIX.

## POULTICES.

POULTICES, or cataplasms, are external applications, of a soft or pulpy consistence, and somewhat tenacious. They are of various kinds: some are designed for discutients, others to produce suppuration; some are refrigerant or cooling, while others are stimulating; others again are emollient. In general, poultices are best applied warm or tepid, and they should not be suffered to get dry before they are renewed.

*Linseed Poultice.*

Take of Linseed, powdered,	-	-	-	4℥
Hot water,	-	-	-	½ pint.

Gradually sprinkle the powder into the water, and stir them together with a spoon.

*Use.*—This is a good and convenient emollient poultice, for many cases. It is preferable to the bread and milk poultice, so much in use; it is not so liable to become brittle and hard when dry. It is very useful in carbuncle, obstinate inflammation, &c.

*Carrot Poultice.*

Take of Boiled carrots, bruised,	-	-	-	1℥
Flour,	-	-	-	1℥
Butter,	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥

Mix them with as much hot water as to form a pulp.

*Use.*—This will be found a valuable application to ulcerated sores and swellings, scrofulous sores of an irritable kind, and many other inveterate ulcers.

*Mustard Cataplasm.*

Take of Mustard, in powder,	-	-	-	-	4℥
Soft bread, or Indian meal,	-	-	-	-	6℥

Vinegar, of the best quality, as much as is sufficient to mix, and make into a cataplasm.

*Use.*—This is found to be a good application to the soles of the feet, in cases of rheumatism, gout, inflammatory diseases, fevers, &c.

*Common Poultice.*

Take of slippery-elm bark, (*ulmas fulva*), a sufficient quantity, pulverized; stir it in hot, or warm, milk and water, to the consistence of a poultice.

*Use.*—This poultice exceeds every other in point of efficacy. It is of almost universal application; and removes inflammation sooner than any other. Compared to this, every other poultice dwindles into insignificance.

*Alkaline Poultice.*

Take of ley, rather weak, warm it, and stir in of slippery-elm bark sufficient to form a poultice.

*Use.*—This poultice is useful in inflammation of the breast, and other parts, in felons, white swellings, lockjaw, wounds, fistulas, &c.

*Yest Poullice.*

Take of Milk, blood warm,	-	-	-	-	-	1 pint.
Yest,	-	-	-	-	-	1 gill.

Stir in fine slippery-elm bark, to form a poullice.

*Use.*—This is a good antiseptic and refrigerant poullice. Applied to gangrenous ulcers, it is more efficacious than any other. It sooner arrests mortification, used with proper auxiliaries. It is also very serviceable in other species of inflammation.

*Cat-tail Poullice.*

Simmer the root of the cat-tail in milk; stir in slippery-elm bark, to form a poullice.

*Use.*—I have used this poullice, with good effect, in inflamed testicles.

*Indian Turnip Poullice.*

Take of the tops and roots of Indian turnip, (*arum triphyllum*;) if green; if dry, the root only, simmer in water, and add slippery-elm bark, sufficient to form into a poullice.

*Use.*—This poullice is used in the treatment of king's evil, or scrofula, with the best effect. I think it altogether superior to every other poullice, in scrofula, in a state of swelling and inflammation.

*Potato Poullice.*

Boil the common potato; mash or bruise soft; and then stir in the slippery-elm bark.

*Use.*—This poullice has been used with success in ophthalmia, of an acute character, when other means have failed.

*Cicuta Poullice.*

Take the plant, green or dry, and boil in milk and water, until it is very soft; add a very small quantity of the slippery-elm bark, sufficient to make it adhere; apply it blood warm.

*Use.*—It is excellent to produce suppuration, especially in those swellings where the glands are indurated, inflamed *breasts*, *testicles*, *cancers*, &c.

*Ferris' Poullice.*

Scrape the common carrot, add to it a decoction of spignard root, and stir in Indian-meal.

*Use.*—The late Dr. Ferris was in the habit of using this poullice in cases of inflammation, bordering on gangrene, or mortification.

*Astringent Poullice.*

Take the root of black willow bark, (called pussy willow,) pulverized, a sufficient quantity; form it into a poullice, by the addition of cream.

*Use.*—This is the common poullice of the celebrated Dr. Bone, of New-Jersey, who has acquired great celebrity for the successful treatment of inflammation and ulcers.

## CHAPTER XX.

## PILLS.

PILLS are certain small, round substances, composed of vegetables and are designed to operate in a small dose; the disagreeable taste, or smell of which, renders it necessary that they should be concealed from the palate.

In general, they do not operate as soon as medicine in other forms. Pills is a good form to administer some kinds of medicine, as some can take it, made in this manner, better than any other.

*Antidyspeptic Pills.*

Take of Socotorine aloes, ( <i>aloe socotorina</i> ,)	-	-	4℥
Castile soap, ( <i>sapo venetensis</i> ,)	-	-	2℥
Colocynth, ( <i>cucumis colocynthis</i> ,)	-	-	2℥
Gamboge, ( <i>stalagmitis gambogioides</i> ,)	-	-	2℥
Extract of gentian, ( <i>gentiana lutea</i> ,)	-	-	4℥
Oil of cloves, ( <i>oleum caryophilata</i> ,)	-	-	2℥

Mix; and form into pills of the size of a pea.

*Dose.*—One or two, morning and evening, according as they operate.

*Use.*—This is a very valuable pill; while it cleanses the stomach, it restores the tone, without creating debility.

*Nervous, or Hysterical Pill.*

Take of Asafœtida, ( <i>fecula asafœtida</i> ,)	-	-	1℥
Opium, ( <i>papaver somniferum</i> ,)	-	-	1℥
Carbon. of ammonia,	-	-	1℥

Dissolve the same over a fire; mix; and form into pills, of the size of a pea.

*Dose.*—One or two.

*Use.*—It is useful in hysterics, and all nervous cases.

*Opium Pill.*

Take of Turkey opium, (*papaver somniferum*,) cut out the soft part, and form it into pills, of the size of a pea, (3 grains,) and rub them in a little flour.

*Dose.*—One every hour, or two, if necessary.

*Use.*—This is the best form to give opium, in very urgent and acute cases. In vomiting, from any cause, attended with spasm, it affords prompt relief. It is useful in colic, &c.

*Cicuta Pill.*

Take of *Cicuta* leaves, (*pulv. cicuta virosa*;) add sufficient turpentine to form into pills.

*Dose.*—One or two may be given for a dose.

*Use.*—This pill aids in discussing hard glandular tumours.

*Hydragogue Pill.*

Take of Jalap, (*conv. jalapa*), pulv. - - - 1℥

Scammony, (*con. scammonia*), - - - 1℥

Gamboge, (*stalagmitis gambogioides*), - - - 1℥

Add mucilage of gum Arabic, enough to form into pills. Make 16 pills.

*Dose.*—One every hour.

*Use.*—This pill has cured the dropsy of the chest, and may be given when other means fail.

*Red, or Stimulating Pill.*

Take of Cayenne pepper, (*capsicum annuum*;) add sufficient of molasses and flour to form into pills.

*Use.*—Useful in dropsy of the chest, asthma, flatulence, indigestion, pain, &c.

*Dose.*—Give three, three times a day.

*Bilious and Laxative Pill.*

Take of Extract of jalap, - - - 1℥

Castile soap, - - - 1℥

Oil of peppermint, - - - 1℥

Scrape and rub the soap fine; warm the extract; and then unite them, and incorporate; add the peppermint oil, and form into pills. Sometimes a little flour is necessary.

*Dose.*—Two or three is a dose.

*Use.*—Useful in costiveness, and bilious affections, headach, &c.

## CHAPTER XXI.

## POWDERS

ARE the most simple and natural form in which medicine can be given, as their virtues are not impaired by passing through any particular process; but when it is necessary to administer a large quantity of any article, they cannot be conveniently taken in this form. They are either simple or compound. All powders should be kept in a glass vessel, closely stopped, and from the light, otherwise their virtues may be impaired.

Powders may be administered in molasses, honey, syrup, tea, or any suitable veicle.

*Snuff Powder.*

Take of High laurel,	-	-	-	-	10℥
Sassafras,	-	-	-	-	1℥
Blood root,	-	-	-	-	1℥
Pulverized; mix well.					

*Use.*—Good for catarrh, obstructions of the head, &c.

*Antibilious Powder, Common Purgative, or Physic.*

Take of Jalap, ( <i>conv. jalapa</i> ),	-	-	-	-	1℥
Alexandria senna,	-	-	-	-	2℥
Peppermint plant,	-	-	-	-	1℥

Let these articles be separately pulverized; then mix them together, and pass through a fine sieve.

*Dose.*—A teaspoonful, (about a drachm.) It should be put into a teacup, with a lump of loaf sugar, and a gill of boiling water added; and given to the patient when cool, fasting, or on an empty stomach.

*Use.*—This forms the best general purgative that is now known. It combines power with mildness of action, and acts throughout the whole alimentary canal, cleansing it, and producing a healthy action. It may be given to every age and sex; it removes offensive accumulations in the bowels, without bringing on subsequent constipation. It stimulates every contiguous organ to a healthy state. It is useful in all diseases where physic is required. In bilious and febrile diseases it is invaluable.

*Emetic Powder, or Compound Powder of Ipecacuanha.*

Take of Ipecacuanha, ( <i>caliocolca ipecacuanha</i> ),	-	4℥
Lobelia, ( <i>lobelia inflata</i> ),	-	4℥
Cayenne pepper, ( <i>capsicum</i> ),	-	2℥

Pulverize separately.

*Dose.*—A teaspoonful, given every thirty minutes, till it operates. It should be given in warm boneset, or camomile flower tea.

*Use.*—This emetic, perhaps, is unsurpassed by any other, for efficacy of action. It is administered in all those cases where an emetic is indicated; and from its extensive effects upon the system, is very efficacious in breaking up morbid associations, or exciting a healthy action of the system. It is useful in febrile and other diseases, &c. Excellent in the chronic affections of the liver, stomach, and intestines.

*Bone's Emetic and Cathartic Powder.*

Take of Euphorbia ipecacuanha, ( <i>spurge</i> ),	-	12 grs.
---	---	---------

To be given in molasses.

*Use.*—This is excellent in dropsy, obstruction of the menses, jaundice, and liver complaint. This medicine is much given by Dr. Bone.

*Emmenagogue, Black, or Tonic Powder.*

Take of Flour, of sulphur,	-	-	4℥
Gum myrrh, ( <i>gumma myrrha</i> ),	-	-	4℥
Steel filings, fine,	-	-	4℥
Loaf sugar,	-	-	4℥

Add to these articles a quart of wine, and simmer till nearly dry; remove from the fire, and, when cold, pulverize, and bottle for use.

*Dose.*—Half a teaspoonful, three times a day, to be taken in molasses; or the same quantity may be taken in the form of pills.

*Use.*—This forms an excellent preparation for the treatment of amenorrhœa, or obstructed menses, when that complaint is an idiopathic, or primary disease.

That it may not be said that I ever administer a single mineral, more recently I have omitted the steel filings.

*Diaphoretic Powder.*

Take of Gum opium,	-	-	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}\text{ʒ}$
Camphor,	-	-	-	-	-	-	2ʒ
Pulv. ipecacuanha,	-	-	-	-	-	-	1ʒ
Cream of tartar,	-	-	-	-	-	-	1ʒ

Pulverize all separately; then mix. It is best to use pulverized opium.

*Dose.*—Ten grains, as often as may be necessary.

*Use.*—This forms a valuable anodyne, diaphoretic, and sudorific. It is beneficially administered in fever, diarrhœa, dysentery, and cholera morbus; and in all cases where an anodyne, combined with a sudorific, is required. In these diseases, it should be administered in small doses. It is also applicable to many other diseases, such as rheumatism, gout, &c. It promotes perspiration, without increasing the heat of the body. It produces a constant moisture of the skin for a great length of time, while it allays irritation.

*Eupatorium Powder.*

Take of boneset, (*eupatorium perfoliata*;) pulverize it very fine.

*Dose.*—From a teaspoonful to a tablespoonful, three or four times a day; to be taken fasting; mixed in half a pint of hoarhound tea, and sweetened.

*Use.*—These powders have been used with considerable success, in the treatment of dyspepsia, intermittent fever, and pulmonary diseases.

*Smith's Cough Powder.*

Take of Elecampane root, ( <i>inula helen.</i> )	-	-	-	-	2ʒ
Liquorice root, ( <i>glycyrrhiza g.</i> )	-	-	-	-	2ʒ
Blood-root, ( <i>sanguinaria can.</i> )	-	-	-	-	2ʒ
Crane's-bill, ( <i>geranium mac.</i> )	-	-	-	-	2ʒ
Indian turnip, ( <i>arum tri.</i> )	-	-	-	-	2ʒ

Pulverize fine.

*Dose.*—Half a teaspoonful, three times a day.

*Use.*—Good expectorant, pectoral, and tonic.

*Smith's Colic Powder.*

Take of Pleurisy root, ( <i>asclepias tuberosa.</i> )	-	-	-	1ʒ
Cayenne pepper, ( <i>capsicum an.</i> )	-	-	-	1ʒ

Pulverize, and mix in half a pint of water.

*Dose.*—One tablespoonful every twenty minutes, till it operates, or relieves.

*Fever Powder.*

Take of dragon's claw, (*pterospera andromeda*,) pulverized.

*Dose.*—A teaspoonful, infused in a proper quantity of water, morning and evening.

*Use.*—These powders have been much celebrated in the treatment of fevers, and particularly of that species called hectic fever. They act as a mild, but efficient sudorific, without increasing the force of the circulation. They may be safely administered in almost every stage of fever.

*Cephalic Powder.*

Take of Blood-root, ( <i>sang. canadensis</i> ,)	-	-	-	13
Bark of the root of bayberry,	-	-	-	13

Calomel has sometimes been added, in polypus. Mix.

*Use.*—Useful in catarrh, headach, polypus, &c.

*Red, or Styptic Powders.*

Take of copperas, ( <i>sulphas ferri</i> ,)	-	-	-	63
---	---	---	---	----

Submit it to a red heat, in a flame of fire; a decomposition is effected, and a red substance is formed. This, pulverized, forms a powder, containing highly styptic and astringent properties.

*Use.*—It is used in the treatment of hæmorrhoids, (piles,) and in stopping hæmorrhage, or bleeding. It may be mixed with a little melted tallow, and introduced up the rectum, for the bleeding piles.

*Hull's Bilious Physic.*

Take of socotorine aloes, ( <i>aloe socio</i> ,)	-	-	-	83
Gum myrrh, ( <i>gummi myrrha</i> ,)	-	-	-	13
Cinnamon, ( <i>laurus cin</i> ,)	-	-	-	13
Cloves, ( <i>eugenia caryoph</i> ,)	-	-	-	13
Ginger, ( <i>ammonium zingiber</i> ,)	-	-	-	13
Saffron, ( <i>crocus officinalis</i> ,)	-	-	-	13

Pulverize fine, and mix.

*Dose.*—A teaspoonful every hour, till it operates.

*Use.*—This preparation has been celebrated as a remedy in the treatment of bilious colic.

*Henry's Cephalic Snuff.*

Take the roots of daisies, yarrow, and white hellebore, colts' foot leaves, and bayberry bark, of each one ounce, finely pulverized, and sifted through gauze; mix the powders well together, in a mortar, and drop in it one drachm of the essence of bergamot; after which put it in a bottle, close corked, for use.

*Dose.*—A small pinch of this snuff may be taken at bed-time, as a cure for vertigo, "megrims," obstructions, from catarrh, &c.; and I have found it effectual in relieving the headach.

## Compound Powder of Mandrake.

Take of Pulverized mandrake.

Pulverized spearmint.

Cream of tartar ; equal parts. Mix.

*Dose.*—A teaspoonful, in tea or syrup.

*Use.*—Useful in diseases of the liver, dyspepsia, obstructed menses, dropsy, in venereal diseases, and in every taint of the system.

I have this moment been to visit a young lady, whose menses had been obsiructed for many months, attended with dizziness, and pain in the head. enormous swelling of the abdomen, &c., and where the exhibition of the above medicine, a *mandrake* alone, every other morning, with two or three pills of gum turpentine, restored them, and removed the symptoms.

---

 CHAPTER XXII.

## SALVES.

SALVES are medicines of proper consistence, for spreading on linen, or muslin, designed for external use, for burns, ulcers, &c. They are formed, by uniting wax, resin, or oil, with some remedial agent, either vegetable or some of the metallic oxydes, such as red lead. They require to be made of a little harder consistence for summer than winter; and which may be done by adding or diminishing the quantity of oil.

Salves designed for ulcers should be renewed about twice a day.

---

*Black Plaster, or Healing Salve.*

Take of Olive oil, ( <i>oleum olivarium</i> ),	-	-	-	3 quarts
Common resin,	-	-	-	3℥
Beeswax,	-	-	-	3℥

Melt these articles together, and raise the oil almost to boiling heat; then add, gradually, of pul. red lead  $2\frac{1}{4}$ ℔, if it be in the winter; if in the summer,  $2\frac{1}{2}$ ℔. In a short time after the lead is taken up by the oil, and the mixture becomes brown, or a shining black, remove from the fire; and, when nearly cold, add of pulv. camphor, half an ounce.

It should remain on the fire until it forms a proper consistence for spreading, and which may be known by dipping a spatula or knife into it from time to time, and suffering it to cool.

*Use.*—We have found this elegant salve superior to every other, where applications of this kind are required. It has an excellent effect in every kind of ulcer, in burns, in venereal, scrofulous, and fistulous, and all other ulcers.

It should be spread thin, on a piece of a linen, and renewed once or twice a day.

*Green Salve.*

Take of Turpentine, (*terebinthina*,) - - -  $\frac{1}{2}$ ℔  
 Bayberry tallow, (*m. corifera*,) - - -  $\frac{1}{2}$ ℔

Dissolve together, and form into a salve; add sweet oil, if necessary.

*Use.*—This salve is designed for scrofulous ulcers.

*Yellow Salve.*

Take one bushel of the roots of the baptisia tinctoria, or indigo weed, boil till the strength is out, then strain, boil, and skim; add 10℔ of fresh butter, 3℔ of beeswax, and  $1\frac{1}{2}$ ℔ of mutton tallow; then boil the water out, and strain till clear.

*Use.*—This salve is used by Dr. Bone, for all kinds of ulcers. It is cleansing, detergent, discutient, &c.

## CHAPTER XXIII.

## SYRUPS.

SYRUPS are liquids containing the properties of certain vegetables in a very concentrated state ; they are prepared by boiling the ingredients until their strength is extracted, and much of the watery portion evaporated ; then adding sufficient quantity of clarified sugar to prevent fermentation.

Syrup is an excellent form to administer many kinds of medicines. They should always be kept in a cool place.

In consequence of the oleaginous and other peculiar properties of most, or all, vegetables, water is not sufficient to extract their virtues, and it is necessary to use spirits. The two menstruums combined answer this purpose admirably ; after the alcohol has extracted the component parts of the plants or roots, it is evaporated by boiling ; when no danger need be apprehended from its stimulating effects.

---

*Alterative Syrup.*

Take of Sarsaparilla, ( <i>smilax sarsaparilla</i> .)	-	-	6℥
Guaiacum shavings, ( <i>guaiacum offi.</i> )	-	-	3℥
Sassafras-root bark, ( <i>laurus sassafras</i> .)	-	-	2℥
Elder flowers, ( <i>sam. niger</i> .)	-	-	2℥

Add one gallon of cheap spirits and one gallon of water.

Boil, and pour off the liquid ; then add water repeatedly, and boil till the strength is obtained. Strain, and reduce to 16 porter bottles ; then add thirty pounds of clarified sugar. Let it stand twenty-four hours to settle ; pour off, and bottle for use.

*Dose.*—A wineglassful three or four times a day.

The sugar may be clarified, by adding to it half its weight of water, then a few eggs, and boiling till no more scum arises.

*Use.*—This syrup, the alterative, we use in a great variety of cases. In syphilitic, or venereal diseases, in rheumatism, chronic inflammation of the liver, we could not dispense with it. We also use it in the treatment of scrofula, which presents itself in so many shapes. In some of the cutaneous diseases, we find it very effectual ; in every species of ulcer, it is also valuable. White-swelling, necrosis, rickets, salt-rheum, or herpes ; and, in short, we have found it very useful in every taint of the system, from whatever cause it may arise. I have used *Swaim's*, and many other boasted nostrums, but I find this preferable to all of them. It appears to act upon all the secretions and excretions. A tea of burdock-seed may be taken with it.

*Vegetable Syrup.*

Take of Liverwort, ( <i>hepatica triloba</i> ),	-	-	1℥
Solomon's seal, ( <i>conv. multiflora</i> ),	-	-	1℥
Skunk cabbage, ( <i>ictodes fatida</i> ),	-	-	1℥
Blood-root, ( <i>sanguinaria can.</i> )	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Water hoarhound, ( <i>lycopus virgin.</i> )	-	-	1℥

Add a sufficient quantity of water.

Boil, and pour off the water, till the strength is obtained. Strain, and boil to 20 porter bottles; add 20 pounds of strained honey; remove from the fire, and add one pint of brandy; let it settle, and bottle for use.

*Dose.*—A wineglassful, three or four times a day.

*Use.*—This preparation is used in every variety of pulmonary disease, and particularly, however, in hæmoptysis, (bleeding at the lungs,) and asthmatic affections.

I procured this formula from Dr. Lawrence, an excellent botanist, and chief physician and surgeon to the society of "shaking quakers," at New Lebanon, New-York.

*Scrofulous Syrup.*

Take of Yellow dock-root, ( <i>rumex crispus</i> ),	-	-	2℥
Bark of bittersweet-root, ( <i>solan. dulca.</i> )	-	-	2℥

Bruise, and boil till the strength is obtained; then strain, and boil to 12 porter bottles; add sugar sufficient to prevent fermentation.

*Dose.*—A wineglassful, three times a day.

*Use.*—This syrup is useful in scrofula and herpetic affections.

*Syrup of Ginger.*

Take of Ginger root, ( <i>amomum zingiber</i> ),	-	-	-	43
Boiling water,	-	-	-	83

Sugar sufficient to make a syrup.

This is a stimulating, aromatic syrup, and contains all the properties of the ginger. It is combined with other agents, and used principally in the cholera.

*White Poppy Syrup.*

Take of the capsules of white poppy, (*papaver somniferum*), infuse them in warm water, for twelve hours; then boil and strain; add sufficient sugar to preserve it.

This forms a good anodyne, particularly for infants and children.

Prepared in this manner, there appears to be less of the narcotic property of the herb, than when prepared with spirits.

*Dose.*—The same dose is therefore required.

*Use.*—It relieves coughs and pain, similar to paregoric, and it possesses about the same strength.

*Antispasmodic Syrup.*

Take of Peony-root, ( <i>pæonia officinalis</i> ),	-	-	-	1℥
Peruvian bark, ( <i>cinchona off.</i> )	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{4}$ ℥
Virginia snake-root, ( <i>serp. virgin.</i> )	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{4}$ ℥

Extract the strength by boiling; boil to four porter bottles; strain, and add 6℥ of white sugar.

*Dose.*—A wineglassful, three or four times a day.

*Use.*—This is a valuable tonic syrup, in epilepsy; for which only we use it.

*Black Berry Syrup.*

Take 2℥ of the bark of the root, well cleansed, or washed. Add a suitable quantity of water; then boil two hours. Pour off the liquid; then add more water; and thus continue to boil and pour off, until all the strength is extracted; then strain, and add all the boilings together. Simmer to two quarts; strain; then add 4℥ of loaf sugar, and when cool add half a pint of best French brandy.

*Dose.*—A tablespoonful, three times a day, fasting. If it does not arrest the disease after taking it a few days, gradually increase the dose, as the stomach can bear it.

*Use.*—This is a very valuable syrup in bowel complaints, particularly the chronic form. It will effect a cure when every other means fail. It appears to possess specific virtues, different from every other vegetable.

A rob, or jelly, is made of the fruit, which is useful to mix with water, and drink.

*Hoarhound Syrup.*

Take of the leaves of hoarhound, dried, 2℥; infuse them for twenty-four hours, in half a pint of boiling hot water, and as much spirits; strain, and add  $\frac{1}{4}$ ℥ of honey, and one teaspoonful of the essence of lemon.

*Dose.*—For an adult, one or two tablespoonfuls every two hours.

*Use.*—This is recommended for hoarseness, asthma, complaints of the breast, lungs, &c. It promotes the fluid secretions in general, and if used very freely will loosen the abdomen.

Linnæus prescribed this remedy, and cured a patient that was thrown into a salivation by the use of mercurials, when every other method that had before, for one year, been used, failed, or rather increased the disease. After using the hoarhound, the patient got well in a short time. It is said to have been a favourite medicine with the ancients, for removing obstructions of the viscera. The negroes use it for curing vegetable poisons, &c.

*Syrup for the Dysentery,*  
(Which, it is said, has never failed in thirty years.)

Rhubarb and wild cherry bark, a handful; four tablespoonsfuls of sugar; simmer a while.

*Dose.*—Give a tablespoonful, every fifteen minutes, until the pain ceases. Make it fresh every day, and add a little brandy.

*Use.*—The above is taken from a work, called the “*Indian Physician* ;” and is pronounced infallible in dysentery.

*Expectorant Syrup.*

(From the same.)

A handful of St. John’s-wort; one of sage. Make a syrup.

*Dose.*—For a child six months old, a teaspoonful; for one of six years old, give a tablespoonful every fifteen minutes.

*Cough Syrup.*

Take of Iceland moss, - - - - - 23

Four poppy heads,

One tablespoonful of barley, (whole.)

Put in three pints of water, and boil down to two; strain. Then dissolve 1℥ brown rock candy.

*Dose.*—A tablespoonful, whenever the cough is troublesome.

*Use.*—Useful in tickling coughs.

## CHAPTER XXIV.

## SPIRITS.

SPIRITS are similar to tinctures; they are usually compounded of several ingredients. The principal menstruum is alcohol, either pure or diluted; sometimes spirits, or vinegar, alone, are used to prepare this class of medicines.

---

*Compound Spirits of Lavender, (called Lavender Compound.)*

Take of Flowers of lavender, ( <i>lavendula spica</i> ,)	-	-	-	23
Nutmeg, ( <i>nux moschatta</i> ,)	-	-	-	23
Mace, ( <i>myristicha moschatta</i> ,)	-	-	-	23
Cloves, ( <i>eugenia caryo</i> .)	-	-	-	23
Cinnamon, ( <i>laurus cin</i> .)	-	-	-	23

Pulverize, and add a quart of spirits.

*Dose.*—One or two teaspoonfuls may be taken often, in a little water, or tea.

*Use.*—This pleasant, aromatic preparation, is useful in debility, fainting, hysterics, and all nervous affections; pain in the breast, flatulence, &c.

---

*Spirits of Mindererus.*

Take of good vinegar, saturate it with the carbonate of potash.

*Dose.*—A tablespoonful, four or five times a day, diluted with a little water.

*Use.*—This is given in fevers, as a refrigerant; particularly those of a typhoid type. I add the sal æratus, or bicarbonate of potash, instead of the ammonia.

---

*Spirits of Camphor.*

Take of Gum camphor,	-	-	-	-	13
Alcohol,	-	-	-	-	1 pint. Mix.

*Dose.*—From half to a teaspoonful may be taken in a little water, sweetened.

*Use.*—This preparation contains all the virtues of camphor: it is useful in flatulence, pain, or sickness of the stomach, colic, cramp, &c. Combined with equal parts of spirits of lavender, and essence of peppermint, it becomes more efficacious. I found much benefit from it myself, during the cholera.

## CHAPTER XXV.

## SINAPISMS, OR DRAUGHTS.

SINAPISMS, and other stimulating draughts, are employed with the same intention as the common blister, to produce counter irritation; and they often give relief very speedily, in internal pains and inflammation. Mustard poultices, or plasters, act much more quickly than blisters, and they are free from the inconvenience and distress which arise from them. They should be applied sufficiently strong to produce a little pain, or to redden the skin; after which they may be removed, and applied near the same place. They are excellent to relieve pain and inflammation of the head, in febrile and other diseases; are very useful to equalize the circulation in very many complaints. Recently I have substituted mustard plasters for blisters.

*Mustard Sinapisms.*

Take of Mustard, (*sinapis nigra*, or *alba*),

Rye, indian, or oatmeal,

Equal parts. Form it into a proper consistence, by the addition of vinegar.

*Use.*—This plaster answers all the purposes of a blister, without its being attended with any of the distressing effects which generally result from its application. They should be made sufficiently strong to redden, but not to break the skin. They may be very often changed from place to place, with a good effect. They are very valuable, applied to the feet, to cause revulsion, or to equalize the circulation; hence, it is useful in fevers, inflammation, &c.

*Garlic and Onion Sinapism.*

Bruise raw onions, and apply.

*Use.*—Useful in the same diseases as the preceding, in pneumonia, or inflammation of the lungs, &c.

## CHAPTER XXVI.

## TINCTURES.

TINCTURES are certain active ingredients, principally vegetable substances, which are imparted to alcohol, spirits, or wine. Tinctures are excellent for administering a great variety of medicinal agents; but, in some cases, there may be an objection to them, in consequence of the spirits which they contain. Substances yield their virtues more readily to spirits, by the addition of heat.

*Hydragogue Tincture.*

Take of Bark of sweet elder, ( <i>sambucus nigra</i> ),	-	-	1℔
Good wine,	-	-	1 gal.

Let it simmer an hour; strain and bottle.

*Dose.*—A wineglassful, three or four times a day.

*Use.*—This tincture is usefully administered in dropsical affections, particularly in abdominal dropsy, or ascites. It has cured many without any other ingredient.

*Botanical Tincture.*

Take of Gum guaiacum, ( <i>guaiacum officinalis</i> ),	-	-	1℔
Nitre, ( <i>nitras potassæ</i> ),	-	-	1℔
Camphor,	-	-	23
Balsam Tolu, ( <i>balsami tolu</i> ),	-	-	23
Spirits,	-	-	2 quarts. Mix.

*Dose.*—Two teaspoonfuls, three or four times a day, to be taken in a tumbler of prickly ash tea.

*Use.*—This formula I obtained from Dr. Budd, a celebrated physician, in New-Jersey. He procured it from another physician, in Charleston, S. C. It is highly extolled in rheumatism, and any external, painful, chronic affections. I have used it but little; but the Doctor informs me, that he is so partial to it, that he usually prepares five gallons at a time.

*Tincture of Lobelia Inflata.*

Take of Pulv. lobelia, ( <i>lobelia inflata</i> ),	-	-	23
Spirits,	-	-	2 quarts

Let it stand two or three days, and filter.

*Dose.*—From a teaspoonful to a tablespoonful, as often as necessary.

*Use.*—This tincture is an excellent remedy, in the treatment of asthma, croup, and pulmonary affections. It is also given in tetanus and poisons.

*Anodyne Tincture.*

Saturate alcohol, with the pollen of hops.

*Dose.*—From one to two teaspoonfuls, in milk.

*Use.*—Useful in after pains, and in cases where opium cannot be taken.

*Tincture of Balsam Tolu.*

Take of Balsam tolu, ( <i>balsami tolutanum</i> ,)	-	-	-	1℥
Alcohol,	-	-	-	1 pint.

Let it stand one week, and filter.

*Use.*—This is combined with the compound tincture of senna, (*elixir salutes*,) for the *water-brash*.

*Tincture of Castor.*

Take of Castor, ( <i>castoreum</i> ,)	-	-	-	2℥
Spirits,	-	-	-	1 quart

Let it digest one week.

*Use.*—Useful in nervous diseases, and in suppressed menses.

*Tincture of Gum Myrrh.*

Take of Pulv. gum myrrh, ( <i>gum myrrha</i> ,)	-	-	-	1℥
Alcohol,	-	-	-	1 pint.

*Dose.*—One or two teaspoonfuls is a dose ; to be given three or four times a day, in motherwort tea.

*Use.*—This and the preceding tincture are combined in equal parts, and given in obstructed menses. It one case it cured, when all other means failed.

*Tincture of Cantharides.*

Take of Pulv. Spanish flies, ( <i>meloe ves.</i> )	-	-	-	1℥
Proof spirits,	-	-	-	1 pint.

Let it stand one week, and strain.

*Dose.*—Twenty-five drops ; for a child two years old, ten drops is a dose, in any kind of tea.

*Use.*—I have occasionally prescribed this, in incontinence of urine.

*Elixir Salutis, or Compound Tincture of Senna.*

Take of Alexandria senna,	-	-	-	-	23
Jalap, ( <i>conv. jalapa</i> ),	-	-	-	-	13
Fennel seeds,	-	-	-	-	13
Spirits,	-	-	-	-	2 quarts

Let it stand one week, and then strain.

*Dose.*—One ounce.

*Use.*—A mild, but effectual purgative.

*Laudanum, or Tincture of Opium.*

Take of Opium, ( <i>papaver somniferum</i> ),	-	-	-	-	23
Proof spirits,	-	-	-	-	1 quart.

Let it stand a week.

*Dose.*—From 30 to 100 drops.

*Use.*—Given as an anodyne.

*Compound Tincture of Camphor, or Paregoric.*

Take of Opium, ( <i>papaver somniferum</i> ),	-	-	-	-	13
Flowers of benzoin, ( <i>flores benzoës</i> ),	-	-	-	-	13
Camphor, ( <i>laurus camp.</i> )	-	-	-	-	29
Anise, ( <i>pimpinella anisum</i> ),	-	-	-	-	13
Proof spirits,	-	-	-	-	1 quart.

*Dose.*—A teaspoonful for a child a year old.

*Use.*—Given to allay irritation, or pain, for flatulence, or wind, in coughs, &c. This preparation should be sparingly used.

*Gout and Rheumatism Tincture.*

Take of White hellebore, ( <i>helebore alba</i> ),	-	-	-	-	33
Opium, ( <i>papaver som.</i> )	-	-	-	-	13
Lisbon wine,	-	-	-	-	83

Let it digest till the strength is extracted.

*Dose.*—Give from twenty-five to eighty drops.

*Use.*—This preparation is similar to the celebrated composition, discovered about fifty years ago, by M. Husson, a French officer, and has been so highly famed for its almost infallible power in the cure of gout. It was sold for one or two crowns a dose.

Meadow saffron, made into tea, may be drank at the same time.

*Tincture of Stramonium.*

Take of Pulv. seeds of stramonium, (*dau. stra.*) - - - 2℥  
 Proof spirits, - - - - - 1 quart.

Let it stand one week.

*Dose.*—Twenty-five drops twice a day. In cases of fits, it may be increased until the pupil of the eye becomes somewhat dilated, or until it causes a little pain or dizziness in the head.

*Use.*—It is useful in epilepsy, neuralgia, palpitation of the heart, &c.

*Expectorant Tincture.*

Take of Blood-root, (*sang. canad.*) - - - - - 1℥  
 Lobelia, (*lobelia inflata*.) - - - - - 1℥  
 Pleurisy root, (*asclepias tuberosa*.) - - - - - 2℥  
 Wine, or metheglin, - - - - - 3 pints.

Let it stand one week.

*Dose.*—A tablespoonful twice a day, or as often as may be necessary.

*Use.*—It is useful in inflammation of the lungs, in pleurisy, in whooping-cough, in consumption, &c., and when there is any difficulty of expectoration.

*Tincture of Skunk Cabbage.*

Take of The root of skunk cabbage, - - - - - 3℥  
 Spirits, - - - - - 1 quart.

Let it stand one week.

*Dose.*—From a teaspoonful to a tablespoonful, in asthma and hysterics.

*Golden Tincture.*

Take of Logwood, rasped, (*hæm. cam.*) - - - - - 4℥  
 Black hellebore, (*helleborus nig.*) - - - - - 4℥  
 Spirits, or wine, - - - - - 3 pints.

Let it stand one week, and filter.

*Dose.*—From a tablespoonful to a half wineglassful three times a day.

*Use.*—Useful in a retention of the menses.

*Tincture of Cohush.*

Take of Black cohush, the root, (*macro. race.*) - - - - - 3℥  
 Proof spirits, or wine, - - - - - 1 quart.

Let it stand a few days.

*Dose.*—Half a wineglassful three or four times a day.

*Use.*—Useful in obstinate coughs, rheumatism, and impurity of the blood.

*Tincture of Foxglove.*

Take of Foxglove, ( <i>digitalis purpurea</i> ,)	-	-	-	1℥
Proof spirits,	-	-	-	1 pint.

Digest one week, and strain.

*Dose.*—From 15 to 20 drops, to be given three or four times a day, in parsley tea.

*Use.*—Excellent in inflammatory diseases. It lessens the pulse, by diminishing arterial excitement, and thereby prevents the necessity of blood-letting. It is attended with an excellent effect in pneumonia, or inflammation of the lungs. It is also very valuable in hydrothorax, or dropsy of the chest.

*Sudorific Tincture, or Sudorific Drops.*

Take of Ipecac., ( <i>cal. ipecacuanha</i> ,)	-	-	-	2℥
Saffron, ( <i>crocus officinalis</i> ,)	-	-	-	2℥
Camphor, ( <i>laurus camphora</i> ,)	-	-	-	2℥
Virginia snake-root, ( <i>serp. virg.</i> ,)	-	-	-	2℥
Opium, ( <i>papaver somniferum</i> ,)	-	-	-	2℥
Holland gin, or Jamaica spirits,	-	-	-	3 qrts.

Let it stand two weeks, and filter.

*Dose.*—One teaspoonful, given in a tumbler of catnip tea, every hour, till it produces perspiration.

*Use.*—This medicine is probably unsurpassed in fulfilling the indications for which it is given, which is generally to produce free perspiration. One or two doses, aided by warm infusions, and bathing the feet, causes a copious perspiration. Hence, it is useful in a variety of diseases. In fever, inflammation, &c., I know of no medicine so certain in its operation.

*Wine Tincture.*

Take of Peruvian bark, ( <i>cinchona offi.</i> ,)	-	-	-	2℥
Wild cherry-tree bark, ( <i>prunus virg.</i> ,)	-	-	-	1℥
Cinnamon,	-	-	-	1℥
Cloves,	-	-	-	1℥
Nutmegs,	-	-	-	1℥
Sulphur,	-	-	-	1℥
Wine,	-	-	-	2 qrts.

Let it stand a while.

*Dose.*—A wineglassful every two or three hours.

*Use.*—This mixture we have found almost an infallible cure for intermittent fever, or fever and ague. It removes it when all other means fail.

## CHAPTER XXVII.

## ESSENCES.

ESSENCES are made by adding alcohol to the essential oils, in proportion of one ounce of oil to sixteen ounces of alcohol. They are useful externally, to relieve pain, and used with advantage internally, for many complaints.

*Essence of Peppermint.*

Take of Oil of peppermint, - - - - - 1℥  
Alcohol, - - - - - 1 pint. Mix.

*Dose.*—A teaspoonful.

*Use.*—Useful in pain of the breast, cramp, sickness of the stomach, &c.

*Essence of Hemlock.*

Made in the same manner.

*Dose.*—Twenty-five or thirty drops, on sugar, or in tea.

*Use.*—Useful in rheumatism, and other affections; also for sprains, &c.

*Essence of Sassafras.*

Made in the same manner.

*Use.*—It is useful in gout and rheumatism, pain in the breast, lumbago, sciatica, contusions, &c.

The other essences are made in the same manner, and their virtues are the same as the oils from which they are made.

## CHAPTER XXVIII.

## TROCHES, OR SUPPOSITORIES.

THESE are solid remedies, of the conical form, intended to be introduced into the rectum, and to remain there for a certain length of time, to act as stimulants and discutients.

*Troches.*

Take of Aloes, pulverized, - - - - -	13
Gum myrrh, pulverized, - - - - -	3
Castile soap, shavings, - - - - -	3
Sugar lead, . - - - -	3
Oxide of copper, - - - - -	3
Vegetable caustic, - - - - -	3

Pulverize, and add two quarts molasses; put the whole in an iron vessel, and simmer until, upon trial, the mass becomes sufficiently hard to form into small troches, about the size convenient for introduction per anus.

One or two introduced up the rectum daily, is excellent for the piles.

## CHAPTER XXIX.

## WASHES, OR LOTIONS.

WASHES, or lotions, are certain liquids, in which are suspended medicinal agents, and designed principally for external use.

*Ophthalmic, or Cooling Wash.*

Take of Borax, ( <i>sub-boras sodæ</i> ), pulv. - - - - -	13
Rain, or spring water, - - - - -	1 quart.

Let it stand twelve hours.

*Use.*—This forms a very cooling and useful wash, for all kinds of inflammation, particularly the eyes; also, sore and inflamed nipples, canker, or sore mouth, and throat. It may be applied freely, and often.

*Refrigerant, or Cooling Lotion, or Wash.*

Take of Sugar of lead, ( <i>acetate of lead</i> ), - - - - -	13
Rain water, - - - - -	$\frac{1}{2}$ pint. Mix.

*Use.*—This wash is cooling, or refrigerant, and serviceable in inflammation, particularly erysipelatous.

*Yellow Wash.*

Take of Borax water, - - - - - 1 pint.  
 Muriate of mercury, - - - - - ʒ. Mix.

*Use.*—This wash has been occasionally used as a mild and cleansing caustic, in the treatment of venereal and indolent ulcers.

*Saline Wash.*

Take of Fine salt, - - - - - ʒ  
 Spirits, - - - - -  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint.  
 Vinegar, - - - - -  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint.  
 Rain water, - - - - -  $\frac{1}{2}$  pint.

Or equal parts. Mix.

*Use.*—This makes a good refrigerant, or cooling wash, for many kinds of inflammations. We are in the habit of prescribing it, particularly in inflammation of the brain, dropsy of the head, &c. Sometimes it is applied tepid, at other times cool; but seldom cold, except in very urgent cases.

*Astringent Wash.*

Take of Dried bark of large hemlock,  
 Upland sumac-root bark,  
 Witch-hazel bark,  
 White-oak bark;

Equal parts. Make a strong decoction.

*Use.*—This is useful to inject in fluor albus, to wash the parts in prolapsus ani, and utero, or falling of the bowel and womb.

## CHAPTER XXX.

## MIXTURES.

**MIXTURES** are a combinations of medicines in a liquid form, or when substances are diffused through liquids by means of mucilage, or syrup.

*White Liquid, or Saline Physic.*

Take of Epsom salts,	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2℥
Hot water,	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2℥
Nitrous acid,	-	-	-	-	-	-	-	2℥ Mix.

*Dose.*—A tablespoonful in a gill of water, until it purges; a tumbler of tea, to be taken after each dose.

*Use.*—The above is similar to a formula, invented by Dr. Johnson, of Dublin, as a substitute for mercury; and given to Lorenzo Dow, and since called, “Dow’s Family Physic.” In some cases it is useful in indigestion, liver complaint, fever, dysentery, bilious colic, &c.

It must never be given, except it be well diluted.

*Anticholeric and Antispasmodic Mixture.*

Take of Camphor mixture, ( <i>spirits of camphor</i> ),	-	-	-	-	-	4℥
Essence of peppermint,	-	-	-	-	-	4℥
Tincture capsicum,	-	-	-	-	-	1℥
Syrup of ginger,	-	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥ Mix.

*Dose.*—One tablespoonful, every quarter, half, or one and two hours, according to the urgency of the symptoms.

*Use.*—This mixture is useful in the malignant, or spasmodic cholera, cramp of the stomach, fits, &c.

*Nervous Mixture.*

Take of Mixture, or liquid, carbonate of ammonia,	-	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Mint water, distilled,	-	-	-	-	-	$1\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Compound tincture cardamon,	-	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥ Mix.

*Dose.*—Two tablespoonfuls, three times a day.

*Use.*—Useful in fainting, hysterics, debility, and all nervous cases.

*Neutralizing Mixture, Neutralizing Cordial, or Physic.*

Take of Rhubarb, pulv.	-	-	-	-	-	-	2℥
Sal æratus, pulv.,	-	-	-	-	-	-	2℥
Peppermint plant, pulv.,	-	-	-	-	-	-	2℥

Add half a pint of boiling water; sweeten with loaf sugar, and add a tablespoonful of brandy.

*Dose.*—One or two tablespoonfuls, every quarter, half, or one or two hours, according to symptoms.

*Use.*—This is one of the most valuable preparations known, for cholera morbus, cholera infantum, or summer complaint of children, diarrhœa, dysentery, &c. Its operation and action appear to be a specific, or almost infallible. It is very similar, in its effects, to the neutralizing cordial; (see cordial;) the form only differs.



CHAPTER XXXI.

THE following formulas were handed to me by Dr. Lobstein, for insertion in this work, and which I have not had time to translate.

1. *Hooping-cough.*

Take of mosch. opt.,	-	-	-	-	-	-	6 gr.
Sacchar. alb.,	-	-	-	-	-	-	1℥
Pulv. gum arab.,	-	-	-	-	-	-	℥3
Add Aq. foenicul,	-	-	-	-	-	-	℥3
Syr. althæa,	-	-	-	-	-	-	3℥ Mix.

*Dose.*—A teaspoonful every two hours.

2. *For the same.*

Take of Pulv. liquor.,	-	-	-	-	-	-	℥3
Pulv. rad. belladona,	-	-	-	-	-	-	1℥ Mix.

Divide into 96 equal parts, that each powder contain a quarter of a grain of belladona.

*Dose.*—One powder in the morning, and one in the evening, for children under one year; three powders for children under two years; four powders for children between three and four years; six powders for children from four to six years old.

3. *The same.*

My friend, the celebrated Professor Loebenstein Loebel, late Professor of Medicine at Jena, has recommended the following powder :

Take of Pulv. rad. valerian,	. . . . .	3 gr.
Extract pulsatillæ nigricant,	. . . . .	$\frac{1}{8}$ gr.
Sacchar. alb.,	. . . . .	6 gr.

M. f. pulv. disp. tal. dos. vi.

*Dose.*—Three powders a day, for children from eight to twelve years old.

I have employed these powders the same in two cases, with great success ; after seven or eight days, by continuing these powders, the symptoms of the disease have disappeared.

4. *Incontinentia Urinæ.*

May-apple root, pulverized.

5. *Diarrhæa Urinæ.*

Take of Lact. sulph.,	. . . . .	23
Aq. fœnicul,	. . . . .	33
Aq. cinnamon,	. . . . .	13
Syr. papav. alb.,	. . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$ 3 Mix.

*Dose.*—A teaspoonful every hour.

6. *Epilepsia—Fits.*

Take of Essentia valerian,	. . . . .	13
Essentia castor,	. . . . .	13

Eight days, three times a day, a teaspoonful ; eight days, twice a day, a teaspoonful ; and after, continuing one teaspoonful a day.

7. *Gravel.*

Take of Pulv. fol. uvæ ursi,	. . . . .	23
Sapo medicinal,	. . . . .	23
Syr. capillor, q. s.		

F. pill, No. 72.

Every day, two, three, to four, half an hour before dinner.

When, after a few days, the patient should find his stomach fatigued, he shall take the following pills :

8.

Take of Pulv. fol. uvæ ursi,	. . . . .	13
Extract. rhei,	. . . . .	13
Sapo medicinal,	. . . . .	13
Syr. capillor, q. s.		

F. pill, No. 24.

To be taken like the first pills.

9. *Fever and Ague.*

Take of Pulv. rad. gentian,	. . . . .	23
Pulv. conchæ præparat.,	. . . . .	13
Ol. fœnicul,	. . . . .	2 gutt.
M. f. pulv.		

10. *Hooping-cough, and Nervous Catarrh.*

Take of Sacchar. alb.,	. . . . .	13
Pulv. rad. belladon.,	. . . . .	3 gr.
M. f. pulv. divid. in xjj. part. aeq.		
One powder a day.		

11. *Rheumatismus.*

Vinum colchicum.

12. *Powder to re-establish the Milk.*

Take of Fabar. tostæ cacao,	. . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$ ʒ
Pulv. sem. anisi,	. . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$ ʒ
Pulv. sem. fœnicul,	. . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$ ʒ
M. f. pulv.		
5—6 teaspoonfuls a day.		

13. *Piles.*

Take of Sal. amar.,	. . . . .	63
Pulv. nitr. potass.,	. . . . .	23
Flor. sulph.,	. . . . .	23
Pulv. stipitædulcamar.,	. . . . .	23
M. f. pulv. divide in xjj. part. aeq.		
3 powders a day.		

14. *Impotentia.*

Take of Limatur. martis, . . . . .	1℥
Pulv. cinnamon, . . . . .	2℥
Ol. cinnamon, . . . . .	10 gutt.
Extract gentian, . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥

F. pil. gr. ij.

Consperg. pulv. cinnamon.

8 pills three times a day, and the following mixture for frictions on the scrotum :

## 15.

Take of Ol. anthos., . . . . .	15 gutt.
Ol. juniper. . . . .	15 gutt.
Ol. lavendul. . . . .	15 gutt.
Alcohol vini, . . . . .	℥℥
Liq. ammon. caustic., . . . . .	2℥
Aq. rosar., . . . . .	3℥

16. *Cardialgia.*

Take of Pulv. quassiæ, . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Pulv. rhei, . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Magnes. calcinat., . . . . .	℥

M. f. pulv. tal. dos. xij.

3 powders a day.

17. *Rheumatismus.*

Take of Gum guaiac, . . . . .	℥
Gum camphor, . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$ ℥
Spir. of wine, . . . . .	℥℥
Laudanum, . . . . .	℥

Mix these together; let them macerate for 12 hours, and give from 30 to 50 drops three times a day, in a tablespoonful of molasses.

18. *For a Cough, and Pain in the Breast.*

Take of Gum guaiac, . . . . .	℥
Gum camphor, . . . . .	℥
Castile soap, . . . . .	12 gr.
Laudanum, . . . . .	20 gutt.
Spir. of wine, . . . . .	℥
Bals. peruv., . . . . .	12 gutt.

Mix all together.

15 drops three times a day, on a piece of white sugar.

19. *Asthma.*

Take of Pulv. cicut., . . . . .	13
Flor. sulph., . . . . .	53
Extr. liquir., . . . . .	63

M. f. pulv.

A teaspoonful three times a day.

20. *Hæmoptysis.*

Take of Conserv. rosar. rubr., . . . . .	43
Pulv. nitr. potass., . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$ 3

M. f. electuar.

A teaspoonful every two hours.

21. *For the Stomach—Dyspepsia.*

Take of Flaved. cort. aurant. siccor., . . . . .	23
Flaved. cort. citri siccor., . . . . .	23
Cinnamom acut., . . . . .	23
Nucis moschatæ, . . . . .	13
Cardamom minor., . . . . .	13
Caryophill. aromat., . . . . .	$\frac{1}{2}$ 9
Sacchar. alb., . . . . .	13

M. f. pulv.

22. *Atrophia.*

Take of Tinctur. cort. aurant., . . . . .	13
Terra ponderos. salit., . . . . .	13

35 to 40 drops, twice a day; and frictions on the belly, with linim. volatile.

23. *Quinsy.*

Take of Spirit. minderer., . . . . .	13
Essentia pimpinell. alb., . . . . .	13

M.

12 drops, on a piece of white sugar, three or four times a day.

24. *Pleuritis.*

Take of	Sal. ammon. depur.,	.	.	.	.	.	.	13
	Succ. liquirit.	.	.	.	.	.	.	13
	Solv. in aq. fontan.,	.	.	.	.	.	.	43
Add	Vin. antimon.,	.	.	.	.	.	.	13
	Oxymel scillitic.,	.	.	.	.	.	.	$\frac{1}{2}$ 3

A tablespoonful every hour.

25. *Hæmorrhagia Uteri.*

When alum, china, and other remedies are employed without success, you may employ the following mixture :

Take of	Extract. lign. campech.,	.	.	.	.	.	.	23
	Saless. tartar.,	.	.	.	.	.	.	13
	Syr. rub. idaci,	.	.	.	.	.	.	63

M.

A tablespoonful every hour.

26. *Anasarca, and Dropsy in the Chest.*

Take of	Pulv. digit. purpur.,	.	.	.	.	.	.	10 gr.
	Pulv. scillæ maritim.,	.	.	.	.	.	.	29
	Pulv. nitr. potass.,	.	.	.	.	.	.	13

Divide in xjj. part. aeq.  
3 to 4 powders a day.

27. *Chronic Diarrhæa.*

Take of	Lapid. cancror.,	.	.	.	.	.	.	$\frac{1}{2}$ 3
	Pulv. rad. columbo,	.	.	.	.	.	.	23
	Pulv. op. puriss.,	.	.	.	.	.	.	5 to 8 gr.

M. f. pulv.

A teaspoonful every two hours.

28. *Gout.*

Take of	Extr. gentian rubr.,	.	.	.	.	.	.	$\frac{1}{2}$ to 23
	Viitriol alb.	.	.	.	.	.	.	$1\frac{1}{2}$ to 23

F. pil. 2 gr.

Obduc. fol. argent.

Early in the morning, two; in the afternoon, three; and in the evening, three pills.

In a few days after taking these pills, you will observe a great sediment in the urine; in a few days after, let the patient take three pills in the morning, four in the afternoon, and four in the evening.

29. *Hypochondria.*

Take of	Extr. taraxaci,	-	-	-	-	-	-	13
	Extr. cichorei,	-	-	-	-	-	-	13
	Extr. quassiæ,	-	-	-	-	-	-	13
	Solv. in aq. chamom.,	-	-	-	-	-	-	33
	Aq. fœnicul.,	-	-	-	-	-	-	33
Add	Fell. tauri exsicc.,	-	-	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ 3
	Tart. solub.,	-	-	-	-	-	-	$\frac{1}{2}$ 3
	Syr. cinnamom,	-	-	-	-	-	-	13

M.

A tablespoonful early in the morning, in the afternoon, and in the evening.

30. *Fluor Albus.*

A decoction of hazelnuts.



# INDEX TO VOLUME III.

	Page		Page
Antispasmodics, . . . . .	8	Balsam of tolu, . . . . .	172
Astringents, . . . . .	8	Bitter-root, . . . . .	184
Antacids, . . . . .	9	Balm, common, . . . . .	192
Anthelmintics, . . . . .	9	Beth-root, . . . . .	196
Alteratives, . . . . .	10	Broomrake, . . . . .	199
Asclepias, tuberosa, . . . . .	23	Beech-drops, . . . . .	199
Anthemis nobilis, . . . . .	25	Borax, . . . . .	210
Archangel, . . . . .	28	Bicarbonate of potass, . . . . .	209
Angelica, . . . . .	23	Bicarbonas potassæ, . . . . .	209
Arctium lappa, . . . . .	31	Classes of medicines, . . . . .	8
Asarabacca, . . . . .	32	Cathartics, . . . . .	8
Asarum, Canadense, . . . . .	32	Caustics, . . . . .	9
Atropa belladonna, . . . . .	33	Classification of articles, . . . . .	10
Anethum fœniculum, . . . . .	34	Camomile, . . . . .	25
Allium sativum, . . . . .	35	Colts-foot, . . . . .	32
Amomum zingiber, . . . . .	36	Copaiba, . . . . .	52
Arum tryphillum, . . . . .	38	Copaifera officinalis, . . . . .	52
American ipecac, . . . . .	39	Cayenne pepper, . . . . .	54
Apocynum cannabinum, . . . . .	39	Capsicum annum, . . . . .	54
Aspidium filix mas, . . . . .	40	Cicuta, . . . . .	55
Althæa officinalis, . . . . .	42	Conium maculatum, . . . . .	55
Almond, . . . . .	43	Colocynth, . . . . .	57
Amygdalus communis, . . . . .	43	Celandine, . . . . .	58
Apium petroselinum, . . . . .	44	Chelidonium magus, . . . . .	58
Aletris farinosa, . . . . .	45	Coptis trifolia, . . . . .	64
Aralia racemosa, . . . . .	46	Callicoca ipecacuanha, . . . . .	65
Asclepias syriaca, . . . . .	47	Convolvulus jalapa, . . . . .	68
Aristolochia serpentaria, . . . . .	48	Cinchona officinalis, . . . . .	71
Asafœtida, . . . . .	90	Cornus florida, . . . . .	74
Alder, black, . . . . .	136	sericea, . . . . .	76
Aniseed, . . . . .	137	Convolaria multiflora, . . . . .	79
Artemisia absinthium, . . . . .	197	Crocus sativus, . . . . .	80
American colombo, . . . . .	199	Cypripedium pubescens, . . . . .	81
Acidum sulphuricum, . . . . .	205	Camphor, . . . . .	82
Æther sulphuricus, . . . . .	205	Cloves, . . . . .	89
Blisters, . . . . .	9	Cranesbill, . . . . .	95
Botanical terms, . . . . .	11	Cedar, . . . . .	110
Black snake-root, . . . . .	29	Cohush, blue, . . . . .	117
Black cohush, . . . . .	29	Cinnamon, . . . . .	118
Burdock, . . . . .	31	Colombo, . . . . .	127
Barberry, . . . . .	49	Catnip, . . . . .	131
Berberis vulgaris, . . . . .	49	Canada balsam, . . . . .	138
Black birch, . . . . .	50	Castor bean, . . . . .	154
Betula lenta, . . . . .	50	Comfrey, . . . . .	165
Baptisia tinctoria, . . . . .	51	Chenopodium anthelminticum, . . . . .	199
Boneset, . . . . .	88	Corsican worm-weed, . . . . .	200
Butternut, . . . . .	107	Cowhage, . . . . .	200
Bugle, . . . . .	114	Cicuta maculata, . . . . .	200
Bayberry, . . . . .	126	Crystallinum, . . . . .	201
Blackberry, . . . . .	153	Cleavers, . . . . .	202
Bittersweet, . . . . .	160	Centaurium, . . . . .	203
Blood-root, . . . . .	164	Centaurium minor, . . . . .	203

	Page		Page
Caraway, . . . . .	203	Glechoma hederacea, . . . . .	202
Carum carui, . . . . .	203	Golden rod, . . . . .	202
Caustic, potassæ, . . . . .	208	Gallium aparine, . . . . .	202
Causticus lapis, . . . . .	208	Green vitriol, . . . . .	206
Cream of tartar, . . . . .	208		
Calx, . . . . .	205	Hemlock, . . . . .	55
Cantharides, . . . . .	207	Horse radish, . . . . .	63
Copperas, . . . . .	206	Hellebore, . . . . .	98
Castile soap, . . . . .	209	Helleborus niger, . . . . .	98
		Hydrastis canadensis, . . . . .	99
Diuretics, . . . . .	9	Hyssop, . . . . .	101
Diaphoretics, . . . . .	9	Hyssopus officinalis, . . . . .	101
Demulcents, . . . . .	9	Hops, . . . . .	102
Diluents, . . . . .	10	Humulus lupulus, . . . . .	102
Deadly nightshade, . . . . .	33	Hamamelis virginica, . . . . .	103
Dogwood, . . . . .	74	Hepatica triloba, . . . . .	105
Daucus carota, . . . . .	83	Hoarhound, . . . . .	129
Digitalis purpurea, . . . . .	84	Hemlock, . . . . .	142
Datura stramonium, . . . . .	86	Hedeoma pulegioides, . . . . .	187
Dwarf elder, . . . . .	166	Henbane, . . . . .	190
Devil's bit, . . . . .	177	Hyoscyamus niger, . . . . .	190
Dolichos pruriens, . . . . .	200	Hypericum perforatum, . . . . .	200
		Horse-mint, . . . . .	204
Emetics, . . . . .	8		
Emmenagogues, . . . . .	9	Introductory remarks, . . . . .	3
Expectorants, . . . . .	9	Indian turnip, . . . . .	38
Errhines, . . . . .	9	hemp, . . . . .	39
Epispastics, . . . . .	9	physic, . . . . .	39
Escharotics, . . . . .	9	Ipecacuanha, . . . . .	65
Emollients, . . . . .	10	Inula helenium, . . . . .	109
Ergot, . . . . .	59	Ictodes fœtida, . . . . .	113
Eupatorium perfoliatum, . . . . .	88	Indian tobacco, . . . . .	120
Elecampane, . . . . .	109	Iceland moss, . . . . .	201
Euphorbia ipecacuanha, . . . . .	173	Ice plant, . . . . .	201
Elm, slippery, . . . . .	175		
Elder, common, . . . . .	188	Jalap, . . . . .	68
		Juglans cinerea, . . . . .	107
Flux-root, . . . . .	23	Juniper, . . . . .	108
Fennel, . . . . .	34	Juniperus communis, . . . . .	108
Foxglove, . . . . .	84	virginiana, . . . . .	110
Flowering ash, . . . . .	191	sabina, . . . . .	111
Fraxinus ornus, . . . . .	191	Jerusalem oak, . . . . .	199
Fucus helminthochorotos, . . . . .	200		
Five-finger, . . . . .	202	Kalmia latifolia, . . . . .	199
Feverfew, . . . . .	202		
		Lithontriptics, . . . . .	9
Glossary, . . . . .	11	Lemon, . . . . .	70
Garlic, . . . . .	35	Ladies' slipper, . . . . .	81
Ginger, . . . . .	36	Laurus camphora, . . . . .	82
Golden thread, . . . . .	64	Liquorice, . . . . .	96
Green ozier, . . . . .	76	Liverwort, . . . . .	105
Gamboge, . . . . .	92	Logwood, . . . . .	106
Gentian, . . . . .	93	Lycopus virginicus, . . . . .	114
Gentiana lutea, . . . . .	93	Liriodendron tulipifera, . . . . .	115
Guaiaicum, . . . . .	94	Lobelia, . . . . .	120
Geranium maculatum, . . . . .	95	Laurus sassafras, . . . . .	123
Golden seal, . . . . .	99	Lilium candidum, . . . . .	124
Gum Arabic, . . . . .	123	Lavender, . . . . .	125
Garden nightshade, . . . . .	168	Lavendula spica, . . . . .	125
Gaulthera procumbens, . . . . .	199	Liatris, . . . . .	177
repens, . . . . .	201	Leonurus cardica, . . . . .	199
Ground ivy, . . . . .	202	Laurel, . . . . .	199

	Page		Page
Lungwort, . . . . .	199	Podophyllum peltatum, . . . . .	143
Lichen Icelandicus, . . . . .	201	Poppy, white, . . . . .	145
Lime, . . . . .	205	Papaver somniferum, . . . . .	145
Lead, red, . . . . .	207	Plantain, . . . . .	147
Myrrh, . . . . .	37	Plantago major, . . . . .	147
Male fern, . . . . .	40	Poke, . . . . .	148
Marshmallows, . . . . .	42	Phytolacca decandria, . . . . .	148
Milkweed, . . . . .	47	Polygalla senega, . . . . .	149
Myrica cerifera, . . . . .	126	Peony, . . . . .	151
Marrubium vulgare, . . . . .	129	Pœonia officinalis, . . . . .	151
Mentha piperita, . . . . .	130	Pink, . . . . .	164
viridis, . . . . .	132	Phellandrium aquaticum, . . . . .	161
Mandrake, . . . . .	143	Prickley ash, . . . . .	185
May apple, . . . . .	143	Pennyroyal, . . . . .	187
Mustard, . . . . .	167	Polypod, common, . . . . .	193
Myristica moschata, . . . . .	179	Polypodium vulgare, . . . . .	193
Melissa officinalis, . . . . .	192	Partridge-berry, . . . . .	199
Mullen, . . . . .	194	Palentilla reptans, . . . . .	202
Mother-wort, . . . . .	199	Potassæ supertartras, . . . . .	208
Maiden hair, . . . . .	199	bicarbonas, . . . . .	209
Melon, water, . . . . .	199	Plumbi superacetas, . . . . .	208
Morus rubra, . . . . .	199	oxidum rubrum, . . . . .	207
Millefolium, . . . . .	201	Potassæ nitras, . . . . .	207
Matricaria vulgaris, . . . . .	202	Quercus alba, . . . . .	152
Monardus punctana, . . . . .	204	Rubefaciens, . . . . .	9
Muriate of mercury, . . . . .	206	Refrigerants, . . . . .	9
Murias hydrargyri, . . . . .	206	Rattlesnake-root, . . . . .	29
Melœ vesicatoria, . . . . .	207	Red pepper, . . . . .	54
Murias ammoniæ, . . . . .	206	Rose willow, . . . . .	76
Narcotics, . . . . .	8	Rattlesnake-root, . . . . .	149
Nepeta cataria, . . . . .	131	Rubus villosus, . . . . .	153
Nicotiana tabacum, . . . . .	133	Rjcinis communis, . . . . .	154
Nutmeg, . . . . .	179	Rumex crispus, . . . . .	156
Nitrate of potash, . . . . .	207	Rhubarb, . . . . .	157
Nitras potassæ, . . . . .	207	Rheum palmatum, . . . . .	157
Native sulphur, . . . . .	212	Rhus typhinum, . . . . .	159
Order or arrangement, . . . . .	3	Raspberry, . . . . .	176
Orange, . . . . .	69	Rose, red, . . . . .	189
Origanum majorana, . . . . .	134	Rosa gallica, . . . . .	189
Olive, . . . . .	135	Red mulberry, . . . . .	199
Origanum vulgare, . . . . .	199	Season for collecting vegetable	
Orobanche Americana, . . . . .	199	medicines, . . . . .	3
Preparation, or comp. of articles, . . . . .	4	Sudorifics, . . . . .	9
Proximate principles of vegetables, . . . . .	4	Silagogues, . . . . .	9
Purgatives, . . . . .	8	Squaw-root, . . . . .	29
Pleurisy-root, . . . . .	23	Star grass, . . . . .	45
Parsley, . . . . .	44	Spikenard, . . . . .	46
Peruvian bark, . . . . .	71	Silk-weed, . . . . .	47
Poplar, white, . . . . .	115	Spurred rye, . . . . .	59
Pappoose-root, . . . . .	117	Secale cornutum, . . . . .	59
Peppermint, . . . . .	130	Scammony, . . . . .	77
Prinos, verticillatus, . . . . .	136	Senna, . . . . .	78
Pimpinella anisum, . . . . .	137	Solomon's seal, . . . . .	79
Pinus balsamea, . . . . .	138	Saffron, . . . . .	80
Pine, . . . . .	140	Savin, . . . . .	111
Pinus pallustris, . . . . .	140	Skunk cabbage, . . . . .	113
Prunus virginiana, . . . . .	141	Sassafras, . . . . .	123
Pinus canadensis, . . . . .	142	Spearmint, . . . . .	132
		Seneca snake-root, . . . . .	149

	Page		Page
Sumach, . . . . .	159	Tonics, . . . . .	3
Solanum dulcamara, . . . . .	160	Thorn apple, . . . . .	86
Sanguinaria canadensis, . . . . .	161	Tobacco, . . . . .	133
Spigelia marilandica, . . . . .	164	Thyme, . . . . .	134
Symphytum officinale, . . . . .	165	Tansy, . . . . .	173
Sambucus ebulus, . . . . .	166	Tanacetum vulgare, . . . . .	173
Sinapis alba, . . . . .	167	Trillium latifolium, . . . . .	196
Solanum nigrum, . . . . .	168	Trasera verticellata, . . . . .	199
Sarsaparilla, . . . . .	170		
Sage, . . . . .	171	Unicorn-root, . . . . .	45
Spurge, . . . . .	173	Ulmus fulva, . . . . .	175
Slippery-elm, . . . . .	175		
Speedwell, Virginia, . . . . .	180	Vegetable medicines, season for	
Sambucus niger, . . . . .	188	collecting, . . . . .	3
Scullcap, . . . . .	195	Vegetables, proximate principles of, . . . . .	4
Scutellaria lateriflora, . . . . .	195	Virginia snake-root, . . . . .	48
Stinking nettle, . . . . .	199	speedwell, . . . . .	180
Septamnium virginianum, . . . . .	199	Veronica virginica, . . . . .	180
St. John's-wort, . . . . .	200	Verbascum thapsus, . . . . .	194
Strong-scented lettuce, . . . . .	200	Vervine, . . . . .	201
Solidago virgaurea, . . . . .	202	Verbena hastata, . . . . .	201
Striped blood-wort, . . . . .	203	Vaccinum, . . . . .	204
Sulphuric acid, . . . . .	205		
Sulphuric æther, . . . . .	205	Wild camomile, . . . . .	26
Saltpetre, . . . . .	207	ginger, . . . . .	32
Sal ammoniac, . . . . .	206	indigo, . . . . .	51
Spanish flies, . . . . .	207	carrot, . . . . .	83
Sugar of lead, . . . . .	208	Witch hazel, . . . . .	103
Supertartrate of potash, . . . . .	208	White lily, . . . . .	124
Sal æratus, . . . . .	209	Wild cherry, . . . . .	141
Soap, Castile, . . . . .	209	White oak, . . . . .	152
Sub-borate of soda, . . . . .	210	Water fennel, . . . . .	181
Sulphate of quinine, . . . . .	210	Wormwood, . . . . .	197
Sulphur, flour of, . . . . .	210	Wild marjoram, . . . . .	199
Sulphur sublimatum, . . . . .	210	Water hemlock, . . . . .	200
Salts of hartshorn, . . . . .	211	Winter green, . . . . .	201
Sub-carbonate of ammonia, . . . . .	211	Whortleberry, . . . . .	204
Sulphate of zinc, . . . . .	211	White vitriol, . . . . .	211
Sulphur vivum, . . . . .	212		
Sapo venetiensis, . . . . .	209	Yellow dock, . . . . .	156
Sulphas ferri, . . . . .	206	Yarrow, . . . . .	201
Sulphas quinæ, . . . . .	210		

## PHARMACY.

	Page		Page
Table of doses, . . . . .	215	Antidysenteric cordials, . . . . .	220
Apothecaries' weight, . . . . .	215	<i>Caustics, or escharotics,</i> . . . . .	221
Measure of liquids, . . . . .	216	Mineral caustic, . . . . .	221
<i>Balsams,</i> . . . . .	218	Mild mineral caustic, . . . . .	221
Pulmonary balsams, . . . . .	218	Vegetable caustic, . . . . .	221
Balsam of honey, . . . . .	218	Extract of blood-root, . . . . .	221
<i>Bitters,</i> . . . . .	219	White vitriol, . . . . .	221
Compound bitters, . . . . .	219	<i>Drops,</i> . . . . .	222
Wine bitters, . . . . .	219	Diuretic drops, . . . . .	222
<i>Cordials,</i> . . . . .	220	Black drop, . . . . .	222
Restorative cordial, . . . . .	220	Cough drops, . . . . .	223
Neutralizing cordial, . . . . .	220	Tar drops, . . . . .	223

	Page		Page
Whitwith's drops, . . . . .	223	Stimulating liquid, . . . . .	239
Carminative drops, . . . . .	223	<i>Mucilages</i> , . . . . .	239
Toothache drops, . . . . .	224	Mucilage of gum arabic, . . . . .	239
<i>Decoctions</i> , . . . . .	224	elm-bark, . . . . .	240
Diuretic decoction, . . . . .	224	<i>Oils</i> , . . . . .	240
Rheumatic decoction, . . . . .	224	Rheumatic oil, . . . . .	240
Urinary decoction, . . . . .	224	Oil of red pepper, . . . . .	240
Diaphoretic decoction, . . . . .	225	<i>Ointments</i> , . . . . .	241
Decoction of cohush, . . . . .	225	Stramonium ointment, . . . . .	241
<i>Extracts</i> , . . . . .	226	Venice turpentine ointment, . . . . .	241
Extract of blood-root, . . . . .	226	White ointment, . . . . .	241
gentian, . . . . .	226	Green ointment, . . . . .	242
jalap, . . . . .	226	Yellow ointment, . . . . .	242
poke, . . . . .	226	Discutient ointment, . . . . .	242
<i>Collyrium, or eye-waters</i> , . . . . .	227	Vegetable, or tetter ointment, . . . . .	243
Stimulating eye-water, . . . . .	227	Judkin's specific ointment, . . . . .	243
Spiritous eye-water, . . . . .	227	Itch ointment, . . . . .	243
Mucilaginous eye-water, . . . . .	227	Celandine ointment, . . . . .	243
Lobstein's eye-water, . . . . .	227	Ophthalmic ointment, . . . . .	244
Mineral eye-water, . . . . .	228	Marshmallow ointment, . . . . .	244
<i>Fomentations</i> , . . . . .	228	<i>Plasters</i> , . . . . .	245
Hop fomentation, . . . . .	228	Ferris' black plaster, . . . . .	245
Common do. . . . .	228	Cicuta plaster, . . . . .	245
Stimulating do. . . . .	228	Strengthening plaster, . . . . .	245
Poppy do. . . . .	228	Tobacco plaster, . . . . .	246
Ophthalmic do. . . . .	229	Blistering plaster, . . . . .	246
<i>Gargles</i> , . . . . .	230	Astringent plaster, . . . . .	246
Stimulating gargle, . . . . .	230	Adhesive & strengthening plaster, . . . . .	246
Astringent gargle, . . . . .	230	Common strengthening plaster, . . . . .	247
Antiphlogistic gargle, . . . . .	230	Bone's searchcloth plaster, . . . . .	247
<i>Infusions</i> , . . . . .	231	<i>Poultices</i> , . . . . .	247
Infusion of fox-glove, . . . . .	231	Linseed poultice, . . . . .	247
linseed, . . . . .	231	Carrot poultice, . . . . .	248
boneset, . . . . .	231	Mustard poultice, . . . . .	248
balm, . . . . .	231	Common poultice, . . . . .	248
elder, . . . . .	232	Alkaline poultice, . . . . .	248
elecampane, . . . . .	232	Yest poultice, . . . . .	249
fennel, . . . . .	232	Cat-tail poultice, . . . . .	249
flag-root, . . . . .	232	Indian turnip poultice, . . . . .	249
hyssop, . . . . .	233	Potato poultice, . . . . .	249
catnip, . . . . .	233	Cicuta poultice, . . . . .	249
spearmint, . . . . .	233	Ferris' poultice, . . . . .	249
tansy, . . . . .	233	Astringent poultice, . . . . .	249
pennyroyal, . . . . .	234	<i>Pills</i> , . . . . .	250
sassafras, . . . . .	234	Antidyspeptic pill, . . . . .	250
Virginia snake-root, . . . . .	234	Nervous, or hysteric pill, . . . . .	250
slippery-elm, . . . . .	234	Opium pill, . . . . .	250
Anthelmintic infusion, . . . . .	234	Cicuta pill, . . . . .	251
Compound infusion of senna, . . . . .	233	Hydragogue pill, . . . . .	251
<i>Injections, or clysters</i> , . . . . .	233	Red, or stimulating pill, . . . . .	251
Common injection, . . . . .	236	Bilious pill, . . . . .	251
Soap-suds injection, . . . . .	236	<i>Powders</i> , . . . . .	252
Tobacco injection, . . . . .	236	Snuff powder, . . . . .	252
Stimulating injection, . . . . .	236	Antibilious powder, . . . . .	252
<i>Liniments</i> , . . . . .	237	Emetic powder, . . . . .	253
Common liniment, . . . . .	237	Emmenagogue, black, or tonic powder, . . . . .	253
Opium and camphor liniment, . . . . .	237	Diaphoretic powder, . . . . .	254
Rheumatic liniment, . . . . .	237	Eupatorium powder, . . . . .	254
<i>Liquids</i> , . . . . .	238	Smith's cough powder, . . . . .	254
Rheumatic liquid, . . . . .	238	colic powder, . . . . .	254
Antipyrosis liquid, . . . . .	238	Fever powder, . . . . .	255
Mint liquid, or spirits of mint, . . . . .	238		

	Page		Page
Cephalic powder, . . . . .	255	<i>Essences,</i> . . . . .	269
Red, or styptic powder, . . . . .	255	Essence of peppermint, . . . . .	269
Hull's bilious physic, . . . . .	255	hemlock, . . . . .	269
Henry's cephalic snuff, . . . . .	255	sassafras, . . . . .	269
Compound powder of mandrake, . . . . .	256	<i>Troches, or suppositories,</i> . . . . .	270
<i>Salves,</i> . . . . .	256	Pile troches, . . . . .	270
Black salve, or plaster, . . . . .	256	<i>Washes,</i> . . . . .	270
Green salve, . . . . .	257	Ophthalmic wash, . . . . .	270
Yellow salve, . . . . .	257	Cooling, or refrigerant wash, . . . . .	270
<i>Syrups,</i> . . . . .	258	Yellow wash, . . . . .	271
Alterative syrup, . . . . .	258	Saline wash, . . . . .	271
Vegetable syrup, . . . . .	259	Astringent wash, . . . . .	271
Scrofulous syrup, . . . . .	259	<i>Mixtures,</i> . . . . .	272
Syrup of ginger, . . . . .	259	White liquid, or saline physic, . . . . .	272
white poppy, . . . . .	259	Anticholeric mixture, . . . . .	272
Antispasmodic syrup, . . . . .	260	Nervous mixture, . . . . .	272
Blackberry syrup, . . . . .	260	Neutralizing mixture, . . . . .	273
Hoarhound syrup, . . . . .	260	<i>Formulas, by Dr. Lobstein,</i> . . . . .	273
Syrup for the dysentery, . . . . .	261	1st, For the whooping-cough, . . . . .	273
Expectorant syrup, . . . . .	261	Ditto, do. . . . .	273
Cough syrup, . . . . .	261	Dr. Loebel's ditto, . . . . .	274
<i>Spirits,</i> . . . . .	262	For incontinence of urine, . . . . .	274
Compound spirits of lavender, . . . . .	265	diarrhœa urinæ, . . . . .	274
Spirits of mindererus, . . . . .	262	epilepsia, or fits, . . . . .	274
camphor, . . . . .	262	gravel, . . . . .	274
<i>Sinapisms,</i> . . . . .	263	ditto, . . . . .	275
Mustard sinapism, . . . . .	263	fever and ague, . . . . .	275
Garlic and onion sinapism, . . . . .	263	nervous cough, . . . . .	275
<i>Tinctures,</i> . . . . .	264	rheumatism, . . . . .	275
Hydragogue tincture, . . . . .	264	powder to re-establish milk, . . . . .	275
Botanical tincture, . . . . .	264	piles, . . . . .	275
Tincture of lobelia, . . . . .	264	impotentia, . . . . .	276
Anodyne tincture, . . . . .	265	ditto, . . . . .	276
Tincture of balsam tolu, . . . . .	265	cardialgia, . . . . .	276
castor, . . . . .	265	rheumatismus, . . . . .	276
gum myrrh, . . . . .	265	cough, and pain in the breast, . . . . .	276
cantharides, . . . . .	265	asthma, . . . . .	277
Compound tincture of senna, . . . . .	266	hæmoptysis, . . . . .	277
camphor, . . . . .	266	dyspepsia, . . . . .	277
opium, (laudanum,) . . . . .	266	atrophia, . . . . .	277
Gout and rheumatic tincture, . . . . .	266	quinsy, . . . . .	278
Tincture of stramonium, . . . . .	267	pleuritis, . . . . .	278
Expectorant tincture, . . . . .	267	hæmorrhagia uteri, . . . . .	278
Tincture of skunk cabbage, . . . . .	267	anasarca and hydrothorax, . . . . .	278
Golden tincture, . . . . .	267	chronic diarrhœa, . . . . .	278
Tincture of cohush, . . . . .	267	gout, . . . . .	278
foxglove, . . . . .	268	hypochondria, . . . . .	279
Sudorific tincture drops, . . . . .	268	fluor albus, . . . . .	279
Wine tincture, . . . . .	268		

## ERRATA.

I notice some typographical errors in this Work, but none very important; I deem it unnecessary, however, to point them out, and shall, therefore, leave it to the good sense of the Reader to correct them.

## ADVERTISEMENTS.

---

NEW-YORK

### REFORMED MEDICAL COLLEGE,

ELDRIDGE-STREET.

---

#### CIRCULAR.

THE happy effects of the botanical system of practice, more especially of late, employed in the cure of diseases, are such as entitle it to a high rank among modern improvements. The opinion long entertained in its favour by many of the judicious, a thorough experience has now demonstrated to be well founded; and with the number and variety of its salutary achievements, its reputation is increasing.

It must be evident to every discerning mind, that the present prevailing practice of medicine, which rejects this botanical aid, is at variance with our nature and our happiness.

MERCURY, the LANCET, and the KNIFE, are chiefly relied upon by physicians and surgeons of the present day, for the removal of almost all the diseases incident to the human body, notwithstanding the effects of these deleterious agents are evidently fatal to multitudes. Deeply impressed with these facts, and with a view of reforming the science and practice of medicine, an individual in this city, in the year 1827, procured a lot of ground, and erected a handsome and convenient edifice for an Institution, denominated the United States Infirmary, expressly for employing a reformed system of practice in the treatment of diseases: the remedial sources being chiefly derived from the productions of our own country. The course of treatment adopted by this Institution, was principally the result of nearly forty years' experience of a distinguished medical reformer; which course, we are happy to state, has been crowned with success, and proved to a demonstration that, without mercury, that boasted champion of the *materia medica*, or other poisonous drugs, diseases generally may be cured by those more safe and salutary means which the God of nature has so liberally scattered around us.

Animated by the past success, and with the hope of benefiting future generations, an irrepressible desire has been felt, that measures commensurate with the importance of the object should be taken to promulgate this valuable system of practice, and thereby improve and reform the noble and important science of medicine.

After reflecting for years on the most prudent and successful method of effecting so desirable an object, it has been deemed expedient to establish a Medical School, with competent teachers, where students may receive board and education, until they are fully qualified to practice in the various branches of the healing art, upon the reformed system. We are now happy to announce, that a building for such an Institution has been erected, and opened for the reception of students, who can commence at any period.

The building is large and commodious, situated in Eldridge-street, between Grand and Broome streets, adjoining the present United States Infirmary. It is in a healthy and retired part of the city, and has been completed at a great expense.

The following branches are taught by lectures, recitations, examinations, and suitable text books:—

1. ANATOMY.
2. SURGERY.
3. THEORY AND PRACTICE OF PHYSIC.
4. MIDWIFERY, AND DISEASES OF WOMEN AND CHILDREN.
5. MATERIA MEDICA, AND PRACTICAL BOTANY.
6. CHEMISTRY AND PHARMACY.

The benefits to be derived by an attendance at this Institution will, we trust, be duly appreciated by those who wish to acquire a correct knowledge of the healing art. Here the student will be taught all the modern practice which is deemed necessary, in addition to the botanical; and in consequence of his residing in the institution, and pursuing a systematic course of studies, combining each of those departments, he may acquire a knowledge of both in a short space of time, and at a very small expense, in comparison to that of other medical institutions.

There being an Infirmary connected with the Academy, the students will have the benefit of clinical practice, by which the experimental part of medicine will be acquired with the theory.

There will be no specified time to complete a course of study; but whenever a student is qualified to pass an examination, he will receive a diploma.

#### REQUISITIONS.

The qualifications for admission into the School will be, 1. A certificate of good moral character; 2. A good English education.

#### TERMS.

1. The price of qualifying a person for practice, is \$200. One half payable in advance, or at the time of entering the School; and the other half at the expiration or close of his studies, or before a diploma is granted. A deduction of \$25 will be made to those who pay the whole sum in advance.

2. Board (being an extra charge) is \$2.50 per week, payable weekly or quarterly.

3. Each student must supply himself with *books, bed, and bedding.*

A liberal allowance will be made to those in indigent circumstances.

¶ We have the pleasure to announce that our School is now fast filling up, and is in successful operation; and that there is an opening in every section of the United States for those educated in its principles and practice.

\* \* \* Those wishing further information, by addressing a letter, post paid, to the subscriber, will receive a publication, giving an account of the rise, progress, and present state of the above Institution.

W. BEACH.

*New-York Medical Institution, }  
April, 1830. }*

---

## MANUAL LABOUR SCHOOL OF MEDICINE.

---

FROM the success which has attended the Manual Labour Schools recently established to teach the ordinary branches of education, we have thought that it might further the cause of *medical reform*, to establish one or more Colleges expressly to educate indigent young men in the various branches of medicine, *free of charge*; the expenses to be defrayed by labour, in horticulture, agriculture, &c.

It has been shown that three hours *employment* each day only is sufficient to defray expenses of board and tuition, while sufficient time is afforded to acquire more information than is obtained in the same length of time at other Institutions.

Communications on this subject will be received from such as feel an interest in the subject.

## OHIO REFORMED MEDICAL COLLEGE.

---

THE public are respectfully informed, that an Institution is established, and in successful operation, in the city of New-York, denominated "The Reformed Medical College," under the jurisdiction of the Reformed Medical Society of the United States; that this Institution has arisen, from its own intrinsic merits, notwithstanding the opposition of illiberal and interested physicians, to an eminence which has exceeded the most sanguine expectations of its friends.

Animated by the flourishing state of this College, and feeling an ardent desire still further to disseminate the valuable system of practice therein taught, a second School of the same character was established in December, 1830, in the town of Worthington, denominated "The Ohio Reformed Medical College." This College was chartered by the state as a literary Institution; and subsequently, the board of trustees adopted the above as the medical branch of their Institution, where all the various branches of the healing art are taught on the reformed system. A number of young gentlemen have here commenced their studies, and numerous others have applied for admission. At this time there are about 40 students. Its locality presents the greatest advantages to facilitate researches in medical botany; the surrounding country abounding with a great variety of medical plants and vegetable productions.

It is situated near the centre of the state, on the Whetstone river, nine miles north of Columbus, on the northern turnpike, and is one of the most healthy and delightful villages in the western country. The ground attached to the College contains every variety of soil for a botanical garden. The necessity for an Institution of this kind, under the direction of competent professors, must be evident to all who have reflected on the subject of medical reform. Here a system of practice is taught, altogether superior to that taught in other Schools, or pursued by other physicians; the remedial agents being derived from the vegetable kingdom.

The efficacy of this practice has been proved, for more than half a century, combining the improvements of the most distinguished reformers of the present or any other age. Its superiority has been so repeatedly demonstrated, as to satisfy the most wavering and sceptical. It has been tested in every variety and form of disease; and its salutary effects witnessed where the mercurial or mineral treatment has been pursued without any beneficial effect, but to the great injury of the constitution.

The benefits to be derived by an attendance at this Institution will, we trust, be truly appreciated by those who wish to acquire a correct knowledge of the healing art. Here the student will be taught all the modern practice which is deemed necessary, in addition to the botanical; and in consequence of his residing near the Institution, and pursuing a systematic course of studies, combining each of the departments of medicine, he may acquire a knowledge of both in a short space of time, and at a very trifling expense, in comparison to that of other Medical Institutions.

The regular fall and winter course of lectures in this Institution will commence on the first Monday in October, and continue six months, or longer; during which time a full course of lectures on all the different departments of medical science will be delivered, with daily examinations, &c. 1st. On Anatomy and Physiology; 2d. *Materia Medica* and Pharmacy; 3d. Theory and Practice of *Physic* and Surgery; 4th. Midwifery; 5th. Chemistry; 6th. Theoretical and Practical Botany; 7th. Medical Jurisprudence, &c. &c. The spring and summer course will be more particularly appropriated to Botany, *Materia Medica*, Comparative Anatomy, and Clinical Practice, &c.

There being an Infirmary connected with the College, the students will have the benefit of clinical practice, by which the practical part of medicine will be acquired with the theory.

Every student, on graduating in Worthington College, will become a member of the Reformed Medical Society of the United States, from which he will receive a diploma, and reports of all the improvements of its different members, and be entitled to all its constitutional privileges and benefits.

There will be no specified time to complete a course of studies; but whenever a student is qualified to pass an examination, he will receive a diploma.

#### REQUISITIONS.

The qualifications requisite for admission into the School will be, 1st. A certificate of good moral character; 2d. A good English education.

#### TERMS.

The price for qualifying a person to practice and access to all the advantages of the Institution, will be \$150 in advance, or \$50 in advance, and \$125 at the close of his studies. Every advantage given and a liberal allowance made for those in indigent circumstances. Boarding may be had at \$1 per week, and books at the western city prices. The price of a diploma will be \$10. Those wishing further information, will please address a letter (post paid) to Col. G. H. Griswold, or to the undersigned, and it shall receive prompt attention.

THOMAS V. MORROW, *President.*

---

### PROSPECTUS

OF A NEW PUBLICATION,

ENTITLED, THE

### SYSTEM OF MEDICAL AND SURGICAL PRACTICE,

*As pursued at the United States Infirmary, and taught in the Reformed Medical Colleges in New-York, and Worthington, Ohio.*

BY W. BEACH, M. D.,

Founder of the Reformed Medical Colleges, and President of the Reformed Medical Society of the United States.

---

FROM a conviction and knowledge that the present practice of medicine exerts a baneful and pernicious effect upon the health and lives of mankind, Colleges and Infirmarys have been founded, and are in successful operation, expressly to introduce an improved system, or to accomplish a reformation in the science of medicine.

As an evidence of the success and prosperity of these Schools, we would remark, that we have now graduates in almost every state in the Union, who from time to time transmit to us statements of their unprecedented success in the cure of diseases. One of our physicians from the state of Ohio writes as follows: "We have had during this fall three hundred and twenty-five cases of various diseases, and we have lost but three out of all that number. Disinterested persons state that our success is unparalleled in history." All of which proves to a demonstration that, without mercury, that boasted champion of the materia medica, or other poisonous drugs, diseases generally may be cured by those safe and salutary means which the God of nature has so liberally scattered around us.

The system of practice taught is altogether superior to that taught in other Medical Schools, or pursued by other physicians; the remedial agents being principally derived from the vegetable kingdom. Its efficacy has been proved for more than half a century, combining the improvements of the most distinguished medical reformers of this or any other age. It has been tested in every variety or form of disease, and its salutary effects witnessed where the mercurial or mineral treatment had been pursued without the least effect, except great injury to the constitution. Its superiority has been so repeatedly demonstrated, as to satisfy the most waver-

ing and sceptical; and it is chiefly owing to this success, that we are indebted for the elevated character and reputation of our Reformed Medical Colleges.

Animated by such encouragement, and feeling an ardent desire still further to promulgate this valuable system, we have concluded, in compliance with our original design, with the repeated requests of physicians, and others, to publish a work on the practice of physic and surgery upon the reformed or botanical system; in which shall be disclosed the *principles and practice of medicine*, as taught and pursued at our Infirmarys and Colleges.

Hitherto, our constitution has bound every member under a heavy penalty, as well as in a moral point of view, not to divulge, reveal, or make known, any part of the formula of our practice, without the general approbation of the Society. This was deemed advisable, to prevent any injury which might arise from a premature or improper publication of it. We wished also still further to test and prove it, before it was laid before the world. This bond has since been rescinded by a unanimous vote of our members, and the FOUNDER of the Schools appointed and authorized to publish the present work.

They have been induced to issue it earlier than was at first contemplated, on account of the impositions already practised upon the community.

Patent medicines have been vended under the pretence that they are the same as those published at our Institutions.

A volume of considerable size, published in this city, has been sold at a great price, in consequence of its having been stated that the author was president of our Society; when, in reality, he had never been a member. Another small publication (apparently printed at Boston, but unquestionably in New-York) has appeared, said to have been written by "professors and members of our Colleges," a refutation of which accompanies this prospectus.

Others, at a distance, have likewise proposed to publish our practice. These considerations, together with the difficulty our students labour under for want of proper TEXT BOOKS, calculated to elevate the character of our Schools; the great necessity which exists of disseminating a judicious, scientific, and superior method of treating diseases; to prevent interested and disqualified persons from further imposing upon the unsuspecting portion of the community, have induced the Society to publish the practice.

#### CONDITIONS.

1. The work is in three large octavo volumes, with plates, for the sum of five dollars per volume.
2. It will be executed in a superior style, as regards type, paper, binding, &c.
3. The most convenient mode by which persons in the interior can receive the work, is by ascertaining from their local bookseller the address of the house he deals with in New-York; on transmitting which to the author, the books can be deposited with him to be forwarded.
4. Booksellers, editors, and post-masters, (except those who sell a spurious publication,) are hereby appointed agents for this work; and are authorized to receive subscriptions, for which they will be allowed ten per cent. on all moneys remitted; they paying the expense of any further advertisements. Those who procure five subscribers, and become responsible for the same, shall have the sixth copy gratis.
5. To prevent imposition, besides securing the copyright, the hand-writing of the author will be annexed to both works. Should any person again attempt to publish, abridge, or palm any part of this work, or any other purporting to be the same, a copy of this work will be given to any person who will furnish us with the name and address of such person.
6. Every travelling agent duly authorized to receive subscriptions, must have a writing from the author certifying the same.
7. All orders for this work, with directions where they shall be sent, to be addressed, post paid, to the author, Eldridge-street, New-York.

*New-York Reformed Medical College, 1833.*

THAT the reader may form some idea of the estimation in which our practice is held by those who are best acquainted with it, I will here insert a communication which I have just received from a graduate of the Ohio Medical Reformed College, a branch of the one established in this city; and it affords me much pleasure to state, that the writer speaks the same language as all others who understand it.

Dayton, Ohio, Jan. 7th, 1833.

DR. W. BEACH,

Sir—Having enlisted myself under the banners of the great and good cause of medical reform, of which you have the honour of being the founder and indefatigable supporter, and feeling a deep and ardent solicitude for the welfare and rapid advancement of our invaluable system of medical practice, I at this time have taken the liberty of addressing a few lines to you, in which I wish to tender you my unfeigned thanks, and an acknowledgment of the obligation which I am under for the possession of a knowledge of your mode of treating diseases.

I am aware of the numerous and apparently insurmountable obstacles which opposed your endeavours to introduce to the world a mode of practice, the general adoption of which would avert so large an amount of human suffering, and so much enhance the sum of human happiness. Your undertaking was great; your opposition almost unlimited; your courage undaunted; your resolution unshaken; and, happy for the world, your enterprise successful.

I have not had the pleasure to receive your verbal instruction, having acquired a knowledge of the reformed system at the Worthington, Ohio, Medical College. The incalculable benefits which must necessarily be experienced by generations yet unborn, from the reformed or botanical system of medicine, cannot but inspire ambition in the minds of all those engaged in the highly laudable cause. It is with much pleasure that I view the prosperous and flourishing state of medical reform in this section of the Union. Many of our most respectable and intelligent citizens are thoroughly convinced of the danger and impropriety of the common and fashionable mode of practice, and have decidedly declared themselves friends and supporters of the reformed system. The uniform success which attends our practice, dispels prejudice and opposition, as the sun drives away the mists of the morning. All, all seems brightening in the prospects of our cause.

I am in partnership in practice with Dr. David Jordon, a graduate of your School in New-York, and we are gaining ground very fast in this place. The slanders and puny efforts of our opponents have but an inverse influence in retarding our advancement. I think we could find sale for several sets of your Medical and Surgical work, if we had them. We shall be happy to do all in our power to extend the system of practice; and should you be so disposed, we should be glad to receive an agency in the sale of the publication.

It would give me much satisfaction to have a statement of the general outlines of your practice in the cholera. We know not how soon we shall be visited by this fatal pestilence; several cases have already occurred in this place, but at present we have none.

The institution at Worthington is in a very flourishing condition.

D. L. TERRY, M. D.

---

## MEDICINE.

---

IN vain do we prescribe remedies or medicine, if it be impure; as we shall thereby be frustrated in fulfilling our indications: and it is a notorious fact, that it is a common practice among apothecaries and druggists, to prepare and vend either spurious or adulterated articles, or such as have been kept so long on hand that their virtues are either lost, or greatly impaired. Many kinds have been bought

at auction, which have been damaged, and, after passing through some change, are sold by them as genuine articles.

Almost every kind of medicine that has obtained any notoriety, is now imitated or counterfeited. I have seen large quantities of labels for certain preparations copied and printed literally as they are issued in Europe. For instance, an imitation of the Harlœm Oil is prepared throughout the United States, apparently with the original covering or bills; so that it becomes extremely difficult to procure this article, or any other, pure or unadulterated. This is a fact that no person, we believe, will pretend to deny; and I will here record one instance among many which might be mentioned, extracted from the New-York Farmer and Horticultural Repository, vol. v. p. 261. The writer, in giving an account of his tour from New-York to Philadelphia, thus remarks: "Proceeding," says he, "down the Raritan river, about a mile and a half below New-Brunswick, I came to a grist mill, where they were grinding roots; what they were then grinding was mixed with Indian meal, and they told me they ground it as they had orders to do, sometimes with the Indian meal, and sometimes without it; and that they kept one run of stones going in this business as much as one fourth of the time!"

In consequence of such fraud, and the difficulty that many might have who are disposed to use the remedies pointed out in this work, I propose to prepare and vend every description of medicine recommended or required, in the best possible manner, either in their raw or crude state, or prepared for use, as may be wanted; and to be superintended personally, or prepared under my immediate inspection, the prices of which will be as moderate as they can be purchased at any other place.

In doing this, I can confidently look for the same success to attend the practice as experienced at our Institution.

Medicines will, therefore, be prepared and sent, either raw or manufactured, to any part of the United States or Europe.

Both the *Latin* and the *English* name will be attached to each article, with copperplate engravings; and they will be pressed by means of a screw into such small compasses or cakes, that they can be easily transported, with little expense, and their virtues will remain unimpaired for years.

---

## DISPENSARIES OR INFIRMARIES FOR THE INDIGENT.

---

It is in contemplation to establish in all the principal cities throughout the United States, MEDICAL DISPENSARIES OR INFIRMARIES on the reformed system, for the benefit of the poor.

The object of these Institutions will be to give *advice, medicine, and attendance* gratuitously to all such as are unable to pay for the services of a physician; that this class may avail themselves of the advantages of a vegetable or improved system of medical and surgical practice. It is also designed to connect with it a VACCINE INSTITUTION; to procure for the use of the public an apparatus for resuscitating drowned persons; a stomach pump, for the removal of poisons from the stomach; a complete apparatus for fractured limbs, &c. &c. It is also contemplated, if the directors meet with sufficient success, to make provision for the gratuitous attendance on poor married lying-in women, at their own houses, under the management of qualified females and physicians.

The plan is submitted to the public. It is proposed to create 300 shares, at five dollars a share, for the purpose of raising a fund for the building of a house, and the purchase of a lot; each share subject to an annual assessment of fifty cents, for the purchase of medicine for the dispensary. The trustees to hold the property in trust for the stockholders.

## REFORMED MEDICAL INSTITUTIONS.

---

SHOULD the citizens or inhabitants of any part wish to establish Medical Schools, Infirmarys, or Hospitals, upon the principles laid down; and should they desire any further aid, graduates of our Schools will be sent to superintend them, or to render such assistance as may be deemed expedient.

---

SHOULD I meet with sufficient encouragement, I propose to publish:

1st. A brief but comprehensive system of ANATOMY and PHYSIOLOGY, illustrated by numerous plates.

2d. Another edition of this work, with corrections, revisions, additions, &c., and further illustrated by additional plates, and probably of a larger size.

3d. A SYSTEM OF MIDWIFERY, containing about 100 plates, making in all four octavo volumes, executed in a superior style, as regards type, paper, binding, &c.

4th. A cheap edition of the present work, or an abridgment, that all classes may avail themselves of it.

---

## DRAWINGS OF PLANTS.

---

I WILL forward a complete set of this work, in extra binding, to the person who shall send me, by post or otherwise, the best drawing from nature of any plant engraved in this work, or any other medical herb.

I should also be gratified to receive drawings of this kind of any and all plants growing in the vicinity of those who may receive this publication.

A discretionary premium will be given for the most natural representation, as well as for any *valuable remedy*, when it shall have been fully tested.

In order to make every possible improvement and discovery in the science of medicine, I hope that in whatever country or part this work may find its way, that it will fall into the hands of those who will communicate to the author all the improvements in their possession on the subject of medicine; on medical botany, situation or locality, soil, temperature of the climate, diseases, mode of treatment, habits of the people peculiar to the place.

---

## HERBARIUMS, PLANTS, SEEDS, &c.

---

I INTEND to prepare, or have it done under my supervision, Herbariums, containing all the Plants we use in our practice, and others, and sent to any person who may order them.

Also, MEDICAL PLANTS, ROOTS, SEEDS, &c., for Botanical Gardens.





